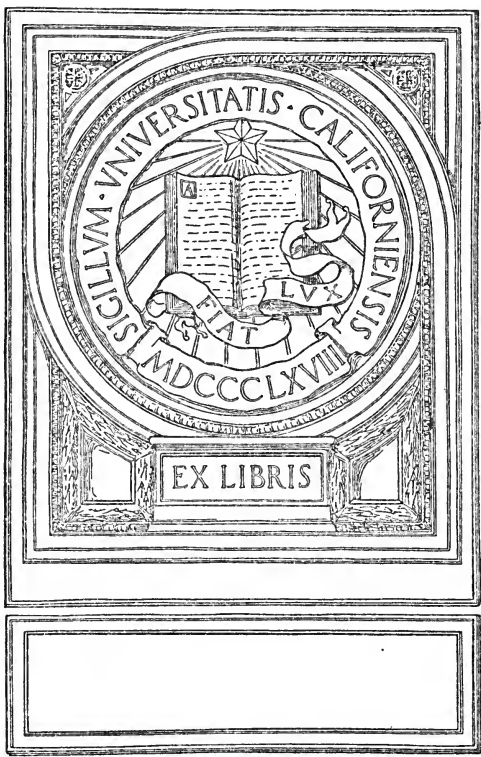


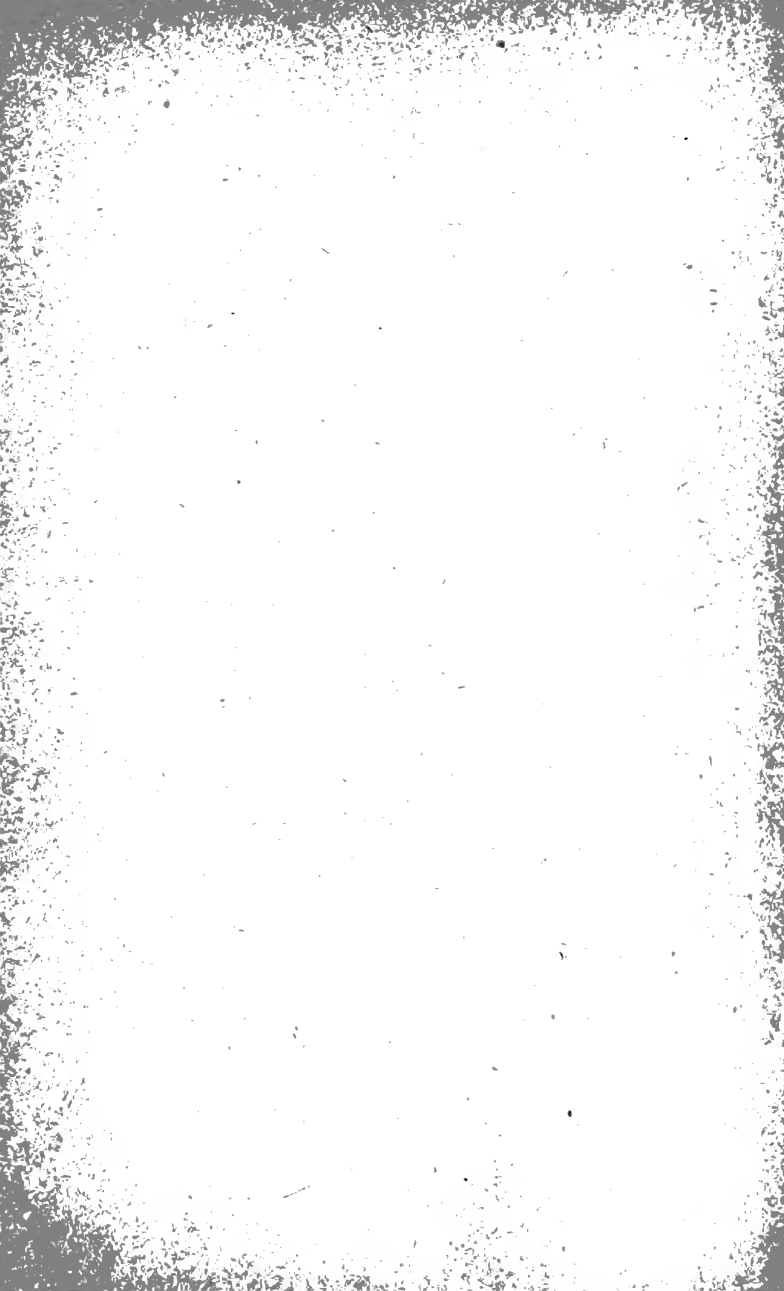
C-NRFP

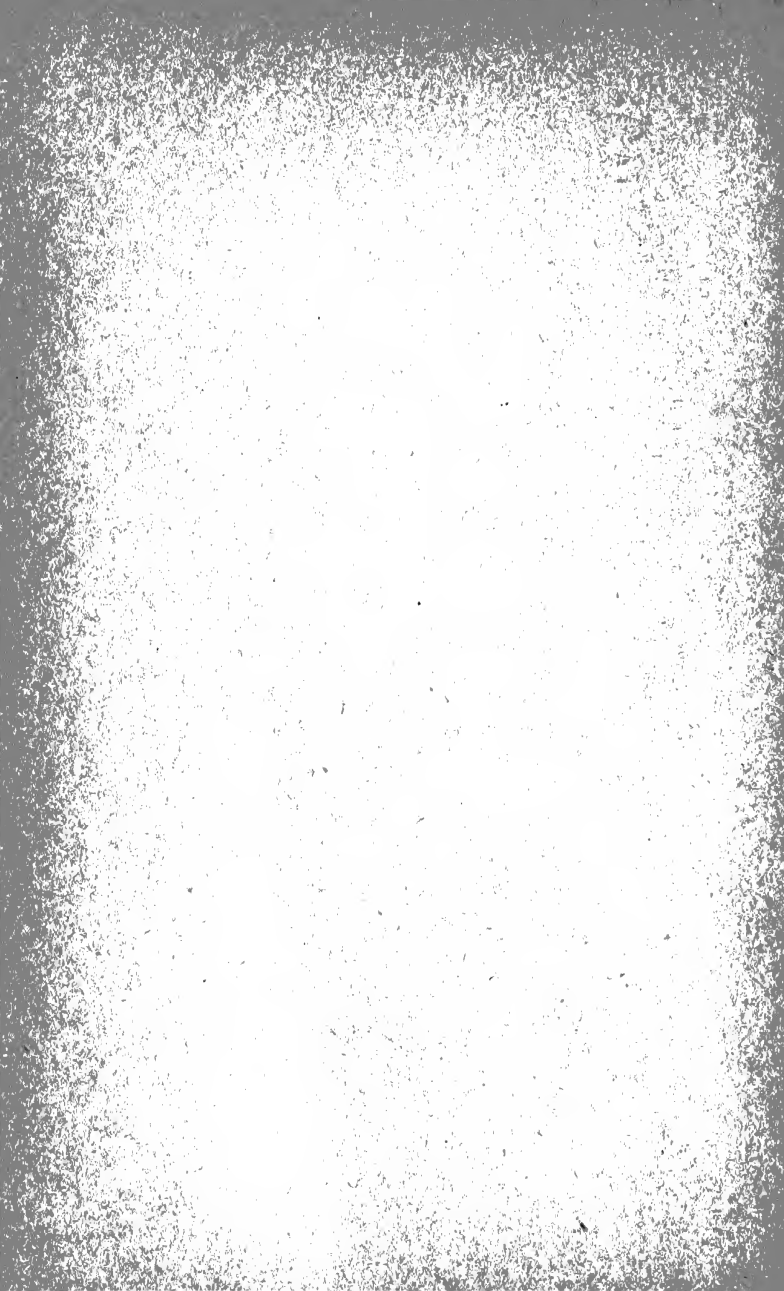


B 311 354



EX LIBRIS



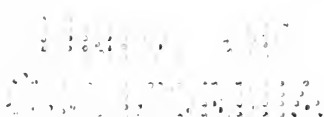


AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

BY

RUTH SHEPARD PHELPS

ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF ROMANCE LANGUAGES IN THE
UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA



GINN AND COMPANY

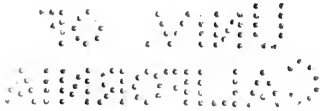
BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON
ATLANTA • DALLAS • COLUMBUS • SAN FRANCISCO

PC1111
PA

COPYRIGHT, 1917, BY
RUTH SHEPARD PHELPS

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

225.5



The Athenæum Press
GINN AND COMPANY · PRO-
PRIETORS · BOSTON · U.S.A.

PREFACE

What is new in this work is chiefly the division and arrangement of topics, though the Introduction assembles material upon pronunciation and versification not hitherto brought together in English, and there is some novelty in subject matter in the exercises for translation. The plan of the book has the merit of having grown directly out of the needs of the classroom. The arrangement is such, it is hoped, as will make the book equally serviceable for the classroom and for private study, and will give it certain of the advantages of both "first book" and reference grammar.

The beginning has been deliberately made very easy. Even the definite article, with which most Italian grammars naturally begin, has been deferred in favor of the indefinite, which, as it lacks a plural, has fewer forms itself and does not immediately require the plural of nouns. This leaves the attention free to center upon the single new principle of the "s impure." The definite article with its more complicated forms is not introduced until the fourth lesson, and the main body of rules governing its syntax not until the twenty-second. The plural of nouns is treated in its simpler aspects in the third lesson, and extensively in the thirtieth.

This method of breaking up the more difficult subjects and presenting them at first piecemeal, reserving more thorough-going treatment for a later chapter, has been followed throughout. The subjunctive, for example, is introduced one rule at a time, each illustrated by a sentence or two in all subsequent exercises, so that its use in a few standard cases at least will become automatic, and the student will not fall into the way of regarding it as an unusual, unnatural mood, reserved for special occasions. The subject is

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

treated as a whole in Lesson XXVIII. Many of the idiomatic uses of *da*, likewise, are introduced early, although the general treatment of prepositions, including a great number of idioms constructed by means of them, is one of the last in the book. The verbs *essere* and *avere*, except for the indispensable present indicative, are postponed until the regular verbs have been completely learned. The subject of conjunctive pronouns, sometimes presented in a single lesson, is here divided among four, not consecutive, while sentences in the intervening and subsequent exercises continue practice upon them.

In consequence of this method of introducing a working knowledge of many difficult principles early, while leaving their more complicated treatment for later chapters, the book can be divided rather easily, if desired, into first and second year work. Twenty-seven lessons, let us say, would introduce more or less fully all the more important principles, and cover completely the subject of conjunctive pronouns. These lessons, with the irregular verbs of the remaining lessons, might constitute the first year's work, leaving twelve lessons of more complicated questions of syntax for the second year.

It has not always seemed desirable to be entirely consistent in this breaking up of the more difficult subjects; logical arrangement has sometimes seemed to require, as in the case of the person in address, a complete treatment at first. Where this has been the case, the paragraphs dealing with the more subtle points are marked with a star, and may be assigned merely to be read over, or omitted altogether, as the exercises do not illustrate them. In any case the index makes scattered material readily available.

As to the exercises, the older custom has been observed of making them accompany the lessons they illustrate, in the belief that this arrangement keeps the student better in mind of all the work he has done and facilitates review. In designing the work which illustrates the new principles as they are introduced, the desirability of continuing practice on principles already acquired has been kept

PREFACE

steadily in mind. If the instructor prefers fewer sentences for translation, the assignment may be limited to those which illustrate the current lesson. Where the vocabulary seems long, there will usually be found a large proportion of those words whose meaning can be guessed at a glance, and far more of them occur in the paragraphs of Italian reading matter than in the sentences for translation. The paragraphs of Italian on which the exercises for translation are based are in small part original, in large part borrowed or adapted from Italian school readers designed for the lower grades. So they furnish practice from the first in reading connected prose, offer a good practical vocabulary, and deal attractively with Italian home and school life, and the history of modern Italy. Thanks are due to Messrs. Bemporad e Figlio for permission to use selections from the readers *Il mondo nuovo* by Renato Fucini and two *Libri di lettura* by Neretti and Gironi, and to the Società Laziale Editrice of Rome for permission to make similar use of paragraphs from *La terza Italia* in Lessons XXVIII and XXIX. These last, it may to-day be necessary to add, were not selected with any idea of influencing American sentiment, but to show what topics were agitating the Italian mind in the last days before the Great War broke out.

The series of dialogues in the latter part of the book offers a little practice in familiar idiom; they are especially intended for travelers, as they include a good many words useful in the shops and hotels, on the railway, and so on. They are composed in a Tuscan too colloquial to form the basis of exercises, and may be entirely omitted at the pleasure of the instructor.

The third person as the person of address in ordinary intercourse, being the only one for which most travelers have occasion, is introduced very early, before the habit of the true second person is acquired. Accordingly, in the exercises it is the latter which is made to seem the unusual form.

Questions of pronunciation, accent, orthography, and the like are treated in the Introduction, along with an outline of the Italian

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

system of versification and some hints as to the reading of Italian poetry. As the pronunciation cannot be perfectly represented for English readers by any system of equivalent spellings, the instructor will find it necessary to supplement *viva voce* what is said here.

Of the many works that have been consulted in the preparation of this book, those which have been most closely followed are R. Fornaciari's *Grammatica italiana dell' uso moderno*, Parts I and II, and, especially for the Introduction, *Ortoepia e ortografia italiana moderna*, by G. Malagòli. The dictionaries of Edgren and Petrocchi have been constantly consulted; suggestions as to material and arrangement have been gained from the Italian work of Morandi and Cappuccini and from my American predecessors in this field, and for several hints as to Tuscan idiom I am indebted to the grammars of N. Orlandi and Alina Vannini. And I desire to thank Professor A. A. Livingston of Columbia University for kindly undertaking the laborious task of reading this book in proof, and for his very valuable suggestions on many points.

UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA

RUTH SHEPARD PHELPS

CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	
Alphabet	1
Pronunciation	2
Syllabification	15
Tonic Accent	15
Graphic Accents	19
Elision	20
Apocopation	22
Variant Forms of Words	24
Capitalization	25
Archaic and Poetic Forms	26
Versification	28
 LESSONS	
I. Indefinite Article	33
II. Present of <i>avere</i> and <i>essere</i> . Pronouns in Address	36
III. Plural of Nouns. Future Indicative	39
IV. Definite Article. Past Absolute Indicative	41
V. Contraction of Article. Past Future	45
VI. Gender of Nouns	48
VII. Adjectives and Adverbs	51
VIII. Regular Verbs	58
IX. Conjunctive Pronouns	63
X. <i>Essere</i> . The Passive Voice	67
XI. Conjunctives Continued. Auxiliaries with Intransitive Verbs	71
XII. Reflexive Verbs	76
XIII. Possessives	81
XIV. Changes of Letters in Regular Verbs. Relative Pronouns	86
XV. The Comparative	90
XVI. The Verb <i>avere</i>	95

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

LESSONS	PAGE
XVII. Two Conjunctive Objects. Conjunctive Adverbs	100
XVIII. Irregular Verbs	103
XIX. <i>Dare, sapere, volere</i>	107
XX. Disjunctives. <i>Venire</i>	111
XXI. Tenses. Verb and Subject	117
XXII. Definite Article. <i>Andare. L'Arrivo</i>	126
XXIII. Cardinal Numerals. <i>Morire</i>	135
XXIV. Ordinal Numerals, Collectives, etc. <i>Parere</i>	142
XXV. Indefinite Article. <i>Fare. Dialogue: L'Albergo</i>	149
XXVI. Impersonal Verbs. <i>Stare</i>	155
XXVII. Conjunctive with Dependent Infinitive. <i>Potere. Dia-</i> <i>logue: Dalla sarta</i>	160
XXVIII. The Subjunctive. <i>Dolere</i>	164
XXIX. The Infinitive. <i>Dire</i>	170
XXX. Number of Nouns. <i>Piacere</i>	175
XXXI. Modal Auxiliaries. <i>Dovere. Dialogue: Dal sarto</i>	184
XXXII. Relative, Demonstrative, and Interrogative Pro- nouns. <i>Udire</i>	190
XXXIII. Participles. <i>Porre. Dialogue: Dal calzolaio</i>	196
XXXIV. Gender of Nouns. <i>Uscire</i>	203
XXXV. Indefinites. <i>Scegliere. L'Automobile</i>	209
XXXVI. Adverbs. <i>Valere</i>	220
XXXVII. Prepositions. <i>Dialogue: Dalla modista</i>	232
XXXVIII. Augmentatives and Diminutives. <i>Dialogue: Si</i> <i>fanno le compre</i>	246
XXXIX. Conjunctions and Interjections	251
 ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS	 261
ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	275
ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY	301
INDEX	323

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

INTRODUCTION

I. THE ALPHABET

1. The Italian alphabet is composed of twenty-one letters. Those whose names end in *-a* are of feminine, those in *-e* of common, and the others of masculine gender; but they all may be treated as feminine, to agree with *lettera* understood. They do not change for the plural. Their Italian names are—

LETTERS	ITALIAN NAMES	PRONUNCIATION	LETTERS	ITALIAN NAMES	PRONUNCIATION
a	a	(ah)	n	enne	(ennay)
b	bi	(bee)	o	o	(toll)
c	ci	(cheat)	p	pi	(pea)
d	di	(Dee)	q	cu	(coo)
e	e	(ale)	r	erre	(erray)
f	effe	(effay)	s	esse	(essay)
g	gi	(genius)	t	ti	(tea)
h	acca	(ahkkah)	u	u	(ooze)
i	i	(machine)	v	vu	(voodoo)
l	elle	(ellay)	z	zeta	(dzayta)
m	emme	(emmay)			

a. The letter *j* (*i lungo*) exists, but only as a diacritical mark used by some writers to indicate the use of *i* as semivowel (cf. 4): *giojelli*, *operajo*; or instead of *ii*: *desiderj*; or for the spelling of foreign words.

b. The following consonants also exist in Italian, for the spelling of foreign words: *k* (*cappa*), *w* (*doppio vu*), *y* (*ippsilon* or *i gręco*), and *x* (*icse* or *ics*).

II. PRONUNCIATION OF THE LETTERS

2. The Vowel Sounds. There are seven vowel sounds in Italian, as follows :

a = ah	fa
e (close) = <i>ale</i>	pepe
e (open) = <i>men</i>	bella
i = <i>machine</i>	Mimi
o (close) = <i>low</i>	soło
o (open) = <i>ought</i>	so
u = <i>moon</i>	luna

a. As the rules given (cf. 3) for determining the close and open **e** and **o**, besides being difficult to remember, do not cover all cases, these vowels, when accented, will be marked in this book (as indicated above) when appearing in the text for the first time, in the special vocabularies, and in the complete vocabulary at the end of the volume.

b. People accustomed to speak English incline to mispronounce **a**, **i**, and **u** in certain combinations, slackening and dulling their quality by analogy with English ; this tendency is apparent in **a** when final, as in **Amērica**, and in **i** and **u** when followed by two or more consonants, or by **l** or **r** when accented in the antepenult. Thus **i** in **virtù** 'virtue,' **ninfa** 'nymph,' **mirra** 'myrrh,' **principe** 'prince,' is slackened to the *i* of 'virile'; **u** in **singulto** 'sob,' **Būlgaro** 'Bulgarian,' **giunto** 'arrived,' to the *u* of 'pull.' This tendency should be avoided, and the sound of these vowels kept identical in all combinations.

3. Close and Open E and O. A few rules apply alike to both, but there are numerous special rules for each.

a. Both are Close when followed by **gn**, **lm**, **mm**, **nn** (*except* **donna** 'woman,' **monna** 'Lady,' **nonno** 'grandfather').
 EXAMPLES : **pegno** 'pledge,' **sogno** 'dream,' **elmo** 'helmet,' **olmo** 'elm,' **vendemmia** 'vintage,' **sommo** 'supreme,' **venni** 'I came.'

b. Both are Open —

1. When followed by **ns, q, str,** or (nearly always) a single consonant + two vowels. **EXAMPLES:** **p**enso 'I think,' **c**õnsole 'consul,' **è**quo 'equal,' **n**ostro 'our,' **f**inestra 'window,' **V**enèzia 'Venice,' **c**ommèdia 'comedy,' **p**urgatõrio 'purgatory,' **c**ollègio 'college.'

2. When preceded by a consonant + 1: **g**lõbo 'globe,' **s**plèndido 'splendid.'

3. *Contrary to rules,* in so-called 'learned' words, not in common use by the people at large: **p**recõce 'precocious,' **t**estimõne 'witness,' **a**lfabeto 'alphabet,' **d**ittõngo 'diphthong,' **n**apoleõnico 'Napoleonic,' **r**ecõndito 'recondite,' **C**alifõrnia.

c. E is Close (Lat. ĭ, ē, oe > It. e) —

1. In unaccented syllables: **P**etrucchio; **c**omè 'like.'

2. In monosyllables and oxytones ending in **e**: **m**ercè 'thanks to,' **r**è 'King.' **EXCEPTIONS:** **ch**è! 'what!' and other interjections; **è** 'is,' **r**è (musical note), **d**iè 'he gave,' **pi**è 'foot,' and foreign nouns like **caff**è 'coffee,' **N**oè 'Noah.'

3. In the endings **-èfice, -èggio, -èmbro, -esco -a, -ese, -èsimo** (in nouns), **-essa, -èto** (in collectives), **-etto -a** (cf. *d*, 6), **-èvole, -mènte,** and **-mènto**. **EXAMPLES:** **or**èfice 'goldsmith,' **pass**èggio 'walk,' **m**èmbro 'member,' **F**rancèscò 'Francis,' **m**èsè 'month,' **batt**èsimo 'baptism,' **cont**èssa 'countess,' **oliv**èto 'olive-grove,' **alleg**rètto 'cheerful,' **onor**èvole 'honorable,' **facil**mènte 'easily,' **appart**amènto 'apartment.'

4. Before **cc, ce, pp, zz** (*except* **è**cco 'here is,' **sp**ècchio 'mirror,' **v**ècchio 'old,' **G**iusep**p**e 'Joseph,' **s**èppe 'he knew,' **m**èzz**o** 'half,' **p**èzz**o** 'piece,' **pr**èzz**o** 'price,' and a few others). **EXAMPLES:** **z**ècc**a** 'mint,' **or**ècchio 'ear,' **in**vèce 'instead,' **c**èpp**i** 'fettters,' **ricch**èzz**a** 'richness.'

5. In the pronouns **m**è 'me,' **n**è 'of it,' **t**è 'thee,' **gli**è 'to her'; **è**gli, **è**i, 'he'; **q**uèsto 'this,' **q**uèllo 'that'; **s**tèss**o**, **m**edèss**im**o, 'self.'

6. In the contracted prepositions **nello** 'in the,' **dello** 'of the,' etc.; in the conjunctions **e** 'and,' **che** 'that,' **finchè** 'as long as,' **mentre** 'while,' **perchè** 'why,' **se** 'if,' etc.; in the adverbs **dentro** 'within,' **meno** 'less,' **spesso** 'often'; in the numerals **tre** 'three,' **trēdici** 'thirteen,' **sēdici** 'sixteen,' **vēnti** 'twenty,' **trēnta** 'thirty.'

7. In verbs: whenever accented in the infinitive, past descriptive, future, past absolute, and past subjunctive; in the second plural of the present indicative and imperative; in the second singular and first and second plural of the past future, and in past absolutes and past participles in **-ēsi** and **-ēso -a**, except **chiēsi** 'I asked' and its compounds.

d. E is Open (*Lat. ě, ae > It. iē, e*) —

1. When preceded by **i**, or when **i** has been dropped from before it: **ciēco** 'blind,' **sēte** (for **siēte**) 'you are.'

2. In the endings **-ello -a** (*except* **capello** 'hair' and **stella** 'star'), **-ēma**, **-ēndo -a** (*except* **vēndo** 'I sell,' **scēndo** 'I descend'), **-ēnse**, **-ēnte -o -i -a**, **-lēnto**, **-ēnza**, **-ēro** (in nouns of more than two syllables), **-ēšimo** (in numerals). EXAMPLES: **bello** 'beautiful,' **problema** 'problem,' **bēnda** 'band,' **estēse** 'of Este,' **Benevēnto**, **vivēnte** 'living,' **sonnolēnto** 'somnolent,' **prudēnza** 'prudence,' **impero** 'empire,' **ventēšimo** 'twentieth.'

3. When followed by a single vowel: **sēi** 'six,' **ebreo** 'Hebrew.'

4. In foreign nouns, when final and accented: **Moišē** 'Moses,' **tē** 'tea.'

5. In the adverbs **bene** 'well,' **certo** 'surely,' **mēglia** 'better,' **pēggio** 'worse,' **presso** 'near,' **sempre** 'always,' **verso** 'towards,' in the preposition **senza** 'without,' and in the numerals **terzo** 'third,' **sesto** 'sixth,' **sette** 'seven,' **sēttimo** 'seventh.'

6. In verbs: in past absolutes in **-ētti** and past participles in **-ēnto** and **-ētto**; in present participles in **-ēndo** and **-ēnte**; in the first and third singular and third plural of the past future; in **chiēsi** and its compounds, and **ēbbi** 'I had,' **ēbbe** 'he had,' **ēbbero**

'they had.' EXAMPLES: *credetti* 'I believed,' *attento* 'attentive,' *letto* 'read,' *potrei* 'I might,' *avrebbe* 'he would have,' *saprebbero* 'they would know.'

e. The following are a few of the words which, although spelled alike, differ in meaning according as the e is close or open :

<i>acçetta</i> hatchet	<i>acçetta</i> from <i>accettare</i> to accept
<i>dette</i> from <i>dire</i> to say	<i>dette</i> from <i>dare</i> to give
<i>legge</i> law	<i>legge</i> from <i>leggere</i> to read
<i>męle</i> apples	<i>męle</i> (<i>mięle</i>) honey
<i>męnte</i> memory	<i>męnte</i> from <i>mentire</i> to lie
<i>pęsca</i> from <i>pescare</i> to fish	<i>pęsca</i> peach
<i>pęste</i> footprints	<i>pęste</i> pest
<i>sęte</i> thirst	<i>sęte</i> (<i>sięte</i>) you are
<i>tęma</i> from <i>temere</i> to fear	<i>tęma</i> theme

f. O is Close (*Lat.* ŭ, ō > *It.* o) —

1. In the endings *-oce*, *-doio*, *-soio*, *-toio*, *-one -o -a*, *-ore -a*, *-oso* (in adjectives). EXAMPLES: *feroce* 'ferocious,' *corridoio* 'corridor,' *vassoio* 'tray,' *scrittoio* 'writing-desk,' *portone* 'great gate,' *padrona* 'mistress,' *imperatore* 'emperor,' *stiratora* 'laundress,' *glorioso* 'glorious,' *sontuoso* 'sumptuous.'

2. Before *r + l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *s*; before *m* or *n* + any consonant except *s*; and before *l + c*, *f*, *p*, *s*, or *t* (*except* in the inflections of *cogliere* 'to pluck,' *sciogliere* 'to loosen,' *togliere* 'to take away,' *volgere* 'to turn': *colto*, *sciolti*, *tolse*, *volta*, etc.). EXAMPLES: *orlo* 'margin,' *forma* 'form,' *forno* 'oven,' *torre* 'tower,' *torso* 'torso,' *Orsola* 'Ursula,' *ombra* 'shadow,' *compra* 'buys,' *gondola* 'gondola,' *tronco* 'trunk,' *contro* 'against,' *monte* 'mountain,' *biundo* 'blonde,' *bronzo* 'bronze,' *oppongo* 'I oppose,' *solco* 'furrow,' *dolce* 'sweet,' *golfo* 'gulf,' *volpe* 'fox,' *colto* 'cultivated.'

3. In past absolutes and past participles in *-osi*, *-oso* (*except* *esploso*, *esplosi*), *-osto*, *-otto*. EXAMPLES: *nascosi* 'I hid,' *roso* 'gnawed,' *opposto* 'opposed,' *rotto* 'broken.'

4. In the pronouns *lò* 'him,' *loro* 'their,' *coloro*, *costoro*, 'they,' *ogni* 'every'; in the numerals *dōdici* 'twelve,' *quattōrdici* 'fourteen,'; in *molto* 'much'; in the prepositions and conjunctions *come* 'like,' *dopo* 'after,' *dove* 'where,' *oltre* 'beyond,' *sopra* 'over,' *sotto* 'under'; in the negative *non*; and in the past subjunctive of *ēssere* 'to be': *fōssi* 'I might be' etc.

g. O is Open (Lat. ō, au > It. uo, o) —

1. After *u*, and in words from which a preceding *u* has been dropped. EXAMPLES: *fuoco* 'fire,' *novo* (for *nuovo*) 'new.' Cf. *f, 1*.

2. In monosyllables and oxytones ending in *o*, except *lò*. EXAMPLES: *ciò* 'that,' *andò* 'he went,' *farò* 'I shall do,' *Pò* the river, *dò* 'I give.'

3. When followed by a vowel (*except* in *noi*, *voi*, and the endings *-doio*, *-soio*, *-toio*). EXAMPLES: *Savoia* 'Savoy,' *noia* 'annoyance,' *eròe* 'hero,' *Balbòe*, *tuoi* 'thy.'

4. Before *b*, *d* (*except* *coda* 'tail,' *dōdici* 'twelve,' *rodo* 'I gnaw'), *f*, *ns*, *-chi-*, *-rchi-*. EXAMPLES: *ròba* 'things,' *gòbbo* 'hunchback,' *bròdo* 'broth,' *stòffa* 'goods,' *respònsò* 'response,' *ginòcchio* 'knee,' *rimòrchio* 'towing.'

5. When accented in the antepenult before a single *t* or *s*, or any double consonant except *m* or *r*. EXAMPLES: *esòtico* 'exotic,' *propòsito* 'resolution,' *zòccolo* 'wooden shoe,' *sòffoca* 'suffocates,' *viòttola* 'lane.'

6. In the endings *-occio*, *-plo*, *-òntico*, *-oto*, *-otto* (*except* past participles, cf. *f, 3*), *-ozzo*. EXAMPLES: *carròccio* 'cart,' *Tiròlo* 'Tyrol,' *anacreròntico* 'Anacreontic,' *ignòto* 'unknown,' *aquilòtto* 'eaglet,' *bòzzo* 'sketch.'

7. In the adverbs *oggi* 'to-day,' *poco* 'little,' *talvolta* 'sometimes,' *tòsto* 'soon,' *tròppo* 'too much'; the conjunctions *però* 'however,' *perciò* 'on this account,' etc.; the negative *nò* 'no'; and the numerals *nòno* 'ninth,' *nòve* 'nine.'

8. In past absolutes in *-ossi*, *-òlsi*. EXAMPLES: *mòssi* 'I moved,' *sciòlse* 'he loosened.'

h. Some of the words which, although spelled alike, differ in meaning according as the *o* is close or open :

CLOSE

coqli contracted *prep.* with the
collo contracted *prep.* with the
fosse from *ēssere* to be
roşa from *rōdere* to gnaw
torre tower
tosco Tuscan (*poetic*)
vōlgo ignorant class
vōlto face

OPEN

coqli from *cōgliere* to pluck
collo neck
fosse ditches
roşa rose
torre (*tōgliere*) to take away
tosco poison
vōlgo from *vōlgere* to turn
vōlto from *vōlgere* to turn

4. Semivowels and Diphthongs. Any two vowels pronounced as one syllable constitute a diphthong. The vowels *i* and *u* before another vowel are usually pronounced respectively *y* and *w*, and are then called semivowels. (See below, 4, *d.*)

Diphthongs are of two kinds: *a. Rising* diphthongs, in which a "weak" vowel (*i* or *u*) precedes a "strong" vowel (*e*, *o*, or *a*) and the strong is stressed. EXAMPLES: *lieto* 'joyous,' *fuoco* 'fire,' *guardi* 'look,' *uomo* 'man,' *ieri* 'yesterday,' *qui*.

b. Falling diphthongs, in which a strong vowel precedes a weak, and still receives the stress. EXAMPLES: *noi* 'we,' *poichè* 'since,' *Europa* 'Europe,' *Laura*.

i. When two weak vowels combine, the second usually takes the stress. EXAMPLES: *guida* 'guide,' *giù* 'down.'

c. Triphthongs. A strong vowel between two weak ones, or a weak between two strong, may form a triphthong, which is really two diphthongs in one, a rising and a falling. EXAMPLES: *mièi* 'my,' *suoi* 'his,' *studiai* 'I studied,' *bestiuola* 'small creature.'

1. Four or even five vowels may be contiguous, and pronounced together; but usually the first of these stands after *g* or *c* merely to give it a special sound (cf. 5, *a*), and so only three, or four, are heard. EXAMPLES: *gioiello* 'jewel,' *merciaio* 'dry-goods merchant,' *bagagliaio* 'baggage room,' *Acciaiuolo*.

d. In many words, often compound or derivative, *i* and *u* are not semivowels but are pronounced as a separate syllable. In such case the combination is not a diphthong. EXAMPLES: *spi-a* 'spy,' *spi-are* 'to spy,' *signori-a* 'lordship,' *obli-o* 'oblivion,' *ri-esco* 'I succeed,' *ri-uscire* 'to succeed,' *pi-uolo* 'rung,' *tri-orno* 'triumph,' *vi-aggio* 'journey,' *sontu-oso* 'sumptuous,' *ambigu-o* 'ambiguous.'

5. Consonant Sounds. *a*. The following consonant sounds occur in Italian, all of them being pronounced more explosively than in English, except when standing alone between two vowels.

b, as in English.

c, *cc*, (hard) before *a*, *o*, *u*, = *k*: *caro* 'dear,' *con* 'with,' *cura* 'care.'

c, *cc*, (soft) before *i* or *e*, = *ch*: *Cina* 'China,' *centro* 'center.'

ch (used only before *i* or *e*), = *k*: *chi* 'who?' *che* 'which.'

ci before another vowel, = *ch*: *cięco* 'blind,' *ciuco* 'donkey,' *provincia* 'province.'

d, *t*, pronounced with tip of tongue farther forward than in English.

f, as in English.

g (hard) before *a*, *o*, *u*, = 'go': *Belga* 'Belgian,' *gola* 'throat,' *laguna* 'lagoon.'

g, *gg*, (soft) before *i* or *e*, = 'gin': *gente* 'people,' *gita* 'excursion.'

gh (used only before *i* or *e*), = 'go': *aghi* 'needles,' *botteghe* 'shops.'

gi before another vowel, = 'gin': *mangiare* 'to eat,' *Giovanni* 'John,' *giudice* 'judge.'

gli before *i*, = 'million': *gli* 'to him,' *figli* 'sons.' (But cf. 5, *c*)

gli before another vowel, = 'million': *glię* 'to her,' *Bagliani*, *Pagliacci*.

gn, = 'canyon': *Bologna*.

h, silent.

l and **n**, pronounced with the tongue a little nearer the front teeth than in English.

m, p, q, as in English.

n before the hard sound of **c** or **g** or **q**, = *ng*: **franco** 'franc,' **fungo** 'mushroom,' **cinque** 'five.'

r, always rolled, especially when double.

s, = 'sir': **se** 'if,' **sprone** 'spur.'

ş, = 'rose': **roşa** 'rose,' **şmeraldo** 'emerald,' **şbaglio** 'mistake.'

sc before **i** or **e**, = *sh*: **scimmia** 'monkey,' **conoscere** 'to be acquainted with.'

sci before another vowel, = *sh*: **scià** 'shah,' **liscio** 'smooth,' **scięza** 'science.'

v, as in English.

z, = *ts*: **conversazione** 'conversation,' **pazzo** 'mad.'

z, = *dz*: **męzzo** 'half,' **dozzina** 'dozen,' **zęro** 'zero.'

b. Double Consonants. Double consonants must be pronounced double, but without hiatus. Few single words (such as *unnatural, tailless*) present this phenomenon in English; but it is easily illustrated by combinations of two words, such as *mad dog, big gun, a mile long, room-mate, pine knot*, etc. Pronounce on this principle **bęllo** 'beautiful,' **terra** 'earth,' **Boccaccio**, **męsso** 'moved.'

Note that **cci** and **ggi** sound not as **c-ci** and **g-gi** but as **t-ci** and **d-gi**; similarly **cc** and **gg** before **e**. Also that **zz, zz**, sound like **z, z**, not doubled.

This distinction between the single and double consonant should be carefully observed, as there are many words whose meaning, when spoken, would otherwise be mistaken. The following are some of these:

aringa herring

baco silkworm

bęla baa

camino hearth

canęone large dog

arringa harangue

Bacco Bacchus

bęlla beautiful

cammino road

cannęone cannon

casa house	cassa money-chest
coppia plenty	coppia couple
dita fingers	ditta firm
Ino Ino	inno hymn
Luca Luke	Lucca the city
nonno ninth	nonno grandfather
risa laughter	rissa quarrel
sonetto sonnet	sonnetto nap
Trācia Thrace	trāccia trace
vano vain	vanno they go

1. Similarly, **l**, **m**, **n**, **r**, in an accented syllable before another consonant, are prolonged, and pronounced as if double. EXAMPLES: **altro** (all-tro) 'other,' **quando** (quann-do) 'when,' **Dante** (dann-te), **novembre** (novemm-bre) 'November,' **porta** (porr-ta) 'door,' **anche** (ang-che) 'also,' **pongo** (pong-go) 'I put,' **stanco** (stang-co) 'tired,' **propinquo** (proping-quo) 'near.'

2. **Special Doublings.** A word ending in an accented vowel, or a monosyllable ending in a vowel, has in pronunciation the effect of doubling the initial consonant of the following word. Thus **Si**, **Signora** 'Yes, madam,' is actually pronounced **sissignora**; **ma ch !** 'what!' is pronounced **macch **; **va bene** 'all right,' **vabbene**; etc.

a. When compounds are made of words in such groups, the spelling follows the pronunciation. EXAMPLES: **pi ** 'more' and **tosto** 'soon' combine in **piuttosto** 'rather'; **chi** 'who,' **che** 'that,' and **sia** 'be,' in **chicchessia** 'whoever.'

b. The following words, although not accented on the last syllable, double the initial consonant of the following word: **come** 'how,' **dove** 'where,' **qualche** 'some,' **sopra** 'upon.' EXAMPLES: **comemmai** (come mai) 'how in the world,' **dovevva?** (dove va) 'where does he go?' **qualchevolta** (qualche volta) 'sometimes,' and the compound **soprattutto** (sopra tutto) 'above all.'

c. The words **dio**, **d a**, **d i**, **d e**, 'god' and 'goddess,' singular and plural, double their initial consonant after any word ending in a vowel, as **b ladd a** (bella dea) 'beautiful goddess.'

d. Doubling does not take place where there is any break in the sense between the two words; after a conjunctive pronoun object (cf. 94), because, being proclitic, it never takes the accent; or after a word ending with an apostrophe, as **sta' quièto** 'be quiet,' unless the succeeding word be a conjunctive pronoun (see below).

e. But when the conjunctive object follows a form of the verb which is accented on the last syllable, even with the apostrophe, its initial consonant is doubled (cf. 100, *b*). EXAMPLES: **parlòmmi** (**parlò mi**) 'he spoke to me,' **dille** (**dì' le**) 'tell her,' **fallo** (**fa' lo**) 'do it.'

c. **Gli** keeps the hard sound of **g** when preceded by **n**, as **ganglio** 'ganglion,' and in the words **geroglifico** 'hieroglyphic,' **glicerina** 'glycerine,' **negligente** 'negligent,' and a few others.

d. **Tuscan Peculiarities.** In Tuscan speech a single **c** or **g** between vowels of which the second is **i** or **e**, whether in the same word or in a group of two words, is softened, the **c** almost to *sh* and the **g** almost to *zh* (*s* in *pleasure*). A slight touch of this softening is an elegance of pronunciation anywhere in Italy. EXAMPLES: **dièci** 'ten,' **bugia** 'lie,' **ricèvere** 'to receive,' **diligente** 'diligent,' **la gente** 'the people,' **bella città** 'beautiful city.'

Likewise, a slight softening and aspirating of the hard **c** and **g**, and of **q**, to a sound approximating the German **ch**, is acceptable to the Tuscans, though the exaggeration of it heard among the lower classes is a vulgarism. This "attenuation" (which should not be adopted by foreigners without great discretion) occurs either at the beginning or in the middle of a word, if the consonant stands between two vowels, or is preceded by a vowel but followed by **r** or **l**. EXAMPLES: **nemico** 'enemy,' **èquo** 'equal,' **lago** 'lake,' **quèsta còsa** 'this thing,' **democràtico** 'democratic,' **agro** 'sour,' **la glòtta** 'glottis,' **una classe** 'a class.'

e. **S** and **Z.** As with the close and open vowels, the rules cannot be made to fit all cases; accordingly in this

book **s** = *z* will be marked (in the vocabularies or when appearing for the first time in the text) **ş**, and **z** = *dz* will be marked **z**.

1. **S** is pronounced **s** :

a. When initial before a vowel, as in **santo** 'saint.'

b. When double, as in **rosso** 'red.'

c. When followed by **c, f, p, q, t**. EXAMPLES: **scala** 'stair,' **scherzo** 'joke,' **Schiavo** 'Slav,' **sfera** 'sphere,' **rispondere** 'to reply,' **squilla** 'bell,' **stanza** 'room.'

d. In words ending in **-eso -a -e -i** or **-oso -a -e -i**, with the vowel close (cf. 3, *c, 7*; *f, 1, 3*), and their derivatives. EXAMPLES: **atteso** 'awaited,' **impresa** 'enterprise,' **meşe** 'month,' **preşi** 'I took,' **generoso** 'generous,' **generosità** 'generosity,' **Tolosa** 'Toulouse,' **impose** 'he imposed,' **nascosi** 'I hid.'

EXCEPTIONS :

cortese kind

franceşe French

leşi -o, *from leđere (rare)* to damage

marcheşe marquis

paese country

paleşe evident

tošo shaven

2. **S** is pronounced **ş** :

a. When followed by **b, d, g, l, m, n, r,** or **v**. EXAMPLES: **şbaglio** 'mistake,' **şdeęno** 'indignation,' **şgradęvole** 'disagreeable,' **dişlacciare** 'to unlace,' **entuşiaşmo** 'enthusiasm,' **şnodare** 'to untie,' **şradicare** 'to eradicate,' **şvernare** 'to winter.'

b. Between two vowels, as in **aşilo** 'asylum,' with the following important exceptions :

(1) Cf. 1, *d*, above.

(2) When a prefix is set before a word normally beginning with **s**. EXAMPLES: **di-serrare** 'to unlock' (but **dişereditare** 'to disinherit'), **pro-secuzione** 'prosecution,' **pre-servare** 'to preserve,' **ri-sorgimento** 'resurrection,' **tręnta-şei** 'thirty-six.'

(3) And in the following words :

annusare to smell at	parasito parasite
āsino donkey	Pisa
casa house	pisello pea
Chiusi a town	poşa, ripoşa, repose
chiusi -o, <i>from</i> chiudere to close	raso satin
coşa thing	Ricāsoli
così thus	rimasi I remained
desidērio desire	riso laugh
fuso spindle	susina plum

3. Z is pronounced z :

a. Before *ia, ie, io.* EXAMPLES : **pazzia** 'madness,' **grāzie** 'thank you,' **nazione** 'nation.'

b. In all words not listed under 4.

4. Z is pronounced ẓ :

a. In verbs ending in **-izzare**, of more than four syllables in the infinitive ; as **organizzare** 'to organize.'

b. When single between two vowels, except as under 3, *a.* EXAMPLES : **bizantino** 'Byzantine,' **Donizetti**, **ozono** 'ozone.'

c. When initial, except in the following words :

zāchera mud stain	zāzzerā long hair	zittella spinster
zaffo bung	zēcca mint	zitto hush
zampa paw	zēcchino sequin	zōccolo wooden shoe
zampillo fountain	zēppa wedge	zōlfo sulphur
zampogna reed	zimbello decoy	zōppo lame
zana basket	zīngaro gipsy	zucca squash
zāngola charm	zinzino sip	zūcchero sugar
zanna tusk	zio uncle	zuffa fray
zappa mattock	zīpolo spigot	zūfolo whistle
zatta raft	zirlare to whistle	zuppa broth

d. In the following words :

aguzzino slave-driver	azzurro blue	bronzo bronze
amāzzone amazon	brezza breeze	donzella damsel

dozzina	dozen	qrzo	barley
gazzella	gazelle	pettegolezzo	gossip
gazzetta	gazette	pranzo	dinner
ghiribizzo	caprice	razzo	spoke
Lāzzaro	Lazarus	ribrezzo	shiver
lazzaretto	pest-house	romanzo	novel
lezzo	unpleasant odor	ronzo	buzzing
magazzino	storehouse	scorza	bark
marzocco	lion of Florence	zanzara	mosquito
mezzo	half, middle	zēnzero	ginger
orizzonte	horizon		

And the following less common words, and others still more uncommon :

arzigōgolo	bōnzo	gazza	olezzo	suzzāchchera
arzilla	bōzzima	ghezzo	pēnzolo	suzzato
āzzimo	bqzzo ('pool')	ghiuzzo	razza (fish)	şverza
baraguzzo	buzzo	grezzo	rezzo	verzicare
barzelleŧta	calenzuolo	intirizzare	rozzo	verziere
bazza	eczema	lacchezzo	rubizzo	zizzānia
bazzana	Elzeviri	lazzeruola	ruzzo	zizzola
bazzōffia	frizzo	lazzo	scarza	zonzo
belzuino	frōnzolo	manzo	sfarzo	zozza
Belzebù	ganzo	Manzoni	şgabuzzino	
bizza	garza	muzzo ('hub')	sizza	
bizzēffe	garzo	Nazzarēno	sozzo	

A few words differ in meaning according to whether the *z* is "voiced" (*z*) or "unvoiced" (*z*), among which are the following :

bqzzo	pool	bqzzo	sketch
mezzo	half, middle	mezzo	wet, ripe
muzzo	hub	muzzo	cabin-boy
razza	ray (fish)	razza	race, lineage

NOTE. In derived words, *s* or *z* keeps the sound that it has in the root word, even contrary to rule. EXAMPLES: sorriso 'smile' from riso, ronziō 'continued buzzing' from ronzo.

III. SYLLABIFICATION

The division of words into syllables is very exact in Italian.

6. Nearly all syllables must end in a vowel, which may be preceded by as many as three consonants. EXAMPLES : *ca-sa, ta-sca, a-vrò, ri-u-sci-re, e-strē-mo, şbra-na-re, e-spri-me, mi-glio, va-ghe, tò-sto, Ti-şbe, fi-nē-stra, sfu-ma-re.*

7. But double consonants, and groups consisting of a liquid (l, r) or nasal (m, n) followed by a mute (b, c, d, g, p, t) or spirant (f, v, s, z), or of a liquid and a nasal, are divided. EXAMPLES : *qua-drēt-ti, bēl-lo, bus-se, al-lac-ciati, da-van-zale, sēn-to, sel-cia-to, rim-bom-bo, mar-mo, scēn-do, al-tro, sin-çē-ro, Ar-no, al-ma, stir-pe, or-gō-glio.*

8. Words to be divided at the end of a line of print or writing must be divided on these principles, and an apostrophe may never be left at the end of a line. For example, *tutt' altro, all' Italia*, must be divided *tut-t' altro, al-l' Italia*.

IV. TONIC ACCENT

9. The distribution of the tonic accent, or the question on which syllable of a word to lay the stress, is one of the chief difficulties of Italian pronunciation for the foreigner. A few rules may be given, but there are many exceptions. The accentuation of a word, like its gender, should be learned along with its meaning. In this book, all stressed antepenults, and i when accented in the final groups *ia, ie, io, ii*, will be marked with a macron, thus : *gōndola, Signorīa*.

10. The majority of Italian words are accented on the penult, and are called *parole piane* : *vēdo* 'I see,' *luna* 'moon,' *inveçe* 'instead,' *reverberare* 'reverberate,' *finirēte* 'you will finish.'

11. Words accented on the last syllable are called *parole tronche*: *poichè* 'since,' *virtù* 'virtue,' *curiosità* 'curiosity.'

12. Words accented on the antepenult are called *parole sdrucchiole*: *cēlebre* 'famous,' *ammīrano* 'they admire,' *organīz-zano* 'they organize.'

13. Those accented on the syllable preceding the antepenult are called *bisdrucchiole*: *andādosene* 'going away,' *cēlebrano* 'they celebrate.'

a. Most of these are the third persons plural of verbs having more than three syllables in the infinitive, of which the first person singular is accented on the antepenult; but it is not easy to be sure whether the first person singular is so accented in a given instance. However, if the verb be derived from a noun, the first person singular will follow the accent of the noun; and when the infinitive ends in *-borare*, *-iugare*, *-iuvare*, *-ipare*, *-minare* preceded by a single vowel, or *-erare* preceded by a liquid + a mute, or its ending is preceded by a mute + a liquid, the first person singular will be accented on the antepenult. But if the infinitive ending is preceded by any two consonants except a mute and a liquid, the first person singular will be accented on the penult. EXAMPLES: *inganno* 'deceit,' *inganno* 'I deceive,' *ingānnano* 'they deceive'; *ōpera* 'work,' *ōpero* 'I work,' *ōperano* 'they work'; *integrare* 'to complete,' *integrano* 'they complete'; *corroborare* 'to corroborate,' *corrōboro*; *coniugare* 'to conjugate,' *cōniugano*; *dissipare* 'to dissipate,' *dissipo*; *seminare* 'to sow,' *sēmīno*; *illuminare* 'to illuminate,' *illūminano*; *camminare* 'to walk,' *cammino*.

NOTE. In verbs of Latin derivation, the quantity of the vowel in the penult of the first person singular of the root verb is a fairly safe guide to the tonic accent in the Italian derivative. EXAMPLES: *indīco* > *indico*, *īmītor* > *imīto* or *īmīto*, *conjūro* > *congiūro*.

14. The syllable that receives the tonic accent is usually a few tones higher in pitch than the others, particularly in the important

word of the sentence. The failure to observe this difference will make even well-pronounced Italian sound foreign. Sometimes, as in calling to a distant person, the tonic accent will be an octave above :

Su, Corrado,
Vieni a veder che Dio per grazia volse.

(Oh, Corrado, come and see what God has willed!)

In exclamations, or in questions expressing amazement or incredulity, and to some extent in all speech, the whole sentence takes a kind of tonic accent. This falls sometimes on the first syllable of the sentence. A comparison of the sentences "Are you going to-day?" "Are you *going* to-day?" "Are you going *to-day*?" will illustrate this, but in Italian such variety is not reserved exclusively for particular rhetorical effects. English as spoken in England presents a closer analogy than American speech to this peculiarity of Italian.

15. Many words are distinguished in meaning from their homonyms only by the tonic accent. The following are a few of these :

ancōra still
capitāno captain
compīto *from* **compire** to fulfill
Cupīdo Cupid
impāri *from* **imparare** to learn
pagāno pagan
perđōno pardon
prīncipī beginnings, principles
rubīno ruby

āncora anchor
cāpitano *from* **capitare** to fall
cōmpito task
cūpido eager
īmpari uneven
pāgano *from* **pagare** to pay
pērdono *from* **perdere** to lose
prīncipi princes
rūbino *from* **rubare** to rob

V. WORDS FOR PRACTICE IN PRONUNCIATION

16. For practice on the consonants :

pazzo	svisceratezza	sgattigliare	santo
sciante	ella	lascio	sguaglianza
macchia	Brësca	sonno	giungeva
Guglielmo	stortigliatura	montagna	glauche
floscio	stagno	sfoglia	negli
sragionevole	staiuolo	scroscio	somigliano
segnî	fatto	bagagli	occhio
vecchio	malizia	somiglianza	chicche
sgagliardare	ingegno	luoghi	sciogliere
curiosa	guai	srugginire	svolazzato
allo	lusinghiero	ghiacciai	sferza
lasciare	pioggia	secco	azzurro
scricchiolare	slanciamiento	sdraiare	sfilacciatura
sfregiare	svogliatamente	seccia	accostandoglisi
attesa	Russia	uscio	sceglie
secche	sbirracchiolo	figliocchia	gloriose
ginocchi	sloggiare	secchita	chiacchierare
sfregacciare	bianche	smemorataccio	sasso
tedeschi	roccia	stovigliaio	villaggio
dramma	disse	sciente	svegliamento
gloria	scheggetta	qualche	scusa
sghimbescio	smagio	bisbiglio	sguardo
scricchiolano	tacque	stanche	giudizio
gigli	zero	vizio	fertilizzare

17. For practice on close and open vowels :

allora	Londra	Siena	dolce
forestiere	settembre	elemosina	parente
solenne	senza	bronzo	borchia
luogo	legno	togliere	buono
rotondo	dormitorio	Maremma	moda
membro	deplora	inchiestro	donna
fuori	prendo	Orfeo	femmina
milanese	colmo	contento	insolenza

cielo	nōcciolo	Raffaello	Po
silenzio	piega	ecco	Pietro
talvolta	penitenza	ponte	Spezzia
allegrezza	faticoso	chieso	atteso

VI. GRAPHIC ACCENTS

18. Three graphic accents are used in Italian: the grave (`), the most common; the circumflex (^), used in a few cases; and the acute (´), which is rare in Italian.

19. The grave accent is used —

a. On final accented vowels of words of more than one syllable.

EXAMPLES: **virtù** 'virtue,' **città** 'city.'

b. On final vowels of monosyllables to indicate a diphthong.

EXAMPLES: **può** 'he can,' **più** 'more.'

c. On the truncated forms (cf. 31, a; 48, c) of the poetic past absolutes in **-aro**, **-iro**, **-ero**, to distinguish them from the truncated infinitives of the same verbs. Thus, **amàr** = **amaro** (**amārono**), not **amare**.

d. On monosyllables that have been combined with some other word or prefix, in order to keep the tonic accent in the same place.

EXAMPLES: **fa** 'makes,' **rifà** 'remakes'; **re** 'king,' **vicerè** 'viceroy.'

e. On certain monosyllables in common use, to distinguish them from others identical in spelling but of different meaning.

chè that	chè because	la, li , <i>articles</i>	là, lì , there
da from	dà gives	ne of it, of them	nè neither
di of	dì day	se if	sè himself
e and	è is	si himself	sì so, yes
fè he did	fè faith	te thee	tè tea

20. The circumflex is used on certain shortened forms such as **tôrre** (**tōgliere**) 'to take away,' and often over final **i** when it represents **ii**. EXAMPLE: **desiderio** 'desire,' *pl.* **desiderì** (written also **desiderii**, **desiderj**).

21. The acute accent is used —

a. To indicate that a certain word with close *e* or *o* is meant, and not its homonym with open vowel; as *tòsco*, indicating the poetic word for Tuscan, instead of *tòsco* 'poison.'

b. In poetry, when the tonic accent is altered to suit the rhythm.

c. In dictionaries it serves to indicate the close vowels, and the grave the open.

d. The tendency is increasing among grammarians to encourage the use of the acute accent over final *i* and *u*, and final close *e* and *o*, when these are accented.

VII. ELISION

22. Elision is the omission of the final vowel of one word before the initial vowel of the following word. It takes place only between two words closely bound together in sense, as verb and subject or object, preposition and object, adjective or article and noun; and any pause or punctuation mark prevents its use. It is indicated by the apostrophe. EXAMPLES: *l' uòmo* 'the man,' *nell' aria* 'in the air,' *tutt' altro* (cf. 8). It may occur in the following cases, but is most usual with the articles.

23. In the articles *lo*, *la*, *gli*, *le*, alone or when contracted with prepositions (cf. 75). *Gli* is elided only before *i*; *le* only before *e*, and then not if the word is unchanged in the plural. EXAMPLES: *l(o)' amico* 'the friend,' *l(a)' anima* 'the soul,' *dell(o)' amore* 'of love,' *all(a)' amica* 'to the friend' (f.), *l(e)' erbe* 'the herbs,' *gl(i)' Inglesi* 'the English,' *le età* 'the ages,' *gli uòmini* 'the men.'

24. In the singular feminine form of the indefinite article: *un(a)' ora* 'an hour.'

25. In the pronoun objects *mi*, *ti*, *si*, *vi*, *ne*, *lo*; and *ci* before *i* or *e*. EXAMPLES: *m' abītuō* 'I accustom myself,' *t' inŕegna* 'he teaches thee,' *s' intēnde* 'that is understood,' *n' ha parlato* 'he has spoken of it,' *l' aspētto* 'I await him,' *c' imita* 'he imitates us,' *c' ērano* 'there were.'

26. In the pronouns *ogni*, *queŕto*, *quello*, *codesto*, *altro*, *nulla*, *niēnte*; the adverbs *poco*, *tanto*, *quanto*; the prepositions *di*, *da*, *oltre*, *preŕso*, and *ŕenza*, in certain adverbial expressions; the adjectives *santo*, *bello*, and *buono*, when immediately followed by their substantives; the conjunctions *anche*, *che*, *dove*, *onde*, *come*, and *ŕe* before *e*; and the numerals *ŕecondo*, *terzo*, *quarto*, *quattro*, *cinque*, *dēcimo*, etc., *venti*, *trēnta*, *cento*, *mille*, *mezzo*.

EXAMPLES: *ogn' altro* 'every other,' *queŕt' animale* 'this animal,' *quell' amico* 'that friend,' *codest' uōmo* 'that man,' *altr' ieri* 'day before yesterday,' *null' uōmo* 'no man,' *niēnt' affatto* 'nothing at all,' *poc' altro* 'little else,' *tant' è* 'so it is,' *quant' oro* 'how much gold,' *tazza d(i)' acqua* 'cup of water,' *oltr' Arno* 'beyond the Arno,' *preŕs' a poco* 'nearabout,' *ŕenz' altro* 'without delay,' *d(a)' allōra* 'from then,' *Sant' Ūrsola* 'Saint Ursula,' *bell' aria* 'beautiful air,' *buon' anima* 'good soul,' *dov' è* 'where is it?' *anch' io* 'I too,' *com' è* 'how is it?' *ond' andò* 'whence he went,' *ch' hanno* 'that they have,' *s' è vero* 'if it is true,' *ŕecond' anno* 'second year,' *terz' ūltimo* 'third from the last,' *quattr' arance* 'four oranges,' *vent' anni* 'twenty years,' *mill' anni* 'a thousand years,' *mezz' ora* 'a half-hour.'

27. In the first and third persons singular of verbs before a pronoun subject, and in the third person singular of the past future before a word beginning with *e*. EXAMPLES: *diss' io* 'said I,' *dic' egli* 'says he,' *potrebb' ēssere* 'it might be.'

28. In the following contracted forms:

a' for *ai* to the
bē' for *bēne* well

mō' for *mōdo* manner
nē' for *nēi* in the

cò' for còi with the
da' for dai from the
de' for dei of the
dì' for dici say
e' for ei he
fe' for fece he did
fra' for frai among the
gua' for guarda look
ma' for mali evils
me' for meglio better

pe' for pei for the
pò' for poco little
pro' for prode brave
què' for quei those
su' for sui on the
te' for tieni hold
tò' for toglì take away
tra' for trai among the
ve' for vedi see
vò' for voglio I will

NOTE. All these contractions are used in speech with the greatest frequency, but their use in the written language depends upon the discretion and taste of the author. The forms *be'*, *dì'*, *gua'*, *te'*, are Tuscan popular forms; *ma'*, *me'*, *pro'*, are poetic forms; the others are admissible in prose.

VIII. APOCOPATION

29. Apocopation (*troncamento*) is the dropping of the final unaccented vowel or sometimes syllable of a word under certain conditions, as *amor* for *amòre*, *val* for *valle*, *caval* for *cavallo*.

30. It takes place only under the following conditions:

- a.* In a word of more than one syllable, not accented on the last.
- b.* When the final vowel (as a rule not *a*, cf. **32**) is immediately preceded by *l*, *n*, *r*, rarely *m*.
- c.* When the word to be apocopated is not followed by one beginning with two consonants or (generally speaking) a vowel, and is not (in prose) a plural substantive.
- d.* When the two words are closely bound together without pause or break in the sense. EXAMPLES: *andar(e) via* 'to go away,' *nòbil(e) donna* 'noble lady,' *bèn(e) fatto* 'well done,' *ci siam(o) tutti* 'we are all here,' *caval(lo) di battaglia* 'war horse,' *un(o) bèl(lo) giorno* 'a fine day.'

31. Words regularly apocopated are —

a. Those ending in **-le**, **-lo**, **-llo**, **-ano**, **-eno**, **-ino**, **-ono**, **-nno**, **-ne**, **-re**, **-ero**. EXAMPLES: **cattedral(e)** 'cathedral,' **vuql(e)** 'he will,' **figliuql(o)** 'son,' **castel(lo)** 'castle,' **man(o)** 'hand,' **fren(o)** 'check,' **fin(o)** 'till,' **fan(no)** 'they do,' **diran(no)** 'they will say,' **buqn(o)** 'good,' **viqn(e)** 'comes,' **mar(e)** 'sea,' **par(e)** 'appears,' **pensiqr(o)** 'thought.'

b. The words **uqm(o)** 'man,' **insiqm(e)** 'together,' **un(o)** 'one' and its compounds, **doman(i)** 'to-morrow,' **fuqr(i)** 'outside,' **iqr(i)** 'yesterday,' **pqrver(o)** (only before a vowel) 'poor,' **par(o)** 'pair'; the first person plural of verbs in **-mo** (not **-mmo**), as **sarqm** 'we shall be,' **andavam** 'we were going'; and the third person plural in **-ro**, as **sqrpper(o)** 'they knew,' **potrqrbb(er)o** 'they might,' **fqrss(er)o** 'they would be.'

c. Titles before proper names, or one proper name before another. EXAMPLES: **dottqr(e) Antqnio** 'Doctor Anthony,' **siqnqr(e) Bondi** 'Mr. Bondi,' **Giovan(ni) Battista** 'John the Baptist,' **Val(le) di Chiana** 'Valley of the Chiana,' **Antqn(io) Piqrto** 'Anthony Peter,' **Piqr(o) Antqnio** 'Peter Anthony.'

d. In poetry: plurals in **-ni**, **-ri**; nouns in **-iro**, **-oro**, nouns and adjectives in **-aro**, **-uro**, and adjectives in **-ero**; *parole sdruciole* in **-re**; and **van(o)** 'vain,' **san(o)** 'sane,' **ver(o)** 'true,' **color(o)**, **costqr(o)**, 'those.' EXAMPLES: **can(i)** 'dogs,' **pensiqr(i)** 'thoughts,' **acciar(o)** 'steel,' **sicur(o)** 'sure,' **dur(o)** 'hard,' **gir(o)** 'circle,' **lavqr(o)** 'labor,' **fiqr(o)** 'proud.'

32. Irregular apocopations are **qr(a)** 'hour' and its compounds, **suqr(a)** 'Sister' (a nun), **fra(te)** 'Brother' (a friar), **sqr(a)** 'only,' **san(to)** 'Saint,' and **gran(de)** 'large' (cf. 85). EXAMPLES: **qr ora** 'just now,' **finqr** 'until now,' **suqr Maria** 'Sister Mary,' **fra Girqlamo** 'Brother Jerome,' **una sqr vqlta** 'just once,' **san Luigi** 'Saint Louis,' **gran caso** 'important circumstance.'

33. Apocopation does not affect the tonic accent. As it may be used in poetry before a pause or at the end of a line, apocopation provides "masculine endings" which otherwise could scarcely occur in Italian verse.

IX. VARIANT FORMS OF WORDS

34. For a good many words there are two different, equally correct forms, though one will be generally preferred, and the other often confined in its use to Tuscany. Compare English *crawfish*, *crayfish*; *toward*, *towards*; *special*, *especial*. Among such variable words are —

altēro, altiēro, 'haughty'; āngelo, āngiolo, 'angel'; castigo, gastingo, 'punishment'; ceppo, cippo, 'log'; ciliēgia, ciriēgia, 'cherry'; crōnaca, crōnica, 'chronicle'; decēmbre, dicēmbre, 'December'; denaro, danaro, 'money'; domani, dimani, 'to-morrow'; forestiēre, forestiēro, 'foreigner'; nativo, natīo, 'native'; nērvo, nērbo, 'nerve'; nuovo, nōvo, 'new'; Pancrazio, Brancazio, 'Pancras'; pellegrino, peregrino, 'pilgrim'; rinunziare, rinunciare, 'to renounce'; riva, ripa, 'bank'; scirōcco, sirōcco, 'sirocco.'

In addition to such sporadic divergences, there are certain principles of variation, as follows:

35. **Apheresis.** The first syllable is sometimes dropped, as in *evangēlo*, *vangēlo*, 'gospel'; *arēna*, *rēna*, 'sand.'

36. **Syncope.** The middle syllable is sometimes dropped. **EXAMPLES:** *ōpera*, *ōpra*, 'work'; *anderō*, *andrō*, 'I shall go'; *tōgliere*, *tōrre*, 'to take away'; *onorēvole*, *orrēvole*, 'honorable.'

37. **Apocope.** The last syllable may be dropped, as in *fēde*, *fē*, 'faith'; *piēde*, *piē*, 'foot'; *umiltade*, *umiltà*, 'humility'; *su* and *giù* 'up' and 'down' for *suso* and *giuso* (now current.

only in poetry); and (in poetry only) *amaro*, *finiro*, *temëro* (cf. 48, c), etc., for *amārono*, *finīrono*, *temērono*, 'they loved,' 'they finished,' 'they feared.'

38. Prefixion of *i*. When a word ending in a consonant is followed by one beginning with *s impure* (cf. 59, a, 1), an *i* is prefixed to the latter to prevent the juxtaposition of too many consonants. This is more common in speaking than in writing. **EXAMPLES:** *in i-stiva* 'in the hold,' *per i-scherzo* 'in jest.'

39. Conversely, the words *a* 'to,' *e* 'and,' *o* 'or,' and *su* 'on,' may become respectively *ad*, *ed*, *od*, *sur* before a word beginning with a vowel, especially if it is the same one. **EXAMPLES:** *ad esempio* 'for example,' *ad Anna* 'to Anna,' *ed ebbe* 'and he had,' *o ferro od oro* 'either iron or gold,' *sur una tāvola* 'on a table.'

40. Metathesis. Letters may be reversed, as in *sūcido* for *sūdicio* 'dirty.'

X. CAPITALIZATION

41. Italian capitalization is in general governed according to the same rules as English, but presents the following differences of usage:

42. Capitals are usually omitted, contrary to English usage,

a. From all but the first word of book titles, unless the title consist of but one word and that a noun. **EXAMPLES:** *Alcune relazioni del Fōscolo con la letteratura tedesca* 'Certain Relations between Foscolo and German Literature,' *Il Santo* 'The Saint.'

b. From proper adjectives, sometimes even used substantively. **EXAMPLES:** *il pōpulo toscano* 'the Tuscan people,' *le guerre napoleōniche* 'the Napoleonic wars,' *il linguaggio manzoniano* 'the language of Manzoni,' *i Tedeschi* 'the Germans.'

c. From titles, when followed by a proper name. **EXAMPLES:** *don Carlo* 'Don Carlos,' *dottor Antonio* 'Doctor Anthony,' *il principe Umberto* 'Prince Humbert,' *il signor Martini* 'Mr. Martini.'

d. From the names of the days and the months. **EXAMPLES:** *venerdì* 'Friday,' *luglio* 'July.'

e. In most contemporary poetry, from the first word of each line, unless the rules of prose would call for it.

NOTE. Usage in Italian books will often be found to vary considerably from these rules, which have, however, the support of the best authorities.

43. Capitals are used, though not invariably, for the more formal pronoun of address which is borrowed from the third person (cf. 65, a). **EXAMPLES:** *Lèi, Ella, Loro* 'you' (singular and plural), *Suo* 'your,' *Lè* 'to you.'

XI. ARCHAIC AND POETIC FORMS

44. In Italian poetry and old Italian occur many forms unfamiliar to the student of modern Italian prose. The following are the most important of such variations:

45. In general, open e and o often replace respectively ie and uo: *tèn* for *tiene*, *lòco* for *luogo*, etc.; and e is often added to a final vowel, as in *èe* for *è*, *tue* for *tu*, etc.

46. Nouns. Nouns in *-allo*, *-ello*, often form their plural in *-ai*, *-agli*, *-èi*, *-egli*: *cavallo*, *pl. cavai*, *cavagli*; *fratello*, *pl. fratèi*, *fratègli*.

47. Pronouns. The forms *mèl*, *tèl*, *sèl*, etc. are very common substitutes for *mè lo*, *tè lo*, *sè lo*, etc.; *mèn*, *tèn*, etc., for *mè ne*, *tè ne*, etc.; and *nòl* for *nòn lo*.

48. Verb-Endings in Particular Tenses.

a. Present Indicative: in the first person plural, **-iemo, -emo, -imo**, for **-iamo**.

b. Past Descriptive: in the first and third persons singular of the second and third conjugations, **v** is often dropped: **temea** for **temeva**, **segua** for **seguiva**.

c. Past Absolute: in the third singular, **temeo**, **finio**, for **temè**, **finì**; in the third plural, **trovaro**, **trovar**, **trovarno**, **trovōrono**, **trovōnno**, for **trovārono**; **colpiro**, **colpir**, **colpinno**, for **colpirono**; **temero**, **temer**, **temēnno**, for **temērono**.

d. Future: in the first person singular, **-aggio**, **-abbo**, for **-o**; in the third plural, **-āggiono**, **-ābbono**, for **-anno**: **troveraggio**, **troverabbo**, for **troverò**; **finirāggiono**, **finirābbono**, for **finiranno**, etc.

e. Past Future: in the first and third singular, **-ia** for **-ei**, **-ebbe**; **troveria** for **troverei**, **troverebbe**, etc.; in the third plural, **-iano**, **-ēbbono**, for **-ēbbero**: **finiriano**, **finirēbbono**, for **finirēbbero**, etc.

f. Present Subjunctive: in the singular, **e** for **i** in the first conjugation, **i** for **a** in the second and third: **trove**, **finischi**, **temi**, for **trovi**, **finisca**, **tema**.

g. Past Subjunctive: in the first person singular, **e** for **i**: **trovasse**, **finisse**, **temesse**, for **trovassi**, **finissi**, **temessi**. In the third plural, **-āssino**, **-āsseno**, **-āssono**, for **-āssero**; **-ēssino**, **-ēsseno**, **-ēssono**, for **-ēssero**; and **-īssino**, **-īsseno**, **-īssono** for **-īssero**: **trovāssino** etc., **finīssino** etc., **temēssino** etc.

h. Past Participle: in the first conjugation **-at-** is omitted, leaving such forms as **acconcio** for **acconciato**, **cārico** for **caricato**.

49. Special Forms of Particular Verbs:

a. **Avere**: **aggio**, **abbo**, **avo**, **aio**, for **hō**; **aggia**, **aia**, for **abbia**; **ei**, **ēbbimo**, for **ēbbi**, **avemmo**; **arò** etc. for **avrò** etc., and similar forms in the conditional.

b. **Dare**: **diè** for **diède**; **dièr**, **dièro**, **dièrono**, for **dièdero**.

c. Dovere : present indicative *deò, deì, deè, dovemo, dovete, deono* or *denno*.

d. Èssere : *eramo, erate*, for *eravamo, eravate*; *sem, sete*, for *siamo, siete*; *enno, en*, for *sono* (pl.); *sie, sieno*, for *sia, siano*; *u* for *o* in the past absolute and past subjunctive; *furo, fòro*, for *fūrono*, and *fue* for *fu*; *fia, fiano* or *fieno*, for *sarà, saranno*; *fòra, fòrano*, for *sarèi, sarèbbe, sarèbbero*; *sendo* for *essendo*; *suto, essuto, issuto*, for *stato*.

e. Fare : *faci, face*, for *fai, fa*; a past descriptive *feà* etc.; a past absolute *feì, festi, fè* or *feò, femmo, feste, fèrono, fer, fenno*.

f. Potere : a past future *porìa* etc.; *puòte, pònno*, for *può, pòssono*.

g. Volere : *vuogli* or *vuoli* for *vuoi*; *vòlsi, vòlse, vòlsero*, for *vòlli, vòlle, vòllero*.

XII. VERSIFICATION

50. Italian versification is reckoned not in feet but in syllables. These are grouped and divided by the "rhythmic accent," which falls at least twice in every line, on the penultimate syllable and at least one other.

Nel mezzo del cammin di nostra vita.

51. An Italian verse or line, like an Italian word, is either *piano*, *tronco*, or *şdrūcciolo*, according as the closing accent falls on the penultimate, ultimate, or antepenultimate syllable. But all lines are counted as *piani*, since if represented in musical notation the time would be the same; that is, the accented ultimate of a *verso tronco* would equal the two syllables of a *verso piano*, while the last two short syllables of a *verso şdrūcciolo* would be no longer than the final unaccented one of a *verso piano*. For example, in the following stanza each line is counted as having seven syllables :

Tu che, da tanti sēcoli,
 Soffri, combatti e prēghi;
 Che le tue tēde spiēghi
 Dall' uno all' altro mar.

52. Elision always occurs when a word ending in a vowel is followed by a word beginning with one, and the two syllables are counted, not pronounced, as one. There are two in the above selection, *combatti e* and *uno all'*, and it would be difficult to find a stanza in which there was no example of elision.

53. Diphthongs are counted as two syllables at the end of a verse, and usually as one in the middle. But those which begin with *i* are often, and others sometimes, counted as two in the middle of a verse, and are then marked with a diæresis.

Di tal superbia qui si paga il fio.
 Se buona oraziōn lui non aīta.

a. Triphthongs are counted usually as one syllable.

E come già sei de' miei rari amici.

54. Number of Syllables. Italian verses are classified as either even-numbered (*parisillabi*) or odd-numbered (*imparisillabi*) according as the number of syllables is even or odd. The *parisillabi* are often *tronchi* but rarely *sdrūccioli*; the *imparisillabi* may be either. There are four varieties of each:

a. Parisillabi:

The four-syllabled verse (*quaternario*) and the eight-syllabled (*ottonario*) give the effect of trochaic meter.

Bēn è vēr, quando è giocondo
 Ride il mondo,
 Ride il ciēl quando è gioioso;
 Bēn è vēr; ma non san pōi
 Come vōi
 Fare un riso grazioso.

1. The six-syllabled verse (*senārio*) is amphibrachic :

Stringiamci a coorte,
Siam pronti alla morte:
Italia chiamò!

2. The ten-syllabled verse (*decasillabo*) is anapæstic :

Oh giornate del nostro riscatto!
Oh dolente per sempre colui
Che da lunge, dal labbro d' altrui,
Come un uomo straniero, le udrà.

b. Imparisillabi :

1. The seven-syllabled (*settenārio*) and eleven-syllabled (*endecasillabo*) verses are the most employed of all: the latter is iambic in effect; the former, either iambic or anapæstic. The two are often combined :

Non è questo un morire,
Immortal Margherita,
Ma un passar anzi tempo a l' altra vita.

Benigne stelle che compagne fêse
Al fortunato fianco
Quando 'l bel parto giù nel mondo scôrse!

2. The *endecasillabo*, or heroic measure (*verso erōico*), when *tronco*, corresponds exactly to a line of English blank verse; when normally *piano*, to one of feminine ending. It may also be *sdrucchiolo*.

O folla Aragne, sì vedea io te
Già mezza aragna, trista in su gli stracci
Dell' òpera che mal per te si fè'.

Innanzi assai ch' all' òpra inconsumabile
Fosse la gente di Nembròt attenta.

3. The five-syllabled verse (*quinārio*), when accented on the first syllable, gives the effect of a dactyl plus a spondee; when

accented on the second, of an iamb plus an amphibrach. It is sometimes combined with the *endecasillabo*.

Oh bell' andare
Per barca in mare
Verso la sera
Di primavera!

Chişer mercè de l' alta şterpe e de la
Gloria di Roma.

4. The nine-syllabled verse (*novenário*) is variously accented, but never very effective or musical.

Fu sposa, fu madre felice.
Quel rubino ch' è il mio tesoro.
A duro stral di ria ventura.

55. Rhyme. The rhyme-word is *piano* or *tronco*, rarely *sdrucchiolo*. Close and open vowels may rhyme with each other, and the voiced and unvoiced *ş* and *s*; but not *z* and *z*. The same word may be used as rhyme-word, if taken in a different meaning. Thus *chişa* may rhyme with *impresa*, *roşa* with *glorioş*, *pure* 'pure' with *pure* 'however,' but not *mezza* with *tenerizza*.

56. Blank Verse is written in unrhymed *endecasillabi*, and is called *verso sciolto*.

57. Strophes. Strophes are formed of lines combined in a certain pattern. They are often grouped in pairs, their final verses rhyming on a word that is *tronco*, which makes a ringing sonorous effect among the more numerous feminine endings. The following are the commoner forms of strophe:

Terza rima, the measure of the "Divina Commedia," is made up of *endecasillabi* grouped in threes, and rhyming *aba bcb cdc*.

The **quartina** consists of four lines rhyming *abab* or *abba*.

The **sestina** consists of six lines, rhyming **abbacc** or **ababcc**.

Ottava rima consists of eight *endecasillabi*, rhyming **abababcc**.

The sonnet is the sonnet of English poetry, composed of *endecasillabi*. The octave must have but two rhyme-sounds, rhyming either **abba** on the Petrarchan or **abab** on the Shakespearean model.

The Petrarchan strophe is an extremely complicated arrangement of *endecasillabi* and *settenari*, in usually from nine to twenty lines. It is divided into two parts: the first, of six or eight lines, with intricate rhyme-scheme; the second an arrangement of tercets and couplets, connected with the first by a line (called the **chiave**, 'key') which rhymes with the one preceding it.

The old **sestina** is a form composed of six stanzas of six lines each, and a seventh stanza of three lines. These are unrhymed, but the end words of the first stanza are repeated in all the others, after a fixed order, the last word in the first line of each stanza being identical with that of the last line of the one preceding. The seventh stanza has one of these words at the end, and one in the middle, of each of its three lines.

LESSON I

INDEFINITE ARTICLE

58. Indefinite Article.

MASCULINE SINGULAR

un
uno

FEMININE SINGULAR

una
un'

59. Masculine. *a. Un* is used before a masculine noun beginning with a vowel, or with any consonant except *s impure* or *z*.

Un padre
Un uomo

A father
A man

1. The *s impure* is *s* followed by another consonant.

b. Uno is used before a masculine noun beginning with *s impure* or *z*.

Uno schioppo
Uno zio

A gun
An uncle

60. Feminine. *Una* is used before a feminine noun beginning with a consonant.

a. Una becomes *un'* before a vowel.

Una madre
Un' ora

A mother
An hour

61. The article in Italian, whether definite or indefinite, must be repeated before each noun.

Un ragazzo e **una** ragazza

A boy and girl

62. Interrogative sentences. *a.* The interrogative is commonly expressed merely by the inflection of the voice and the use of the interrogation point.

La donna parla a un ragazzo The woman speaks to a boy
La donna parla a un ragazzo? Does the woman speak to a boy?

b. The order may be inverted, the subject being thrown at the very end of the sentence.

Parla a un ragazzo **la donna**? Does the woman speak to a boy?
 Torna a mezzogiorno **il padre**? Does the father return at noon?

1. 'Do' or 'does,' used as auxiliary, does not exist in Italian.

63. Present Indicative of the Three Conjugations.

'I find,' 'am finding,' etc. 'I lose,' 'am losing,' etc. 'I understand,' etc.

trovo	troviamo	perdo	perdiamo	capisco	capiamo
trovi	trovate	perdi	perdete	capisci	capite
trova	trovano	perde	perdono	capisce	capiscono

a. Subject pronouns are usually omitted, except when required for clearness or emphasis.

VOCABULARY

un bambino a child, little boy	una bambina a child, little girl
un libro a book	una madre a mother
un padre a father	una scuola a school
un panchetto a stool, footstool	a, ad (<i>cf.</i> 39) to, at
uno schioppo a gun	dice (<i>fr.</i> <i>dire</i> , <i>irr.</i>) says
uno scolare a pupil	dicono (they) say
parlare speak	dopo after
tornare return	mezzogiorno noon
finire finish	Buon giorno! Good morning!
rispondere reply	Buona sera! Good evening!
ecco here is, here are	e, ed (<i>cf.</i> 39) and
il the (<i>m.</i>)	la the (<i>f.</i>)
tutti all, everybody (<i>pl. verb</i>)	

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

Buon giorno! — dice un bambino. — Buon giorno! — rispondono il padre e la madre. — Buon giorno! — dicono tutti. Il bambino torna a scuola e dice — Buon giorno! — ad uno scolare. Dopo mezzogiorno tutti dicono — Buona sera!

II

1. Finisco; torna; perdiamo; rispondete; trovano; capiscono; finisci. 2. Ecco un libro ed un panchetto. 3. Ecco un bambino ed una bambina. 4. Finiamo un libro. 5. Parla ad uno scolare. 6. Risponde — Buona sera! 7. Un padre e una madre parlano. 8. Ecco uno scolare. 9. Uno scolare finisce un libro. 10. Trovate uno schioppo. 11. Perde un libro. 12. Rispondono un bambino e una bambina.

III

1. Here is a little girl. 2. Here are a book and a gun. 3. I finish, you (*pl.*) understand; thou repliest; they lose, he speaks; thou speakest, he understands, we are returning, we understand. 4. The mother speaks to a little boy. 5. They are replying "Good evening!" 6. A pupil is returning to school. 7. I lose a gun. 8. A mother and a little boy are speaking. 9. They are speaking to a pupil. 10. We are returning to school. 11. Are you finishing a book? 12. The little girl finds the footstool.

LESSON II

PRESENT OF *AVERE* AND *ESSERE*64. Present Indicative of *avere* 'have' and *essere* 'be.'

I have, etc.		I am, etc.	
ho	abbiamo	sono	siamo
hai	avete	sei	siete
ha	hanno	è	sono

65. Personal Pronouns, Nominative Forms (cf. 63, a).

io I	noi we
tu thou	voi you
egli, ei, he	ègolino, <i>oftener</i> essi, they (<i>m.</i>)
ella she	èlleno, <i>oftener</i> esse, they (<i>f.</i>)
esso, essa, he, she, it	essi, esse, they

a. The third person is the one commonly used in address in Italian, to persons not members of one's family; the singular for one person, the plural for more than one.

Ha finito il libro?	Have you (<i>sg.</i>) finished the book?
Hanno comprato la casa?	Have you (<i>pl.</i>) bought the house?

I.* The pronoun is the feminine **Ella, or more familiarly **Lèi** (pl. **Loro**; usually written with capitals), even when a man is addressed. It stands for some feminine noun like **Vossignoria** 'Your Lordship,' formerly used in respectful address.

Lèi è ammalato, Signore?	Are you ill, sir?
--------------------------	-------------------

b. The second singular is used to a member of one's family, to the Deity, to a small child, to a woman house-servant, or to animals. Its plural is **voi**.

**c.* The second plural is used to a manservant, a peasant, a cabman, or a porter; but in the south of Italy it is the form in general use except for especial formality.

**d.* The second person, singular or plural, is used by the author to his reader.

e. In these exercises use the third person in address, unless it is indicated that the person spoken to is a small child or a member of the speaker's family.

Buon giorno, Signore! Come sta? Good morning, sir. How do you do?

Hai il libro, Giovannino? Have you the book, Johnny?

Mamma, vieni qua Mother, come here

Tōrnano a mezzogiorno, Signori? Do you return at noon, gentlemen?

f. 'It is' with a personal pronoun ('It is I,' 'It is you,' etc.) is rendered by a form agreeing in person with the pronoun.

È Lei? Is it you?

Sèi tu? Is it thou?

Siamo noi It is we

Chi è là? Sono io Who is there? It is I

66. Omission of the Indefinite Article. The indefinite article is omitted in the predicate after *èssere* (and *fare*, *diventare*) before an unmodified noun of rank, profession, or nationality, except in answer to 'Who is he?'

Chi è questa signora? Who is this lady?

È una contessa She is a countess

Questa signora è contessa This lady is a countess

Questo signore è un mēdico inglese This gentleman is an English physician

NOTE. For the syntax of the indefinite article, cf. Lesson XXV.

VOCABULARY

un Americano an American (<i>m.</i>)	italiano Italian
un' Americana an American (<i>f.</i>)	americano American
un cognato a brother-in-law	
una cognata a sister-in-law	di of
una contessa a countess	
un fratello a brother	questo this (<i>before masc. noun</i>)
un Italiano an Italian (<i>m.</i>)	questa this (<i>before fem. noun</i>)
un' Italiana an Italian (<i>f.</i>)	
un professore a professor	no no
una signora a lady, a married woman	non not (<i>precedes the verb</i>)
Signora used in address	sì yes
una signorina a young lady, an unmarried woman	chi? who?
Signorina used in address	o (<i>cf. 39</i>) or
un signore a gentleman	amare love
Signore used in address	avere paura (di) be afraid (of)
una sorella a sister	portare carry
uno zio an uncle	preferire prefer
una zia an aunt	temere fear

EXERCISE

I

1. Chi è questo signore? 2. È un professore. 3. Ha una sorella? 4. No, ha un fratello e una cognata. 5. Finisce il libro, Signora? 6. Il bambino ha il padre, la madre, e uno zio. 7. Il bambino e la bambina sono a scuola. 8. Siamo a scuola? 9. No, non siamo a scuola. 10. Il signore e la signora amano il bambino. 11. Tornano a mezzogiorno, Signore? No, non torniamo. 12. La bambina capisce. 13. È Americana, Signorina? 14. No, non sono Americana, sono Italiana. 15. Ecco uno scolare. 16. Chi è? Sono io. 17. Ecco un signore. È professore? Sì, è un professore americano. 18. Tutti parlano a questa bambina. 19. Preferiamo il libro. 20. Non hanno paura.

II

1. Are you an Italian, Madam? 2. No, I am an American.
 3. This little girl is afraid of a gun. 4. Are they at school? 5. No, they are not at school. 6. Have you (*pl.*) a brother? 7. No, we have a brother-in-law and a sister-in-law. 8. Are you speaking to a professor? 9. Yes, I am speaking to a professor. 10. Who is this lady? She is an Italian. 11. Is she a countess? 12. Yes, she is an Italian countess. 13. Does the professor prefer a gun or a book? 14. The lady has an uncle.

LESSON III

PLURAL OF NOUNS

67. Plural of Nouns. *a.* Nouns ending in *o* or *e* in the singular change *o* or *e* to *i* in the plural.

Un ragazzo, due ragazzi	A boy, two boys
Un inglese, dieci inglesi	An Englishman, ten Englishmen
Una lezione, tre lezioni	One lesson, three lessons

b. Feminine nouns ending in *a* in the singular change *a* to *e* in the plural.

Una finestra, nove finestre	A window, nine windows
-----------------------------	------------------------

1. Masculine nouns in *a* take *i* in the plural.

Un socialista, quattro socialisti	A socialist, four socialists
-----------------------------------	------------------------------

NOTE. For full treatment of plural of nouns, see Lesson XXX.

68. Compound Tenses. *a.* The compound tenses of all transitive and some intransitive verbs are formed by means of *avere* (cf. 120). Certain others take *essere* (cf. 96, 98).

b. The past participle of verbs of the first conjugation ends in *-ato*, of the second in *-uto*, and of the third in *-ito*,

these terminations being substituted respectively for the infinitive endings **-are**, **-ere**, and **-ire**.

Ho finito il libro	I have finished the book
Abbiamo visitato la famiglia	We have visited the family
Hanno creduto la storia	They have believed the story
Il padre è tornato	The father has returned

69. Future Indicative of Model Verbs: 'I shall find,' etc.

troverò	troveremo	perderò	perderemo	capirò	capiremo
troverai	troverete	perderai	perderete	capirai	capirete
troverà	troveranno	perderà	perderanno	capirà	capiranno

VOCABULARY

un bicchiere	a glass	aiutare	help (<i>takes a before infinitive</i>)
un coltello	a knife	apparecchiare	set table
un cucchiaio (<i>pl. cucchiari</i>)	a spoon	consistere (<i>in</i>)	consist (<i>of</i>)
una forchetta	a fork	distendere (<i>irr. p. abs. and p. p.</i>)	spread
un piatto	a plate, dish	mettere (<i>irr. p. abs. and p. p.</i>)	put, put on
una posata	knife, fork, and spoon, a place at table	prima di	before (<i>time</i>)
una tavola	a table	domani	to-morrow
una tovaglia	a tablecloth	oggi	to-day
un uomo (<i>pl. uomini</i>)	a man	in	in, into
ma	but	su (<i>cf. 39</i>)	on
due	two		
quattro	four		

EXERCISE

I

1. La Flora è una buona (*good*) bambina. 2. Aiuterà la mamma ad apparecchiare. 3. Apparecchia prima di mezzogiorno. 4. Domani torneranno due uomini e un bambino. 5. Distende la tovaglia, mette quattro piatti, quattro bicchieri, e quattro posate. 6. Una posata consiste in un coltello, una forchetta, e un cucchiaio. 7. Un

bambino e una bambina distenderanno la tovaglia. 8. Metterò uno schioppo sur una tavola. 9. Troveremo il libro prima di domani. 10. Bambini, apparecchierete a mezzogiorno.

II

1. One mother, two mothers; a glass, four glasses; a pupil, four pupils. 2. I shall understand, thou wilt put, they will reply, we shall return. 3. They will return to-morrow. 4. We shall set the table before noon. 5. Children, you will lay the cloth. 6. I shall put on four knives, two forks, two glasses, and one spoon. 7. Shall you return before to-morrow, sir? 8. Uncle, shall you bring a gun and a knife? 9. They will return to school and finish the book. 10. Two men are speaking to a pupil. 11. They have set the table, but we have lost two knives. 12. They will help Maria to find the fork.

LESSON IV

DEFINITE ARTICLE

70. The Definite Article. Forms :

MASC. SING.	MASC. PLUR.	FEM. SING.	FEM. PLUR.
il	i	la	le
lo	gli		
l'	{ gli gl'	l'	{ le l'

71. **Masculine.** *a.* **Il, i,** are used before masculine nouns beginning with any consonant except *s impure, z,* or **gn.**

Il letto, i letti

The bed, the beds

b. **Lo, gli,** are used before masculine nouns beginning with *s impure, z,* or **gn.**

Lo Spagnuolo, gli Spagnuoli

The Spaniard, the Spaniards

Lo zio, gli zii

The uncle, the uncles

Lo gnocco, gli gnocchi

The dumpling, the dumplings

*1. For **gli** is often substituted **li** before words in which the syllable **gli** occurs.

Lo scoglio, **li** scogli The reef, the reefs

*2. For **i** is substituted **gli** before the plural of **dio**.

Il dio, **gli** dei (cf. § 179, c) The god, the gods

c. **L', gli**, are used before masculine nouns beginning with a vowel.

L' autore, **gli** autori The author, the authors

1. **Gli** becomes **gl'** when the vowel is **i**.

L' imperatore, **gl'** imperatori The emperor, the emperors

***d.** The form **li** often occurs in dates.

Li 8 dicembre The eighth of December

72. Feminine. **a.** **La, le**, are used before feminine nouns beginning with a consonant.

La sēggiola, **le** sēggiole The chair, the chairs

La stanza, **le** stanze The room, the rooms

b. **L', le**, are used before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel.

L' ora, **le** ore The hour, the hours

1. **Le** becomes **l'** when the vowel is **e** unless the plural is identical with the singular.

L' era, **l'** ere The era, the eras

L' età, **le** età The age, the ages

73. Uses of the Definite Article. **a.** The definite article is required, contrary to English usage, before an abstract noun, or a noun taken in a general sense as representative of its class.

La vita è breve Life is short

I cavalli sono intelligenti Horses are intelligent

La pazienza è una virtù Patience is a virtue

La vita dell' ape The life of the bee

b. The definite article is used before the surnames of men ; and familiarly before the given names of women.

L' Ariosto fu un grande scrittore Ariosto was a great author

La Pietrina chiama la Signora B. Pietrina is calling Mrs. B.

NOTE. For the syntax of the definite article, see Lesson XXII.

74. Past Absolute Indicative of Model Verbs : ' I found, ' etc.

trovai	trovammo	perdei	perdemmo	capii	capimmo
trovasti	trovaste	perdesti	perdeste	capisti	capiste
trovò	trovârõno	perdè	perdèrono	capì	capìrono

VOCABULARY

l' amico (<i>m.</i>) friend	l' occasione (<i>f.</i>) opportunity
l' avvocato (<i>m.</i>) lawyer	la pazienza patience
la battaglia battle	la salute health
la bellezza beauty	la scommessa wager
la bussola compass, bearings	il sonno sleep
il cervello brain, mind	lo speculatore speculator
il colmo summit	la sventura misfortune
il coraggio courage	il tempo time
il denaro money	il tiranno tyrant
la forza force	la vita life
il generale general	ieri yesterday
la gioventù youth	finalmente finally
la gloria glory	stamane this morning
l' imprudente (<i>m.</i>) imprudent man	per for ; <i>with infinitive</i> in order
l' ingrato (<i>m.</i>) ingrate	to
la lite lawsuit	tre three
la memoria memory	cinque five
il mondo world	tutto all, everything

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

L' uomo perde tutto in questo mondo : perde la bellezza, la gioventù, le forze, gli amici, la pazienza, il tempo, il coraggio, la gloria, l' occasione, la bussola, le scommesse, il cervello, e finalmente, per colmo di sventura, perde la vita. Gl' imprudenti perdono la salute, gli avvocati perdono le liti, i generali perdono le battaglie, i tiranni perdono il sonno, gl' ingrati la memoria e gli speculatori il denaro.

II

1. Lo speculatore perde la scommessa. 2. Il generale, per colmo di sventura, perde l' occasione. 3. Apparecchieranno, tornarono ; consiste, distendesti, finiste, capì ; tememmo, risponderemo ; aiutò, parlano, portai, aiuterò, parlerai, temerono. 4. L' avvocato parlò ad un amico. 5. Gli scolari finirono il libro. 6. I generali perderono la battaglia.

III

1. Did you understand the lesson yesterday, children? 2. The men lost the gun, and returned. 3. Speculators lose sleep. 4. Did you return yesterday, sir? 5. The lawyers will lose the case. 6. We have the opportunities in this world, but we lose time. 7. The pupil carried the books to school. 8. We laid the cloth and helped our mother [*la mamma*]. 9. The imprudent (men) talked to a speculator. 10. Thou returnest, he spoke, we finished ; I shall put, they carried, he will aid ; thou spokest, you returned, they feared, I found ; we are afraid.

b. And in enumerations.

Garibaldi non offrì ai suoi soldati
che fame, sete, marce forzate,
battaglie e morte

Garibaldi offered his soldiers noth-
ing but hunger, thirst, forced
marches, battles, and death

78. The Possessive. The possessive in Italian is always expressed by *di* before a noun.

La casa *di* mio padre

My father's house

L'orologio *di* Giovanni

John's watch

Ecco un quaderno; è *dello* scolare?

Here is an exercise book; is it
the pupil's?

79. Past Future ('should,' 'would') of Model Verbs.

troverei

troveremmo

perderei

perderemmo

troveresti

trovereste

perderesti

perdereste

troverebbe

troverebbero

perderebbe

perderebbero

capirei

capiremmo

capiresti

capireste

capirebbe

capirebbero

VOCABULARY

l'acqua (*f.*) water

il fiore flower

il giardino garden

la mattina morning

il mughetto lily-of-the-valley

la pianta plant, tree

la rosa rose

lo scaffale shelf

la tazza cup

bello beautiful

fiorito in bloom

molto much

ogni every

annaffiare water

appassire wither

fiorire bloom

alzare raise

scendere (*p. abs. and p. p. irr.*) de-
scend, go down

alle sei at six o'clock

ci sono there are

senza without

sette seven

si (*third person refl.*) himself, her-
self, itself, themselves

si alza (*refl. use of alzare*) rises

EXERCISE**I. READING LESSON**

La Luigina ha un bel giardino tutto fiorito. Nel giardino ci sono rose e mughetti. La Luigina ama molto i fiori. Ogni mattina si alza alle sei, scende nel giardino e annaffia le piante. Le piante appassirebbero senz' acqua.

II

1. Il padre della bambina aiutò la famiglia dello zio. 2. Metterei i coltelli colle forchette sulla tavola. 3. Ci sono dei fiori nel giardino dell' amico? 4. Portano dei libri dalla scuola. 5. Non troveremmo il libro sullo scaffale? 6. I bambini non apparecchierebbero senza la mamma.

III

1. Are there some roses on the table? 2. There are roses and lilies-of-the-valley in the garden. 3. Would the plants bloom without water? No, they would wither. 4. The little boys carried a gun from the table to the shelf. 5. By the men, to the pupils, for the little boys, for the mother, of the books, with the friend, on the footstool, in the cup. 6. Would you speak to the speculator and the lawyer? 7. We should not put the flowers with the books. 8. The uncles would go down into the lawyer's garden. 9. The pupils' mother will lay the cloth. 10. They will put the table in the garden.

LESSON VI

GENDER OF NOUNS

80. Gender of Nouns. *a.* Names of males are masculine ; names of females are feminine.

Il nonno

The grandfather

La donna

The woman

1. EXCEPTIONS: **guida** 'guide,' **guàrdia** 'guard,' 'policeman,' **persona** 'person,' **recluta** 'recruit,' **sentinella** 'sentinel,' **spia** 'spy,' and **vedetta** 'sentinel,' which are feminine, although usually referring to men.

b. Names of objects without sex are either masculine or feminine, there being no neuter in Italian.

1. Nouns ending in **a** are feminine.

La lāmpada

The lamp

EXCEPTIONS: **duca** 'duke,' **monarca** 'monarch,' **poeta** 'poet,' and other words listed under Lesson XXXIV ; and words ending in **-ista**, like **artista** 'artist' and **pianista** 'pianist,' when referring to men.

2. Nouns ending in **-giōne**, **-ziōne**, and **-ūdine** are feminine.

la ragiōne reason

la solitūdine solitude

la conversaziōne conversation

3. Nouns ending in **o** are masculine.

il ginōcchio knee

EXCEPTIONS: **l'ēco** (of common gender) 'echo,' and **la mano** 'hand.'

4. Nouns ending in **u** are feminine.

la virtù virtue

EXCEPTIONS: a few foreign words, like **il bambù** 'bamboo'; and some other parts of speech used substantively, as **il più** 'the most,' **per lo più** 'for the most part.'

NOTE. For further treatment of the gender of nouns, see Lesson XXXIV.

81. Four Tenses of *ēssere* 'be.'

PRESENT INDICATIVE

sono I am
seī thou art
è he, she, it is
ciamo we are
siēte you are
sono they are

PAST FUTURE

sarēi I should be
sarēsti thou wouldst be
sarēbbe he *etc.* would be
sarēmmo we should be
sarēste you would be
sarēbbero they would be

FUTURE INDICATIVE

sarò I shall be
sarai thou wilt be
sarà he, she, it will be
sarēmo we shall be
sarēte you will be
saranno they will be

PAST ABSOLUTE

fui I was
fōsti thou wast
fu he *etc.* was
fummo we were
fōste you were
fūrono they were

VOCABULARY

la casa house
a casa home, homeward
il duca duke (*pl. duchi*)
la festa festival
la fine end
la guida guide
la lezione lesson
la mano hand *de mano*
il monarca monarch
la persona person
il poeta poet
la porta door

la sentinella sentinel
la settimana week
la vacanza vacation
la vedetta scout
la volontà will, willingness
battere beat, clap
bisognare (*impers.*) be necessary
cominciare begin (*takes a before infin.*)
continuare continue
imparare learn
avrò I shall have

anche also, even	quel che what, that which
bene well	otto eight
che who, which (<i>rel.</i>)	dieci ten
come how, as	starò (<i>from stare, irr.</i>) I shall be
quanti, -e how many?	voglio (<i>from volere, irr.</i>) I wish
andremo we shall go	non è necessario it is not necessary

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

Il bambino dice :

Lunedì. — Voglio cominciare bene la settimana ; starò attento alle lezioni, e sarò buono.

Martedì. — Bisogna continuare quel che abbiamo ben cominciato. Anche oggi sarò buono.

Mercoledì. — Come sono contento ! Domani è giovedì, e avrò vacanza !

Giovedì. — Abbiamo vacanza ! Battiamo le mani !

Venerdì. — Oggi tornerò a scuola con molta volontà.

Sābato. — È la fine della settimana.

Domēnica. — La domenica è giorno di festa !

II

1. Quanti giorni ci sono nella settimana ? 2. Nella settimana ci sono sette giorni. 3. Domani è lunedì ; bisognerà tornare a scuola. 4. Chi sono arrivati lunedì ? Un poeta e una sentinella. 5. I bambini imparerebbero le lezioni. 6. Saremo, sarebbero, siete, fui, sono, siamo, saranno. 7. Abbiamo vacanza il giovedì. 8. Cominciò a imparare le lezioni.

III

1. To-morrow is Friday, and I shall learn the four lessons. 2. He would be at the door of the school at noon. 3. We shall go to school Monday, but at the end of the week we shall return home. 4. It is necessary to set the table before noon, and the

children will put on the cups with the glasses. 5. How many cups are there on the shelf? 6. Dante was an Italian poet. 7. Who are the men in the garden? They are a guide and a scout; they are speaking to the duke. 8. The children will clap their (the) hands at the end of the week. 9. The lady's flowers are in the glass; I shall put some water in the glass. 10. On Sunday it is not necessary to learn lessons.

LESSON VII

ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

82. Most adjectives end in either **o** or **e**, masc. sing.

a. Adjectives in **o** have the forms of the nouns in **o** and **a**: **rosso, rossi, rossa, rosse**, 'red.'

Il libro rosso

The red book

Le roşe rosşe

The red roses

b. Adjectives in **e** take **i** in the plural, but do not change for gender.

La c amera grande, le c amere grandi The large room, the large rooms
Un contadino s emplice, dei contadini s emplici A simple peasant, simple peasants

83. Agreement of Adjectives. **a.** An adjective agrees with its noun in gender and number.

Il cappello nero

The black hat

Le picc ole mani

The small hands

La ro a e la m ammola belle

The beautiful rose and violet

***b.** An adjective modifying two or more nouns of different gender is either masculine plural or in agreement with the noun nearest it.

Prati e selve vastissime

Very vast meadows and woods

1. But when referring to persons it must be in the masculine plural.

I signōri e le signōre sono partiti The gentlemen and ladies are gone

*c. A plural noun may take two or more adjectives in the singular instead of being repeated in the singular before each adjective.

I govērni inglese e tedesco The English and German governments

84. Position of Adjectives. a. Most adjectives of size or quantity, numerals and pronominal adjectives, and usually bello, buono, solo, ūltimo, and ūnico, precede the noun.

Una pīcola scātola	A small box
Hō poco denaro	I have little money
Il primo capītolo	The first chapter
Quegli uōmini sono franceṣi	Those men are French

1. Numerals may follow when emphatic.

Lire 20

20 lire

b. Adjectives of shape, color, nationality, and descriptive qualities generally, participles used as adjectives, adjectives longer than their nouns, and adjectives modified by an adverb or a suffix, usually follow.

La stampa inglese	The English press
Il vestito celeste	The blue dress
La cioccolata svizzera	Swiss chocolate
La notte oscura	The dark night
Il risultato voluto	The desired result
Una persona rispettabile	A respectable person
Una bella signōra, una signōra piū bella, una signorina bellina	A beautiful lady, a more beautiful lady, a pretty young lady

1. Adjectives of characteristic may precede, when the characteristic is peculiarly intimate or usual.

La bianca neve

The white snow

*c. When two or more adjectives modify the same noun, either both follow, or one precedes and the other follows, the less emphatic preceding.

Un palazzo antico e bello	} A beautiful ancient palace
Un bel palazzo antico	

*d. Some adjectives have a different meaning according as they precede or follow their noun. The unusual position often indicates the literal, and the usual position a more metaphorical, meaning.

Un uomo grande

A large man

Un grand' uomo

A great man

Una cara figlia

A dear daughter

Una collana cara

A costly necklace

La chiesa di santo Stēfano

The church of St. Stephen

È un uomo santo

He is a saintly man

*e. The adjective may also be placed in the unusual position for emphasis.

85. Some Irregular Adjectives. a. The adjectives buono 'good,' bello 'beautiful,' santo 'saint,' 'saintly,' and grande 'large,' vary in the masculine on the same principle as do the articles. The forms are —

1. Before any consonant except *s impure*, sg. buono, bello, santo, grande; pl. buoni, belli, santi, grandi. (Gran may also be used in the feminine singular and the masculine plural.)

Un buono soldato

A good soldier

Un bello cavallo, dei belli cavalli

A handsome horse, handsome horses

San Pāolo

Saint Paul

Una gran sala

A large hall

2. Before a vowel, sg. (m. and f.) **buon, bell', sant', grand'**; pl. (m.) **buoni, begli, santi, grandi**.

Un buon amico	A good friend
Un bell' uomo	A handsome man
Sant' Agostino	Saint Augustine
Begli uccelli	Beautiful birds
La bell' aria	The beautiful aria

3. Before *s impure*, in the predicate, or when placed after their noun, the full forms: sg. **buono, bello, santo, grande**; pl. **buoni, belli, santi, grandi**; **begli** with *s impure*.

Buon pane	Good bread
Questo pane è buono	This bread is good
Un bello spettacolo	A fine spectacle
Santo Stēfano	Saint Stephen
I buoni stivali	Good boots
Begli uomini	Handsome men
Gli uomini sono belli	The men are handsome

b. The following adjectives are invariable: **fu** 'the late,' 'formerly,' **pari** 'equal,' 'even,' **impari** 'unequal,' 'odd,' **più** 'many,' 'most,' and **ogni** 'every' (with no plural).

La fu Signora Bianchi	The late Mrs. White
Il numero pari	The even number
I numeri impari	Uneven numbers
Sono andato più volte a Parigi	I have been to Paris several times
Il pane di ogni giorno	Daily bread

86. The Demonstrative Adjective. (Cf. 190.)

a. Questo 'this.'

SINGULAR	PLURAL
questo, quest' (<i>m.</i>)	questi (<i>m.</i>)
questa (<i>f.</i>)	queste (<i>f.</i>)

b. Quello 'that.'

SINGULAR

quel, quello, quell' (*m.*)
 quella, quell' (*f.*)

PLURAL

quelli, quei, quegli
 quelle

1. **Quello** is inflected like **bello**. (Cf. 85, a.)

87. The Interrogative Adjective. (Cf. 191.)

a. **Quanto, quanta?** 'how much?'

Quanti, quante? 'how many?'

b. **Quale, quali?** 'which, which one?' 'which ones?'

c. **Che?** 'what?'

88. Any adjective may be used substantively.

Il **pōvero**

The poor man

a. Proper adjectives are not capitalized unless used substantively, and not invariably even then.

- La lingua **franceſe**

The French language

Ecco due **Ingleſi** (**ingleſi**)

There are two Englishmen

*b. The substantive is understood after the adjective in a good many familiar phrases.

Per la piū **breve** (strada)

By the shortest route

Alla **deſtra** (mano)

To the right

Averla (ſorte) **peggio**

To have a worse lot

Nel (territorio) **fiorentino**

In the Florentine territory

Alla **buona** (manięra)

Familiarly, in everyday fashion

Alla (manięra) **franceſe**

In the French mode

89. Adverbs. (See Lesson XXXVI.)

a. Adverbs are most commonly formed by adding **-mente** to the feminine form of the adjective.

Sincero, sinceramente

Sincere, sincerely

Prudente, prudentemente

Prudent, prudently

b. The words **molto** 'much,' **poco** 'little,' **troppo** 'too much,' **tanto** 'so much,' and **quanto** 'as much' or 'how much,' are either adverbs or adjectives. As adjectives they have the forms of adjectives in *o*; as adverbs they are invariable.

Molti uōmini sono **molto** infelici

Lei è **tanto** buono, Signore

Tanti saluti a casa

Ho **pochi** libri; sono **troppo** cari

Ci sono **troppe** persone nella stanza

Many men are very unhappy

You are so kind, sir

Many kind regards to your family

I have few books; they are too dear

There are too many persons in the room

VOCABULARY

l' **āngolo** (*m.*) corner

l' **appartamento** (*m.*) apartment

la **cāmera da letto** (*m.*) bedroom

la **chiesa** church

la **cucina** kitchen, cooking

l' **invēno** (*m.*) winter

il **palazzo** palace

il **panorama** view

il **ponte** bridge

la **riva** bank, wharf

la **sala da pranzo** (*m.*) dining-room

il **salōne** parlor

la **stanza** room

la **terrazza** balcony

la **torre** tower

la **via** street

Firenze Florence

Le Cascine 'the Dairies,' public gardens of Florence

lo **Schiavone** Slav

la **piazza** square

bello fine, beautiful

buono good

famoso famous

grande large

largo (*pl. larghi, larghe*) wide

lungo (*pl. lunghi, lunghe*) long

santo saint, saintly

vecchio (*pl. vecchi*) old

abitare dwell, live

guardare look at

passare pass, spend

sedere (*irr.*) sit

accanto next, next door

dinanzi a in front of

dove where

fa makes, does (*from fare, irr.*)

fa āngolo con is at the corner of

perchē because, why

sempre always

vediamo we see

vicino a near

EXERCISE

I

1. Passiamo quest' inverno a Firenze. 2. Abbiamo un bell' appartamento vicino alle Cascine. 3. Il signore che abita nella casa accanto è un buon medico inglese. 4. Nell' appartamento ci sono sette stanze: un salone, una sala da pranzo, la cucina, e quattro camere da letto. 5. Le camere sono grandi, e il salone è bello, con una terrazza molto larga. 6. Dopo il pranzo sediamo ogni sera sulla terrazza, e guardiamo il bel panorama. 7. Vediamo la torre della chiesa di Santo Spirito, e il Ponte Vecchio famoso, ma non vediamo il Palazzo Vecchio. 8. Il palazzo dove abitiamo fa angolo colla Via Curtatone. 9. Il Palazzo Pitti è vicino al Ponte Vecchio.

II

1. We live in a large apartment in Florence. 2. We have six rooms, with a large parlor, but a very small kitchen. 3. That man is the lawyer who lives near the Old Palace. 4. The gentleman who lives in the house next door is a lawyer. 5. There is a fine square in front of the Pitti Palace. 6. Near the church of Saint Mark in Venice is the Church of St. Stephen. 7. The Duke's palace is near the Wharf of the Slavs. 8. Handsome men are not always good; good men are not always handsome. 9. Those men live in a large palace; the rooms are large, they are long and wide. 10. Why are those ladies looking at the Old Bridge? Because it is beautiful and famous. 11. Those gentlemen are looking at the Palace of the Uffizi (*pl.*).

LESSON VIII

THE REGULAR VERBS

90. *a.* There are three regular conjugations, the first ending in *-are* in the infinitive, the second in *-ère* or *'ere*, and the third in *-ire*.

b. Table of Regular Verbs.

INFINITIVE

trov-are 'find' crēd-ere 'believe, think' cap-ire 'understand'

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

trov-ando cred-endo cap-endo

PAST PARTICIPLE

trov-ato, -a, -i, -e cred-uto, -a, -i, -e cap-ito, -a, -i, -e

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I find, I am finding, *etc.*

trōv-o	trov-iamo	crēd-o	cred-iamo	cap-isco	cap-iamo
trōv-i	trov-ate	crēd-i	cred-ete	cap-isci	cap-ite
trōv-a	trōv-ano	crēd-e	crēd-ono	cap-isce	cap-iscono

PAST DESCRIPTIVE

I found, was finding, used to find, *etc.*

trov-avo, -ava	trov-avamo	cred-evo, -eva, -ea	cred-evamo
trov-avi	trov-avate	cred-evi	cred-evate
trov-ava	trov-avano	cred-eva, -ea	cred-evano, -evano
	cap-ivo, -iva, -ia	cap-ivamo	
	cap-ivi	cap-ivate	
	cap-iva, -ia	cap-ivano	

PAST ABSOLUTE

I found, did find, *etc.*

trov-ai	trov-ammo	cred-ēi, -ētti	cred-emma
trov-asti	trov-aste	cred-ēsti	cred-ēste
trov-ò	trov-arono	cred-è, -ette	cred-arono, -ettero
	cap-ii	cap-immo	
	cap-isti	cap-iste	
	cap-ì	cap-irono	

FUTURE

I shall find, *etc.*

trov-er-ò	trov-er-emo	cred-er-ò	cred-er-emo
trov-er-ai	trov-er-ete	cred-er-ai	cred-er-ete
trov-er-à	trov-er-anno	cred-er-à	cred-er-anno
	cap-ir-ò	cap-ir-emo	
	cap-ir-ai	cap-ir-ete	
	cap-ir-à	cap-ir-anno	

PAST FUTURE

I should find, *etc.*

trover-ēi	trover-emma	creder-ēi	creder-emma
trover-ēsti	trover-ēste	creder-ēsti	creder-ēste
trover-ēbbe	trover-ēbbero	creder-ēbbe	creder-ēbbero
	capir-ēi	capir-emma	
	capir-ēsti	capir-ēste	
	capir-ēbbe	capir-ēbbero	

IMPERATIVE

Find, let him find, let us find, *etc.*

	trov-iamo		cred-iamo		cap-iamo
trov-a	trov-ate	cred-i	cred-ete	cap-isci	cap-ite
trov-i	trov-ino	cred-a	cred-ano	cap-isca	cap-iscano

SUBJUNCTIVE

(Variously rendered, according to sense)

PRESENT

trov-i	trov-iamo	cređ-a	cred-iamo	cap-isca	cap-iamo
trov-i	trov-iate	cređ-a	cred-iate	cap-isca	cap-iate
trov-i	trōv-ino	cređ-a	crēđ-ano	cap-isca	cap-iscano

PAST

trov-assi	trov-āssimo	cred-essi	cred-ēssimo	cap-issi	cap-īssimo
trov-assi	trov-aste	cred-essi	cred-ēste	cap-issi	cap-iste
trov-asse	trov-āssero	cred-esse	cred-ēssero	cap-isse	cap-īssero

91. Formation of Regular Verbs. Italian regular verbs have three principal parts: the infinitive, and the present and past participles. These all have the same stem.

a. All simple tenses except future and past future are formed by dropping **-are**, **-ire**, or **-ere** from the infinitive, and adding the personal endings. For compound tenses, cf. **96, 120**.

b. The future and past future are formed by dropping merely the final **e** of the infinitive, and adding the terminations; verbs of the first conjugation first change the **a** of **-are** to **e**.

c. Verbs of the third conjugation may be said to have a second stem in their inchoative form in **-isco**, from which are formed the singular and third person plural of the present indicative and subjunctive, and the singular imperative.

92. Imperative. *a.* The third persons of the imperative, it will be seen, are filled in from the subjunctive.

Finisca il lavoro	Let him finish the work
Tōrnino a mezzogiorno	Let them return at noon
Cređa quello che dico, Signore	Believe what I say, sir

b. The negative of the second person singular of the imperative is formed with the infinitive.

Non aver paura, Chiarina	Do not be afraid, little Clara
Non apparecchiare ancora, Peppina	Do not set the table yet, Josephine

93. Past Subjunctive. a. The past subjunctive is used in a condition of which the conclusion is in the past future.

Se mi mandasse il danaro, com- prerei questa casa	If he should send (sent) me the money, I should buy this house
-------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------

VOCABULARY

l' anno (<i>m.</i>) year	azzurro blue
l' autunno (<i>m.</i>) autumn	caldo hot
il calore heat	corto short
il colore color	freddo cold
l' estate (<i>f.</i>) summer	primo first
il garofano carnation	ultimo last
la giornata day, period of one day	verde green
il lavoro work, task	nove nine
il meşe month	dodici twelve
il Natale Christmas	quale, -i which? which one?
la neve snow	cantare sing
il nido nest	diminuire lessen
la primavera spring	fa caldo it is hot (weather)
la stagione season	fa freddo it is cold (weather)
la terra earth	si chiudono <i>refl. use of chiudere</i> (<i>irr.</i>) close
la tristezza sadness	si riaprono <i>refl. use of riaprire</i> (<i>irr.</i>) reopen
l' uccello (<i>m.</i>) bird	si tinge <i>refl. use of tingere</i> (<i>irr.</i>) color
la vendemmia vintage	
più more, most	
se if	

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

I MESI DELL' ANNO

Gennaio. — È il primo mese. Neve, freddo, e giornate corte.

Febbraio. — È il mese più corto dell' anno.

Marzo. — Comincia la primavera. L' uccello torna al vecchio nido.

Aprile. — La terra si tinge di verde, il cielo d' azzurro.

Maggio. — È il mese delle rose e dei garofani. Che festa di colori!

Giugno. — Finisce l' anno scolastico.

Luglio. — È estate. Si chiudono le scuole.

Agosto. — Fa molto caldo.

Settembre. — Il calore dell' estate diminuisce. Comincia la vendemmia e l' autunno.

Ottobre. — La sera e la mattina fa fresco. Si riaprono le scuole.

Novembre. — Questo è il mese della tristezza.

Dicembre. — È l' ultimo mese dell' anno, e siamo all' inverno. Ecco il freddo, ma anche la più bella delle feste: il Natale!

II

1. Quanti mesi ci sono nell' anno? 2. Fa freddo di gennaio, ma il freddo diminuisce di marzo. 3. È primavera; gli uccelli cominciano a cantare nel giardino. 4. Le nevi d' inverno sono molto fredde. 5. Qual è la stagione calda? Fa sempre caldo d' estate. 6. Nella primavera cantano gli uccelli. 7. Cantino, Signorine, questa sera. 8. Se gli uccelli non temessero il freddo, tornerebbero più presto al nido. 9. Tornate a mezzogiorno, bambini. 10. Se il freddo diminuisse, la primavera tornerebbe. 11. Luisina, porta i piatti sulla tavola. 12. Se finissimo il lavoro prima di mezzogiorno, torneremmo a casa. 13. Se farà troppo caldo non torneremo.

III

1. There are twelve months in the year. 2. December, January, and February are the months of winter. What are the months of summer? 3. Which is the cold season? It is always cold in winter. 4. If the men should speak, would he reply? 5. Let us return home. 6. If the birds returned to the old nest, they would sing. 7. It is always very hot in August, but the heat grows less in September. 8. Do not fear the heat of summer. 9. Speak to that sentinel, sir. 10. If the cold should diminish, we should return in March. 11. If we spoke to the Italians, they would reply in Italian. 12. Little girl, do not be afraid of that gun. 13. Look, madam. 14. Go down into the garden, miss. 15. How many seasons are there in the year? 16. Reply in Italian, young ladies. 17. It is November; the days begin to be short.

LESSON IX

CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS

94. *a.* Accusative, Direct Object.

mi me	ci us
ti thee	vi you
lò him	li them (<i>m.</i>)
la her	lẹ them (<i>f.</i>)
nẹ some, any, of it, of them (<i>cf.</i> 124)	

*1. Instead of **ci** is often found, especially in poetry and older writings, the form **nẹ**; and sometimes **il** for **lò**.

b. Dative, Indirect Object.

mi to me, for me	ci to us, for us
ti to thee, for thee	vi to you, for you
gli to him, for him	
lẹ to her, for her	loro to them, for them (<i>m. or f.</i>)

c. Reflexive Object, Direct or Indirect.

mi myself, to <i>or</i> for myself	ci ourselves, <i>etc.</i>
ti thyself, to <i>or</i> for thyself	vi yourselves, <i>etc.</i>
si himself, herself, <i>etc.</i>	si themselves, <i>etc.</i> (<i>m. or f.</i>)

95. Rules of Syntax. *a.* These pronouns are called conjunctive, because conjoined to the verb in the relation of object. The object pronoun, whether direct, indirect, or reflexive, immediately precedes the governing finite verb (except **loro**, which always follows). If the verb is compound, the conjunctive (except **loro**) precedes the auxiliary; **loro** follows the participle.

Lø fa	He does it
Nø parla	He speaks of it
Ci alziamo	We get up
Mi ha detto la verità	He has told me the truth
Lø danno un mazzolino di fiori	They give her a bunch of flowers
Parliamo loro	We speak to them, let us speak to them
Abbiamo dato loro un quadro	We have given them a picture

*1. In literary usage **loro** will sometimes be found preceding the verb.

b. But if the governing verb be an infinitive, a positive imperative of the first or second person, a present participle, or a past participle used without auxiliary, then the conjunctive pronoun (except **loro**) becomes enclitic, being appended to the verb-form so as to make one word with it. **Loro** is never appended. The enclitic makes no change in the accent of the verb-form.

Viene a trovarlo	He comes to see him
Abbiamo fatto il possibile di trovarli	We have tried our best to find them

Vuol dir loro che sono arrivate delle lettere	He wishes to tell them that some letters have come
Avendolo	Having it
Avendolo detto	Having said it
Detto gli questo	This being said to him
Il dispaccio comunicatoci dal cōn- sole afferma che la guerra è stata dichiarata	The telegram communicated to us by the consul states that war has been declared
Lo punirono per averne parlato	They punished him for having spoken of it

1. *With the imperative :*

	troviāmolo		non lo perdiamo
trōvalo	trovātelo	non lo pērdere	non lo perdete
lo trōvi	lo trōvino	non lo pērda	non lo pērdano

2. The *e* is dropped from the infinitive before an enclitic pronoun (cf. 31, a).

Andiamo a trovarla	Let us go and see her
--------------------	-----------------------

VOCABULARY

bagnato wet	comprare buy
il burro butter	desiderare wish, desire
la campagna the country	favorire favor with, kindly give
la lettera letter	piacere (<i>irr.</i>) please, be pleasing to ; <i>mi piace</i> I like (<i>used w. dat.</i>)
l' ombrello <i>m.</i> umbrella	per piacere please
l' orolōgio <i>m.</i> watch	riavere get back, recover
il pane bread	dica 3 <i>sg. pres. subj. and imper.</i> of dire (<i>irr.</i>) say, tell (<i>takes di</i> <i>before inf.</i>)
il postino postman	vuole 3 <i>sg. pres. ind. of volere</i> (<i>irr.</i>) will, wish
la strada street	dia 3 <i>sg. pres. subj. and imper.</i> of dare (<i>irr.</i>) give
grāzie (<i>f. pl.</i>) thanks	sūbito at once
qua here	
fatto done, made ; <i>p. part. of fare</i> (<i>irr.</i>)	
aver fretta be in a hurry	
la sēggiola chair	

EXERCISE

I

1. Le piace la campagna, Signorina? Mi piace tanto. 2. Hai perduto l' orologio? Sì, l' ho perduto. 3. Dov' è il denaro? L' abbiamo perduto; abbiamo fatto di tutto per riaverlo. 4. Le lettere portatemi dal postino erano della famiglia. 5. Parlandole per la strada, capimmo che aveva fretta. 6. Guarda, Beppino, l' ombrello è bagnato; non lo portare qua. 7. Mi favorisca il pane, Signora. Grazie. 8. Ecco un bell' orologio; bisogna comprarlo per Giuseppe. 9. Lo dia a Giovanni, e gli dica di portarlo a Giuseppe. 10. Vediamo degl' Italiani. 11. Le dice che abbiamo perduto il denaro, ma non lo creda. 12. Ne abbiamo dato a Gigi.

II

1. Is this John's book? 2. Carry it to John, Chiarina; don't put it on the shelf. 3. Have you lost the money? Yes, I have lost it. 4. Do you wish to find it? I will help you. 5. Yes, help me to find it, please. 6. I spoke to him. She spoke to us. We spoke to them. 7. Please pass me the butter. Thank you. 8. Tell them to return before noon. 9. Put the chairs near the table; do not put them in front of the door. 10. Give us the flowers, please; do not give them to Maria. 11. Has he the money? No, carrying it home he lost it. 12. It is very hot to-day; I do not like the heat. 13. Buy some at once. 14. Don't speak of it, child.

LESSON X

THE VERB *ESSERE*

96. The Verb *Essere*, 'be.'

INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE
ēssere	essendo	stato
ēssere stato		essendo stato

INDICATIVE

PRESENT	PAST DESCRIPTIVE	PAST ABSOLUTE	FUTURE
sono siamo	ero, -a eravamo	fui fummo	sarò saremo
sēi siēte	erī eravate	fōsti fōste	sarai sarete
è sono	era erano	fu fūrono	sarà saranno

PRESENT PERFECT	PAST PERFECT	SECOND PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
sono stato, -a, etc.	ero stato, etc.	fui stato, etc.	sarò stato, etc.

PAST FUTURE
sarēi saremmo
sarēsti sareste
sarēbbe sarebbero

PAST FUTURE PERFECT
sarēi stato, etc.
sarēmmo stati, -e, etc.

IMPERATIVE

siamo
sii siēte
sia sīano

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT
sia siamo
sia siate
sia sīano

PAST
fōssi fōssimo
fōssi fōste
fōsse fōssero

PRESENT PERFECT
sia stato, etc.

PAST PERFECT
fōssi stato, etc.

97. The Passive Voice. *a.* The passive voice is constructed by means of the auxiliary *essere* and the past participle of the verb conjugated. It is used chiefly when the agent is expressed; otherwise the reflexive best translates the English passive. (See Lesson XII.)

L' Amērica è **stata scoperta** da America was discovered by Christopher Columbus
Cristōforo Colombo

*1. The passive may be constructed with the verbs **andare** 'go,' **venire** 'come,' **rimanere** 'remain,' but with reference rather to the state resultant from the action than to the action itself (cf. 129, 138, 149).

Va fatto così It should be done this way
Prima chę la frugale colazione Before the frugal luncheon was
venisse imbandita, il lavoro fu served, the work was done
terminato
Ne rimase stupefatto He was amazed at it

b. Model Passive Verb.

	INFINITIVE	
PRESENT		PERFECT
ēssere lodato, to be praised		ēssere stato lodato, to have been praised
	PARTICIPLE	
essendo lodato, being praised		essendo stato lodato, having been praised
	INDICATIVE	
PRESENT		PAST DESCRIPTIVE
sono lodato, I am praised, etc.		ero lodato, I was being praised, etc.
		PAST ABSOLUTE
FUTURE		
sarò lodato, I shall be praised, etc.		fui lodato, I was praised, etc.
		FUTURE PERFECT
PRESENT PERFECT		
sono stato lodato, etc.		sarò stato lodato, etc.

PAST PERFECT
ero stato lodato, *etc.*

SECOND PAST PERFECT
fui stato lodato, *etc.*

PAST FUTURE
sarèi lodato, *etc.*

PAST FUTURE PERFECT
sarèi stato lodato, *etc.*

IMPERATIVE
sii lodato, *etc.*

PRESENT
sia lodato, *etc.*

PAST
fossi lodato, *etc.*

PRESENT PERFECT
sia stato lodato, *etc.*

PAST PERFECT
fossi stato lodato, *etc.*

98. All passive, reflexive, and impersonal verbs (except *fare* used impersonally) are conjugated with *essere* (cf. 101).

I Cristiani primitivi fūrono perseguitati dai Romani	The early Christians were persecuted by the Romans
S' è alzato alle sette	He rose at seven
È piovuto	It has rained

99. After the auxiliary *essere*, the past participle agrees with the subject, except with reflexives (cf. 104, c, 1; 194, b).

Molte battàglie fūrono vinte dai Tedeschi	Many battles were won by the Germans
Sono venuti quei signori?	Have those gentlemen come?

VOCABULARY

la bandièra flag
la guèrra war
il pōpolo people
il sangue blood
il soldato soldier
lo stato state
la vōlta time, a time

arrivare arrive
combättere fight
difēndere (*irr.*) defend
dividere (*irr.*) divide
innalzare raise
insegnare teach (*insegno*)
morire (*irr.*) die

mostrare show
 spārgere (*irr.*) scatter
 venire (*irr.*, *p.p.* venuto) come
 bianco (*pl.* bianchi, bianche) white
 caro dear
 felice happy
 il prōprio own, one's own
 rosso red
 tutto all
 ancora yet, still
 cento hundred, a hundred
 chi? who?

circa about
 disse 3 *sg. p. abs. of dire (irr.)* say
 dobbiamo 1 *pl. pres. ind. of*
 dovere (*irr.*) must
 la nostra our
 or sono ago
 quando when
 stesso itself *etc. (not refl.)*, same
 subito immediately
 vogliamo 1 *pl. pres. ind. of volere*
 (*irr.*) wish, will

EXERCISE

I

LA BANDIERA NAZIONALE

La nostra bandiera nazionale è di tre colori : bianco, rosso, verde.

Essa è il simbolo della patria, e noi dobbiamo amarla come la patria stessa. Il soldato per essa combatte, ed è felice di spargere il proprio sangue e di morire per difenderla.

La nostra bella bandiera tricolore fu innalzata la prima volta dai soldati piemontesi, circa cento anni or sono, quando l' Italia, la nostra cara patria, non era ancora tutta unita e libera.

E il popolo subito l' amò, e disse che era la più bella di tutte ; e la cantò così :

La bandiera a tre colori
 sempre è stata la più bella ;
 noi vogliamo sempre quella,
 noi vogliam la libertà !

II

1. The national flag of the United States is of three colors : red, white, and blue. 2. The soldiers have come, carrying the flag of the state. 3. Carrying it always, they will have returned to the

war. 4. The tricolored flag was carried by the Italians in the war for [of] Independence. 5. Soldiers love their own country; they are glad to die to defend it. 6. The soldier has found the gun, but he has not yet returned. 7. Do you like the tricolored American flag? Yes, I like it.

LESSON XI

CONJUNCTIVES (CONTINUED)

100. *a.* **Ecco** takes the pronouns appended in the same manner as certain parts of the verb (cf. 95, *b*).

Dov' è la mia borsa? Èccola	Where is my bag? Here it is
Èccone	Here is some, here are some
Èccoci	Here we are

b. All conjunctive pronouns except **gli** and **glię** double their initial consonant when appended to a verb-form which ends in an accented vowel (cf. 5, *b*, 2; 125, *b*, 2).

Dammi del latte	Give me some milk
Fallo subito	Do it at once
Stacci attento	Pay attention to it

*1. The following types are confined to poetic or literary use:

Parlòmmi, <i>for</i> Mi parlò	He spoke to me
Porterallo, <i>for</i> Lo porterà	He will bring it to us
Guardòcci, <i>for</i> Ci guardò	He looked at us

c. **La** and **Lę** are the accusative and dative cases, respectively, of **Lęi** in direct address (cf. 65, *a*), and are used to persons of either sex (but **Li**, **Le**, accusative plural, according to sex).

A riveder la , Signore	Good-by, sir
Come Lę piace questo dolce, Signore?	How do you like this dessert, sir?
A riveder li , Signori	Good-by, gentlemen

1. The similar use of **lo** and **li** as the redundant object of reflexive verbs is provincial and incorrect.

Tu sei ammalato, **lo** si vede You are ill, one sees it

2. The word 'it' in such phrases as 'it is because' etc. is translated, if at all, by **gli** or **egli**.

Gli è perchè le leggi sono troppo It is because the laws are too
rigorose rigorous

101. Some intransitive verbs are conjugated with **essere** and some with **avere**:

a. The following always with **essere**:

andare go	morire die	scendere descend
arrivare arrive	nascere be born	 sorgere arise
cadere fall	partire depart	tornare return
comparire appear	parvenire arrive	uscire go out
correre run	piacere please	venire come
entrare enter	rimanere remain	stare be
essere be	riuscire succeed	

b.* The following (for reference only) always with **avere:

camminare walk	nitrire neigh	ridere laugh
deginare dine	parlare speak	sbadigliare yawn
dormire sleep	passaggiare take a walk	sognare dream
giocare play	piangere weep	sonnecchiare nap
muggire low	pranzare dine	starnutire sneeze

c.* The following is a partial list of verbs which take **avere when the *action* is thought of, and **essere** when the *state resultant* from the action is more considered.

appartenere belong	dimorare dwell	partire divide
bastare suffice	durare last	ritornare return
cessare cease	giungere arrive	salire go up
consistere consist	invecchiare grow old	succedere happen
degenerare degenerate	montare mount	vivere live

102. The verb 'to be' combined with the participle in '-ing,' in such English phrases as 'to be singing,' 'they are writing,' etc., is rendered in Italian by the verbs **stare** and **andare**. With **andare** the idea conveyed is more *active*, with **stare** more *static*.

Stanno cantando	They are singing
Sto leggendo	I am reading
Il ragazzo va crescendo a giorno a giorno	The boy is growing day by day
L' albero va perdendo le foglie	The tree is losing its leaves

103. Some Uses of da. The preposition **da** has many idiomatic uses :

a. To mean 'at the house of,' 'at,' 'to,' with a word referring to a person.

Andiamo dalla sorella mia	Let us go to my sister's
Sono andati dal guantaio	They have gone to the glover's (the glove-store)
Vuole andare da Chiara?	Do you wish to go to Clara's?
Abita da sua cognata	She lives at her sister-in-law's

b. With **essere**, to mean 'it is to be' with the sense of obligation or propriety. The infinitive then has often passive force.

È da sperarsi che quest' affare non andrà a finire male	It is to be hoped that this affair will not terminate badly
Èra da ridere	It was an occasion for laughter

VOCABULARY

la cioccolata	chocolate	la sēggiola	chair
Giuseppe	Joseph	la stazione	railway station
il nonno	grandfather	aspettare	wait, wait for
la pasta	small cake	invitare	invite
il patriota	patriot	sperare	hope (spēro)
il ritratto	portrait		

due volte twice
 a piedi on foot
 fiorentino Florentine
 contro against
 per tempo early
 da, date, 2 sg. and pl. imper. of
 dare
 di' 2 sg. imper. of dire

andato *p.p.* of andare go
 morto *p.p.* of morire die
 partito *p.p.* of partire go away
 piaciuto *p.p.* of piacere please
 rimasto *p.p.* of rimanere remain
 sceso *p.p.* of scendere go down
 uscito *p.p.* of uscire go out
 venuto *p.p.* of venire come

EXERCISE

I

1. Siamo invitati a pranzo da due amici. 2. Eccoci arrivati dagli amici, che abitano vicino alla chiesa; siamo venuti a piedi. 3. Dov'è la tazza? Eccola sullo scaffale. 4. La metta sulla tavola. Non la porti in cucina. 5. L'orologio non lo trovo. 6. Ha i libri italiani che desidero? Eccoli, Signore; vuol comprarli? 7. Molti soldati sono morti nella guerra contro i Turchi. 8. Chi Le ha insegnato la lingua italiana? La lingua italiana m'è stata insegnata da un vecchio patriota italiano. 9. Erano arrivati prima di mezzogiorno i ragazzi? 10. Ecco la Luisina; dalle dei fiori. 11. È venuta una signora; bambine, portatele delle paste. 12. Dimmi, Peppina, sei stata a scuola oggi? 13. Parlandomi della famiglia, mi mostrò un ritratto della madre. 14. Ecco il nonno; bambini, dategli una seggiola. 15. Luigi è andato da Chiara, per mostrarle l'orologio che ha comprato.

II

1. I have lost John's watch, but I hope to [di] find it. 2. Our flag was made by the pupils of the old Florentine school. 3. Here is the bread, but the butter I have not bought. 4. Where is Louis's gun? There it is on the shelf. 5. Having carried it to Louis, return here at once. 6. Let us return to Joseph's; he will show us the Italian national flag which he carried in the war. 7. The soldier has found the guns, but has not yet returned. 8. The mother and aunt of the pupil have died. 9. The little girl went down into the

garden at six this morning. 10. Had John's sisters gone to the station when Mary arrived? 11. Give me some bread, little Clara; do not carry it into the kitchen. 12. The American ladies are not here; they left to-day. 13. Where is Mrs. Rossi? There she is, arrived at the station. 14. Chiarina, tell her to wait for us. 15. We should have spoken to them if they had remained. 16. Have you been in America? We have been in America twice; we liked it very much. 17. The ladies had gone out early this morning; they bought some chocolate, and have now returned to Mary's.

LESSON XII

REFLEXIVE VERBS

104. Reflexive Verbs: *a.* Reflexive verbs are those whose object is the same person as their subject.

Si alza	He rises (<i>lit.</i> raises himself)
M' assuefò ad alzarmi alle sei	I accustom myself to rise at six

1. 'Self' reflexive (which is always the object) must not be confused with 'myself,' etc., intensive, which may be the subject and is expressed by **stesso** or **medesimo** accompanying the pronoun.

L' hò fatto io stesso	I did it myself
L' ha detto lui medesimo	He said it himself

b. In the plural, reflexives may have reciprocal force; if this is not clear from the context, **l' un l' altro** 'one another' may be added to emphasize reciprocal meaning.

Si āmano	They love themselves, they love each other
Si āmano l' un l' altro	They love each other

c. Reflexives are conjugated in the compound tenses with **essere** (cf. 98).

Mi sono pentito	I have repented
Se si fòssero amati	If they had loved each other

1. The participle agrees with the *direct* object (cf. 194, b, 3), which may or may not be the reflexive, personal object.

La signora s'era alzata presto

The lady had risen early

Mi sono comprati dei guanti

I have bought myself some gloves

*2. But the strict observance of this rule offends the Tuscan ear. Tuscans make the participle agree with the personal object.

Mi sono comprato (or comprata) dei guanti

d. Model Reflexive Verb: synopsis of *fermarsi* 'stop.'

	PRESENT	INFINITIVE	PERFECT
fermarsi			ġessersi fermato
		PARTICIPLE	
fermāndosi			essēndosi fermato
	PRESENT	INDICATIVE	PAST DESCRIPTIVE
mi fërmo	ci fermiamo		mi fermavo, etc.
ti fërmi	vi fermate		
si fërma	si fërmano		
	FUTURE		PAST ABSOLUTE
mi fermerò, etc.			mi fermai, etc.
	PRESENT PERFECT		PAST PERFECT
mi sono fermato, -a	ci siamo fermati, -e		mi ġero fermato, etc.
ti sei fermato, -a	vi siete fermati, -e		
s'è fermato, -a	si sono fermati, -e		
	FUTURE PERFECT		SECOND PAST PERFECT
mi sarò fermato, etc.			mi fui fermato, etc.
	PAST FUTURE		PAST FUTURE PERFECT
mi fermerèi, etc.			mi sarèi fermato, etc.

106. Special Uses. a. In the third persons singular and plural, and in the infinitive and participles, the reflexive translates the English passive with agent unexpressed.

Molti libri inglesi si vëndono in Italia	Many English books are sold in Italy
Qui si parla francese	French spoken here

***1.** The agent may even be expressed, and still the reflexive construction will be retained.

Se ne discuteva molto dal pōpolo	There was much discussion of it by the people
----------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------

b. The English impersonal 'one,' 'we,' 'they,' etc., and the impersonal passive, are translated by the reflexive.

Si dice	They say, it is said
Si va spesso al teatro	People often go to the theater, we often go to the theater
Si puō entrare?	May one enter?

***1.** *Èssersi*, impersonal, takes a plural subject (cf. 194, b, 3, a):

Si è liēti il giorno di Natale	People are happy on Christmas Day
--------------------------------	-----------------------------------

***c.** Italian being a much more impersonal language than English, the reflexive often best translates also the English personal construction.

Se non Le piācciono queṣti guanti, si barāttano	If you do not like these gloves, you may exchange them
Dove si cōmprano i biglietti?	Where do I buy my tickets?

***d.** In the third person singular the reflexive is peculiarly used in Tuscan familiar speech, along with the pronoun of the first person plural, with which in compound tenses the past participle agrees. 'We' in this case is not general or impersonal, necessarily.

Nòi si va sēmpre in chiēsa la domēnica	We (i.e. our family, our household) always go to church on Sunday
Ci si accōrse dēl suo arrivo	We noticed his arrival
Nòi si ęra allęgri ięri	We were joyful yesterday

VOCABULARY

l' amica (<i>pl.</i> amiche) friend (<i>f.</i>)	accomodarsi make oneself com- fortable, sit down (<i>m' accōmodo</i>)
la giornata day, period of one day	alzarsi rise
l' inchiostro <i>m.</i> ink	chiamare call
il libraio bookseller	chiamarsi be named
la mǎcchia spot	far colaziōne lunch
il vestito dress	fa passare shows in (makes to enter)
alle nōve at nine o'clock	fermarsi stop
mēno male luckily	insudiciare soil
grōsso big	lavarsi wash (oneself)
scuro dark	mēttersi put on (clothes)
	mēttersi a sedere sit down
	ricordarsi (<i>di</i>) remember (<i>ricōrdo</i>)
	seguire follow

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

LA GIORNATA DELLA NERINA

1. Ecco una cara bambina! 2. Come si chiama? Si chiama Nerina. 3. Nerina passa una giornata felice. 4. Si alza alle sei e aiuta la mamma a preparare il caffè. 5. Si mette un vestito scuro per non insudiciarlo. 6. Non si mette il vestito bianco delle feste. 7. È arrivata a scuola alle nove. 8. A scuola s'è fatte delle grosse macchie d' inchiostro sul vestitino. 9. Meno male che non era il bianco. 10. A mezzogiorno è tornata a far colazione, senza fermarsi per la strada. 11. Prima di far colazione si lava le mani. 12. I bambini non si ricordano sempre di lavarsi le mani. 13. La

sera qualcuno è arrivato. Era un' amica della mamma. 14. Nerina la fa passare, e le dice, " Buona sera, Signora. S' accomodi. Ecco una seggiola."

II

(Use present perfect for past tenses.)

1. At what hour did you get up, ladies? 2. We got up at six; after [the] coffee we visited St. Stephen's church. 3. A little girl followed us. 4. What is your name, little girl? My name is Nerina. 5. We stopped at the bookseller's, to buy some books. 6. The bookseller spoke to us in Italian; we spoke to him in English. 7. Italian is not spoken much in the United States. 8. If Nerina did not remember the lessons, she would feel ashamed. 9. It is said that soldiers are glad to die for their country. 10. Nerina washes her hands and puts on a white dress before taking lunch. 11. She has two white dresses; she does not like (to) soil them. 12. Nerina is happy; two women friends of her [the] mother have arrived. 13. She shows them in, and says, " Good afternoon, ladies! Be seated!"

LESSON XIII

POSSESSIVES

107. Possessives. *a.* The forms of the possessive adjective are as follows:

SINGULAR

il mio
la mia
il tuo
la tua
il suo
la sua

PLURAL

i miei } my, mine
le mie }
i tuoi } thy, thine
le tue }
i suoi } { his,
le sue } { her, hers

SINGULAR	PLURAL
il nōstro	i nōstri
la nōstra	le nōstre
il vōstro	i vōstri
la vōstra	le vōstre
il loro	i loro
la loro	le loro

} our, ours

} your, yours

} their, theirs

1. Both words may precede the noun; or the article may precede and the possessive follow, suggesting intimacy in possession.

I miei libri; i libri miei

My books; my very own books

b. A possessive has the number and person of the possessor, but (except **loro**, invariable) agrees as to ending, in number and gender, with the thing possessed. The context usually makes clear the gender of the possessor.

Hanno venduto **la loro** casa

They have sold **their** house

Maria legge **il suo** libro

Mary is reading **her** book

Giovanni ha perduto **la sua** gram-
mātica

John has lost **his** grammar

*1. When there might be ambiguity, as when the possessor is not the subject of the sentence, **di lui, di lei, di loro**, with the article, may be substituted for the possessive of the third person.

Mise **il suo** anello nel dito **di lei**

He put **his** ring on **her** finger

Mi disse che **il suo** figliuolo aveva
perduto **il di lui** orolōgio

He told me that **his** little boy had
lost **his** (i.e., the boy's) watch

c. The possessive 'its,' when modifying a noun in the accusative case, is translated by **ne** and the definite article.

There is the city! I see **its** towers

Ecco la città! **Ne** vedo **le** torri

108. The definite article is omitted from the possessive,

a. When it modifies a noun of family relationship, otherwise unmodified and in the singular. (Augmentatives and diminutives count as modifiers, cf. 228.)

Suo padre morì combattendo per la pātria	His father died fighting for his country
I miei figliuoli sono tutti maschiètti	My children are all boys
La mia sorella maggiore ābita a Parigi	My eldest sister lives in Paris
Il tuo fratellino sta piangendo	Your little brother is crying

b. When it stands alone in the predicate, with the force of an adjective; unless it distinguishes the possession of one person from that of another.

Quella casa è sua	That house is his (or hers)
But	
Questo libro è il mio ; quell' altro è il vostro	This book is mine; that other one is yours

c. When preceded by a demonstrative or interrogative adjective, a numeral, or an adjective of quantity.

Questa sua casa	This house of his
Qual suo libro?	Which book of his?
Tre sorelle sue (<i>or</i> , Tre delle sue sorelle)	Three sisters of his, three of his sisters
Molti libri sui	Many of her books

***d.** When it is part of a title.

Sua Maestà, Loro Altezze	His Majesty, Their Highnesses
--------------------------	-------------------------------

***e.** Usually in the vocative, the possessive more often following the noun.

Quello che vi dico, amico mio , è vero	What I am telling you, my friend, is true
--------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------

***f.** In certain set phrases.

Per fortuna loro	By their good luck
In casa nostra	In our house
In cāmera mia	In my room
A loro volta	In their turn
Con mia gran sorpresa	To my great surprise

g. 'A friend of mine' and similar expressions are rendered **un amico mio, un mio amico**, etc.

Tre libri suoi	Three books of his
Una proprietà mia	An estate I own
Lo vede da un suo speciale punto di vista	He sees it from a special point of view of his own

109. In accordance with the greater impersonality of the Italian language (cf. **106, c**), the definite article is substituted for the possessive with nouns describing parts of the body or clothing, and often with nouns of family relationship, especially **babbo** and **mamma**. If ownership is indicated, it is by means of the dative conjunctive pronoun (cf. **105, c**). In certain familiar phrases, even the article is omitted.

Mette il denaro in tasca	He puts the money in his pocket
Mi sono levato il cappello	I have taken off my hat
Mi duole la testa	My head aches
Hanno sparato e gli hanno strapato un braccio	They shot, and shot away one of his arms
Mi racconta d'aver perduto la madre	He tells me of having lost his mother
Mettiti i guanti	Put on your gloves
Si leva il soprabito	He takes off his overcoat

***a.** *Prōprio* 'own' may intensify the possessive, or be used instead of it.

Ognuno ama la prōpria patria	Every one loves his own country
-------------------------------------	----------------------------------------

***b.** *Altrui*, which always follows the noun in prose, is an indefinite possessive, meaning 'of others.'

Agisce sempre per il bene altrui	He acts always for the good of others
Lo scendere e il salir per l' altrui scale	Going up and down the stairs of others

***c.** The possessives are used alone, with the noun understood, in a great variety of familiar phrases. Here are a few examples:

Saluta i tuoi da parte dei miei	Greet your family on behalf of mine
Ha molte persone dalla sua	He has many persons on his side
Spendo il mio nel viaggiare	I spend my money in travel
Ne fa troppe delle sue	He does too many of his characteristic ill turns
Ho avuto le mie; avrai le tue	I have had my troubles; you will have yours
Lavoro sul mio	I labor on my own land

VOCABULARY

il babbo papa	levarsi take off (clothing)
il bosco wood	raccomandare urge, recommend; <i>takes a before a word meaning a person, di before a verb</i>
il cappello hat	sgridare scold
la cosa thing	smarrirsi lose one's way
il guanto glove	far tardi be late
il paese village, country, nation	invece on the contrary, instead
il paniere basket	potrebbero (3 pl. past fut. of potere, irr.) might
il passo step	tiene (3 sg. pres. indic. of tenere, irr.) holds
la sorellina little sister (<i>dimin.</i>)	vanno (3 pl. pres. indic. of andare, irr.) go
destra right	
maggiore elder	
sinistro left	
svogliato listless, unwilling	

EXERCISE

I

1. Giannetta e Marcellina vanno alla scuola del paese. 2. Non si mettono i guanti. 3. Giannetta porta i loro libri, e Marcellina tiene il paniere con la mano sinistra. 4. La mamma e il babbo raccomandano alle due bambine di non fermarsi nel bosco. 5. Potrebbero smarrirsi e far tardi a scuola. 6. Giannetta, la maggiore, è una bambina giudiziosa; Marcellina, invece, è una piccola svogliata. 7. Ha sempre tante cose da vedere, che si ferma ogni cinque

passi. 8. Non bisogna far tardi! — dice Giannetta — Il babbo e la mamma ci sgrideranno. 9. Si levi il cappello, Signorina. Non si metta i guanti. 10. Abbiamo i nostri libri, e il loro paniere, e molte cose loro. 11. Mia madre è dalla mia sorella maggiore. 12. Dov' è il suo paniere? È sulla mia tavola.

II

1. Marcellina is holding my basket in her right hand. 2. Do not be late to school, Marcellina; your father and mother will scold you. 3. My sisters live in Florence, but they are now at Clara's. 4. Marcellina will stop every three steps, but her elder sister would not stop. 5. The little girls would lose their way if they should stop in the wood. 6. Marcellina says to her sister, "We have not lost our way." 7. Does he like his school? 8. Is this your house? Yes, it is ours. 9. My mother is talking with my elder brother. 10. I take off my gloves. I have lost my hat. 11. My brothers are going to school. 12. There is their house. 13. Have they bought yours? 14. My brothers say the pupil has a book of mine.

LESSON XIV

CHANGES OF LETTERS. RELATIVE PRONOUNS

110. Changes of Letters in Regular Verbs.

a. Verbs of the first conjugation ending in **-care** and **-gare**, **-ciare** and **-giare**, retain throughout the conjugation that sound of **c** or **g** which is heard in the infinitive.

1. Verbs in **-care** and **-gare** insert **h** after **c** or **g** before **e** or **i**: **paghi**, **cercherò**.

2. Verbs in **-ciare** and **-giare** omit **i** before **e** or **i**: **lascere**mo****, **mangi**, **cominciamo**.

b. Other verbs in *-iare* drop the *i*, if unaccented, before another *i*.

Stūdio, studi, stūdino; but *spio, spii, spīno*

c. Verbs of the second conjugation in *-cere* and *-gere* do not retain this sound of *c* and *g* except where it would occur naturally.

Vincere gives *vinco, vincono, vince, vinciamo*, etc.

d. Some verbs, as *giocare,otare,sonare*, usually change *o* of the stem to *uo* wherever it takes the accent.

Suqno, sonerò; giuqca, giochiamo

i. Conversely, some verbs like *cuqcere, muqvere*, drop the *u* of the infinitive stem wherever the syllable containing it does not take the accent.

Cuqco, cocęsti; muqve, movęndo

111. a. A number of third-conjugation verbs do not have, in the present indicative, present subjunctive, and imperative, the inchoative forms in *-isco* etc. Such a verb is the model, *sentire*, given below.

PRESENT INDICATIVE		PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE		IMPERATIVE	
<i>sęnto</i>	<i>sentiamo</i>	<i>sęnta</i>	<i>sentiamo</i>		<i>sentiamo</i>
<i>sęnti</i>	<i>sentite</i>	<i>sęnta</i>	<i>sentiate</i>	<i>sęnti</i>	<i>sentite</i>
<i>sęnte</i>	<i>sęntono</i>	<i>sęnta</i>	<i>sęntano</i>	<i>sęnta</i>	<i>sęntano</i>

b. The following are conjugated like *sentire* :

<i>aprire (irr.)</i> open	<i>fuggire</i> flee	<i>soffrire</i> suffer
<i>bollire</i> boil	<i>offrire (irr.)</i> offer	<i>tossire</i> cough
<i>coprire (irr.)</i> cover	<i>pentirsi</i> repent	<i>vestire</i> dress
<i>cucire (irr.)</i> sew	<i>seguire</i> follow	<i>divertire</i> amuse
<i>dormire</i> sleep	<i>servire</i> serve	

*c. The following (and others) are conjugated both ways :

applaudire applaud	mentire lie	sortire go out
assorbire absorb	nutrire nourish	
comparire appear	partire depart	

1. **Partire** and **sortire** use the inchoative form (in **-isco** etc.) only when transitive.

112. Uses of *da*. The preposition **da** is used before nouns referring to persons, without article, to mean 'like,' 'in the character of,' 'characteristic of,' 'as.' (Cf. 162, c.)

Ha agito da uomo	He has acted like a man
S'è travestito da monaco	He has disguised himself as a monk

113. The subjunctive is used in dependent clauses after verbs of *wishing* and *willing*, when the subject is not the same as that of the independent clause. (With the same subject, the infinitive is used.)

Desidero che Lei legga questo libro	I wish you to read this book
Vogliamo che lo faccia	We wish him to do it

114. The Relative Pronoun (cf. 189). These forms are used of either persons or things :

a. Che 'who,' 'whom,' 'which,' 'that'; invariable, used as the subject or object of a verb. It cannot be omitted.

L'uomo ch' io ho veduto	The man whom I saw
L'uomo che m' ha veduto	The man who saw me
I fiori che compro	The flowers I am buying

b. Cui 'of which,' 'for,' 'by,' 'with' (etc.) 'whom' or 'which'; invariable, used after prepositions. 'Whose' is **il cui**.

Il signore a cui ho venduto la casa	The gentleman to whom I sold the house
Lo sciopero di cui tutti parlano in questo momento	The strike of which everybody is talking at this moment

c. Il quale (**la quale, i quali, le quali**), inflected, used in all cases, and frequently instead of **cui** after prepositions, especially for clearness. Its article is contracted with the prepositions (cf. 75).

La signora alla quale ha dato il libro	The lady to whom you have given the book
La figlia dell' avvocato, la quale abita a Firenze	The lawyer's daughter, who lives at Florence. (La quale , being feminine, indicates the daughter, not the father.)

VOCABULARY

la lingua language	avvezzarsi a accustom oneself to
la lira lira (twenty cents)	cercare look for; <i>w. di</i> try to (<i>w. inf.</i>)
il maestro teacher	divertirsi amuse oneself
la penna a serbatoio fountain pen	dormire sleep
lo studio study	lasciare leave, let
la tasca (<i>pl. tasche</i>) pocket	mancare (<i>w. dat.</i>) be lacking
il viso face	pagare pay, pay for
difficile difficult	sentire hear, feel, smell
fácil easy	servirsi di make use of
scorso last, past	studiare study
a poco a poco little by little	vendere sell
	vestirsi dress oneself

EXERCISE

I

1. Comprammo quella casa la settimana scorsa; paghiamo presto. 2. Cominceremo a studiare alle otto; lasceremo i nostri libri sullo scaffale. 3. Metta il pane nel paniere; non lo lasci sul piatto. 4. Lo studio d' una lingua è difficile; bisogna avvezzarsi a poco a poco a parlarla. 5. Giannetta si lavò il viso quando tornò da scuola. 6. Suo padre gli dà tre lire. Si mette il denaro in tasca. 7. Luigi ha perduto i guanti; cerchiamoli. 8. M' ha parlato da

padre. 9. Ho perduto la mia penna a serbatoio. Si serva della mia. 10. Se gli vendo l' orologio, lo pagherà domani? No, perchè gli manca il denaro. 11. Il maestro non desidera che gli scolari lascino lo studio per divertirsi. 12. Se si divertissero troppo, mancherebbe loro il tempo per studiare.

II

1. He sold me his house last week; when shall I pay for it? 2. I am finishing my work, but my sister sleeps. 3. If he were a soldier, he would dress like a soldier. 4. We should leave Italy if we did not lack money. 5. Let us try to amuse ourselves. 6. They wish their mother to sleep. 7. He puts in his pocket the four lire with which he will pay for his book. 8. The pupils are studying the Italian language, and are accustoming themselves little by little to speak it. 9. Our teacher has lost his fountain pen; let us look for it. 10. Giannetta will wash her face and hands before taking lunch. 11. I am trying to accustom myself to make use of my fountain pen. 12. Joseph would make use of his if he studied. 13. He does not like study, but he wishes his brother to study.

LESSON XV

COMPARISON

115. **Comparatives.** *a.* The comparative is formed by placing **più** 'more,' or **meno** 'less,' before an adjective or adverb.

b. 'Than' is **di** before nouns, pronouns, or numerals,

Il padre è più grande del figlio	The father is taller than the son
I nostri vicini sono più ricchi di noi	Our neighbors are richer than we
Ho più di tre palle	I have more than three balls

But changes to **che** —

1. After **piuttosto**, **prima**, meaning 'rather,' 'sooner.'

Prenderèi quella casa piuttosto che questa	I should take that house sooner than this
---------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------

2. When the comparison is between two nouns.

Mi piace più la campagna che la città	I like the country better than the city
Non più bevve del fiume acqua che sangue	He drank from the river not more water than blood

c. 'Than' is **che** before adjectives, adverbs, prepositional phrases, infinitives, and participles.

L' avaro è più ricco che sāvio	The miser is more rich than wise
Meglio tardi che mai	Better late than never
I giōvani si preōccupano più delle eleganze della vita che dello stūdio	Young people think more of what is fashionable than of their studies

d. 'Than' is **che non** or **di quel che** before inflected verbs.

Lō spensierato parla più che non (<i>or di quel che</i>) pēnsa	The thoughtless man talks more than he thinks
-------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------

116. The Superlative. **a.** The superlative is formed by prefixing the definite article to the comparative, from which it may be distinguished sometimes only by the context.

La sua stanza è la più grande	Her room is the largest (<i>or the larger, if only two are in question</i>)
-------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------

b. When the superlative follows the noun, as it may, the article of the superlative is omitted.

Agōsto è il mese più caldo dell' anno	August is the hottest month of the year
---------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------

c. The preposition used with the superlative is **fra**, sometimes **di**.

Ognuno crēde che la sua patria sia la più bella fra (<i>or di</i>) tutte	Every one thinks his own country the most beautiful of all
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------

d. An absolute superlative is formed by adding the suffix **-issimo** to the stem of the adjective; **-mente** may be added to the feminine of this, to make an absolute superlative for the adverb. These are in constant use in conversation.

La villa del suo amico è bella? Your friend's villa is beautiful?
È **bellissima** Very beautiful indeed

1. The adjectives **acre**, **cēlebre**, **integre**, **salubre** (and in poetry, **mīsero**) have an absolute superlative in **-ērrimo**: **celebērrimo**.

117. Irregular Comparisons. *a.* The following words are compared irregularly:

buono 'good'	migliore	il migliore l' ottimo
bene 'well'	miglio	il meglio benissimo ottimamente
cattivo 'bad'	peggiore	il peggiore il pēssimo
male 'badly'	peggio	il peggio pessimamente
alto 'high'	superiore	il superiore il sommo
basso 'low'	inferiore	l' inferiore l' infimo
grande 'large'	maggiore	il maggiore il māssimo
piccolo 'small'	minore	il minore il mīnimo
molto 'much'	più	il più moltissimo
poco 'little'	meno	il meno pochissimo

b. All these may be compared also regularly, but sometimes with different meanings.

1. The irregular forms of **buono**, **cattivo**, **bene**, and **male** are the more usual. But **ottimo**, **pessimo**, etc., are absolute rather than comparative.

2. **Maggiore** and **minore** usually mean 'older' and 'younger.' The regular forms refer to size.

*3. **Superiore** and **inferiore** are oftener figurative, the regular forms literal.

*4. **Meglio** is used as an adjective in the predicate after **essere**, and still more widely in familiar speech; similarly **peggio**, but more familiarly.

Scelgo questo; è il meglio	I choose this; it is the best
Fra i tiranni dell' Italia moderna, i Borboni erano i peggio	Among the tyrants of modern Italy the Bourbons were the worst

118. Subjunctive after Superlative. The subjunctive is required after the superlative and 'only' in relative clauses.

Venezia è la più bella città ch' io abbia mai vista	Venice is the most beautiful city I have ever seen
Il quarto reggimento è il solo che sia partito	The fourth regiment is the only one that has left

119. Comparison of Equality. This is expressed by **tanto** . . . **quanto**, **così** . . . **come**, 'as . . . as,' 'so . . . so.'

Il mio amico è tanto alto quanto mio fratello	My friend is as tall as my brother
Non è così bella come sua sorella	She is not so beautiful as her sister

a. Tanto and **così** are more often omitted.

L'argento non è caro quanto l'oro	Silver is not so precious as gold
-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

VOCABULARY

l' Amērica (<i>f.</i>) America	l' Inghilterra (<i>f.</i>) England
l' Àustria (<i>f.</i>) Austria	il pensiero thought
il conquistatore conqueror	la pratica practice
l' eredità (<i>f.</i>) heritage	il pregio value

lo scrittore	writer	tedesco	German
la Spagna	Spain	vinto	conquered (<i>from vincere, irr.</i>)
la storia	history	così	thus, so, as
lo strumento	instrument	dève	3 <i>sg. pres. indic. of dovere (irr.)</i> must
imporre (<i>irr.</i>)	impose; imponeva,	leggendo	<i>pres. part. of leggere (irr.)</i> read
3 <i>sg. past descr. indic.</i>		esprime	3 <i>sg. pres. indic. of esprimere (irr.)</i> express
ricevere	receive	vede	3 <i>sg. pres. indic. of vedere (irr.)</i> see
tenere (<i>irr.</i>)	hold	e via dicendo	and so on, et cetera
solo	only		
spagnuolo	Spanish, Spaniard		
tanto	so, so much, (<i>pl.</i>) so many		

EXERCISE

I

1. La lingua è lo strumento col quale l'uomo esprime i suoi pensieri. 2. Perché ogni nazione deve tenere in gran pregio la propria lingua? 3. Perché l'ha ricevuta come sacra eredità dai padri, ed è il più nobile patrimonio di un popolo. 4. Leggendo la storia, si vede come i conquistatori cercarono di imporre ai popoli vinti la propria lingua. 5. Così perderebbero il carattere della nazionalità. 6. Così Roma imponeva la lingua latina, la Spagna la lingua spagnuola, l'Inghilterra la lingua inglese, l'Austria la lingua tedesca, e via dicendo. 7. La lingua spagnuola non è difficile quanto l'inglese; l'inglese è più facile della tedesca. 8. Qual è la più grande fra tutte le nazioni? 9. Gli scrittori pensano più che non parlano. 10. Questo è il solo libro tedesco che si trovi sullo scaffale. 11. Desideriamo che nostra sorella parli inglese, ma le manca la pratica.

II

1. Language is the instrument of the writer. 2. The English language is spoken in the United States. 3. The history of Spain is longer than that of America. 4. Reading it, one sees why

conquerors try to impose their own language on conquered peoples. 5. Are soldiers greater than writers? 6. The German language is the most difficult of all. 7. The Spaniard would have been a better soldier if he had been better paid. 8. Winter is colder than autumn. 9. My little sister sings more than she talks. 10. My brother and my sisters have returned from Rome, and have brought me many Italian books. 11. This is the greatest war that has ever (*mai*) been. 12. They will leave their books on the shelf; let us look for them. 13. We like our own house; it is larger than yours; it is rather large than beautiful.

LESSON XVI

THE VERB *AVERE*120. The Verb *avere* 'have.'

	PRESENT	INFINITIVE		PERFECT
	<i>avere</i>			<i>avere avuto</i>
	<i>avendo</i>	PARTICIPLE		<i>avendo avuto</i>
		INDICATIVE		
	PRESENT			PAST DESCRIPTIVE
	<i>ho</i> <i>abbiamo</i>		<i>avevo</i> <i>avevamo</i>	
	<i>hai</i> <i>avete</i>		<i>avevi</i> <i>avevate</i>	
	<i>ha</i> <i>hanno</i>		<i>aveva</i> <i>avevano</i>	
	FUTURE			PAST ABSOLUTE
	<i>avrò</i> <i>avremo</i>		<i>ebbi</i> <i>avemmo</i>	
	<i>avrai</i> <i>avrete</i>		<i>avesti</i> <i>aveste</i>	
	<i>avrà</i> <i>avranno</i>		<i>ebbero</i> <i>ebbero</i>	
	PRESENT PERFECT			SECOND PAST PERFECT
	<i>ho avuto, etc.</i>			<i>ebbi avuto, etc.</i>
	PAST PERFECT			FUTURE PERFECT
	<i>avevo avuto, etc.</i>			<i>avrò avuto, etc.</i>

PAST FUTURE		PAST FUTURE PERFECT	
avrei	avremmo	avrei avuto, <i>etc.</i>	
avresti	avreste		
avrebbe	avrebbero		
IMPERATIVE			
		abbiamo	
abbi	abbiate		
abbia	abbiano		
SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRESENT		PRESENT PERFECT	
abbia	abbiamo	abbia avuto, <i>etc.</i>	
abbia	abbiate		
abbia	abbiano		
PAST		PAST PERFECT	
avessi	avessimo	avessi avuto, <i>etc.</i>	
avessi	aveste		
avesse	avessero		

a. The irregular past absolute of **avere** may be taken as the model of all irregular past absolutes. It will be noticed that three forms are regular: the second person singular and the first and second plural. For example **leggere** 'read':

lessi	leggemmo
leggesti	leggeste
lesse	lessero

b. Of very many verbs the past participle also is irregular, and their principal parts are the infinitive, the first person singular of the past absolute, and the past participle, as **leggere**, **lessi**, **letto**.

121. The compound tenses of all transitive and some intransitive verbs are conjugated with **avere**.

a. The most important intransitives conjugated with **avere** are—

bollire boil	passeggiare take a walk	tremare tremble
dimorare dwell	sbadigliare yawn	viaggiare travel
dormire sleep	starnutire sneeze	

**b.* Certain other verbs, such as *tacere* 'be silent' and *vivere* 'live,' may be conjugated with either: with *avere* when the idea of action predominates, with *essere* when the idea of condition is more important.

122. The past participle with *avere* usually agrees with a preceding direct object. Agreement is customary when the object is a conjunctive pronoun.

Ho scritto (or scritte) due lettere	I have written two letters
Ne ho scritte due	I have written two of them
Veda questi cavalli. Li abbiamo comprati oggi	See these horses. We have bought them to-day
La catena che mi ha prestata	The chain you lent me

123. Special Uses of *avere*. *a.* *Avere da* with the infinitive means 'have to.'

Họ da scrivere tre lēttēre	} I have to write three letters
Họ trē lēttēre da scrīvere	

b. Idioms with *avere*:

Aver caldo	To be too warm
Aver frēddo	To be too cold
Aver fame	To be hungry
Aver sēte	To be thirsty
Aver sonno	To be sleepy
Aver paura (di)	To be afraid (of)
Aver soggeziōne	To be nervous, embarrassed
Aver ragiōne	To be right
Aver tōrto	To be wrong, be in the wrong
Aver fūria, aver frētta	To be in a hurry
Ha fame?	Are you hungry?
Avēvano sonno?	Were they sleepy?
Nōn họ frēddo	I am not cold
Ha ragiōne	You are right
Abbiamo paura	We are afraid
Họ fūria	I am in a hurry

124. The Conjunctive *ne*. *a.* 'Some' or 'any,' when pronouns (cf. 77), are translated by *ne*. It means also 'of it,' 'of them,' and is equivalent to *di* plus a personal pronoun.

Avete delle mele? No, non ne ho Have you any apples? No, I have not any

b. *Ne* must be used in Italian when its equivalent would not be required in English; and it is sometimes logically pleonastic in Italian, though rhetorically emphatic. Cf. 100, *d.*

Ha dei libri tedeschi? Have you any German books?
Sì, ne ho. Ne ho molti Yes, I have. I have a great many
Di quest' affare ne sai nulla? Do you know anything about this matter?

c. The past participle agrees with *ne* (cf. 122).

VOCABULARY

<i>il biglietto</i> ticket	<i>dimenticare (di)</i> forget (to)
<i>la classe</i> class	<i>leggere, lessi, letto</i> read
<i>la guardia</i> guard, conductor	<i>mettere, mihi, messo</i> put
<i>il minuto</i> minute	<i>permettere (di), mihi, permesso</i>
<i>il posto</i> place, room	permit
<i>lo scompartimento</i> compartment	<i>prendere, presi, preso</i> take
<i>il treno</i> train	<i>scrivere, scrissi, scritto</i> write
<i>fra</i> between, among; (<i>with a measure of time</i>) in, within	<i>detto p.p. of dire (irr.)</i> say
<i>pronto</i> ready; all aboard	<i>prego, niente</i> , you're welcome, don't mention it

EXERCISE

I

1. Quando si parte per Roma? Alle nove. 2. Mi compri un libro, perchè desidero di leggere in treno. 3. Quando parte il primo treno per Firenze? Fra dieci minuti. 4. Non dimentichi di scrivermi. 5. Ha i biglietti, Giovanni? Ne ho due; mi manca un biglietto. 6. Quando una persona dice — Grazie — si risponde

sempre — Prego! — o — Niente! 7. Desidera ch' io prenda i biglietti? Li metterò in tasca. 8. Ha trovato i biglietti che aveva perduti? 9. Li ho trovati in tasca. Eccoli. 10. È questo uno scompartimento di prima classe? 11. Sì, ma non c'è più posto, Signora. Mi permetta di offrirle il mio. 12. S'accomodi, Signora.— Grazie tante! — Prego! 13. Quando si entra in uno scompartimento dove ci sono delle persone, si dice — Permesso — o — Con permesso. 14. Si ha da prendere i biglietti prima di partire. 15. Si dice — Due biglietti di prima classe. 16. La guardia dice — Pronti! — e il treno parte.

II

(Translate the present perfect by the present perfect, the simple past by the past absolute.)

1. Please give me three first-class tickets to [for] Rome. 2. If I had put my tickets in my pocket, I should not have lost them. 3. My train will arrive in five minutes. 4. I read your letter; we did not read our books in the train. 5. If I had my letters, I should not forget to read them. 6. He took their tickets and put them in his pocket; he did not permit me to take them. 7. Have you written the letters? I have written two of them. 8. We had our books in the compartment, but we forgot to read them. 9. Have you any roses? Yes, I have. I have bought six to-day. 10. The English writer who lives in Florence wrote these books. Have you read them? 11. May I enter? Is there room in the compartment? 12. The conductor would have said "All aboard!" in two minutes, and we had not yet found a place. 13. They had to buy some German books at the bookseller's, but he did not have any. 14. Did we put? I permitted. You did not read. They wrote. Did he read? Thou tookest. They took. 15. Are you not too hot? He is in the wrong. We were sleepy. I am in a hurry.

LESSON XVII

TWO CONJUNCTIVE OBJECTS

125. Two Conjunctive Objects. *a.* When two conjunctive objects, direct and indirect, are governed by the same verb, the indirect (except *loro*) precedes the direct. Both precede the verb (cf. **95, a**), or are appended to it (cf. **95, b**).

Cę ne dà	He gives us some
Vę lę mostra	He shows it to you
Făccelo vedere	Show it to us
Lę si avvicinò	He approached her

1. **Loro**, as always, follows the verb.

Compra un cane, ę lę da loro	He buys a dog, and gives it to them
------------------------------	-------------------------------------

b. When immediately followed by **lo, li, la, le, or ne**,

1. **Mi, ti, ci, vi, and si** change **i** to **e**, and become respectively **mę, tę, cę, vę, and sę**.

Tę li porta	He carries them to you
Mi mostra una roęa e mę la dà	He shows me a rose and gives it to me
Pręnde il cappello e sę lę mette	He takes his hat and puts it on

2. **Gli** and **le** alike become **glię**, and are joined with the following conjunctive to make one word.

Finii la lęttera e glięla spedii	I finished the letter and sent it to her, or to him
----------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------

126. Conjunctive Adverbs. *a.* **Ci, vi, and ne** are adverbs as well as pronouns, **ci** and **vi** meaning 'here,' 'there' (of some place already referred to), and **ne** meaning 'thence.' They are conjunctive in character, as they precede the verb (or are appended as enclitics), and are unemphatic.

È stato da suo cugino?

Sì, *ne* vengo ora

Pensava di andar*vi* io

Andiāmoci domani

Have you been at your cousin's?

Yes, I am coming from there

I was thinking of going there myself

Let us go there to-morrow

1. **Ci** and **vi** are sometimes equivalent to 'at it,' 'to it,' taking the place of **a** plus a conjunctive pronoun of the third person, but seldom used of persons. This use is frequent with verbs which take **a** before their object (cf. 224, *a*).

Pensa **al** suo paese?

Ci penso sempre

Are you thinking of your country?

I am always thinking of it

2. **Ci** means a place nearer the speaker, but is tending to supersede **vi** in vivid speech.

b. **Ci** and **vi** undergo the same changes as adverbs that they do as pronouns (cf. 125, *b*).

Non **ce** n'è

Ve ne trovano pochi

There isn't any

I find few of them there

**c.* Rules for position of these adverbs are intricate:

1. **Ci** follows **mi**, **ti**, **vi**, and precedes **si** and those forms which begin with **l**.

Mi **ci** abituo

Ci *si* abitua

Ce *lo* trovò

I am accustoming myself to it

He is accustoming himself to it

He found it there

2. **Vi** follows **mi**, and precedes other forms.

Mi **vi** recherò subito

Ve *lo* misero

I shall take my way thither at once

They put it there

3. **Ne** follows either **ci** or **vi**, and precedes the forms beginning with **l**.

Ce *ne* andiamo

Ne *lo* tolse

We are going away

He took it away from there, from him, etc.

127. Certain reflexive verbs take a second conjunctive in certain meanings, as **andārsene** 'go away,' **prēndersela** 'take it ill,' and **avērsela a male** 'be offended.'

Andiāmocene	Let us go away
Andātosene, non tornò più	Having gone, he did not return again
Essēndosela prēsa	Having taken it ill
Non se l'abbia a male	Do not be offended

VOCABULARY

l'avviso (<i>m.</i>) sign, notice	accompagnare accompany
il giornale newspaper	aspettare wait, wait for
Lōndra London	avēr notizie di receive news from
le notizie news	avērsela a male be offended
Parigi Paris	dare il buon viaggio a wish a
lo sportello ticket window	pleasant journey to
la stazione railway station	partire leave (<i>intr.</i>)
il viaggiatore passenger, traveler	prēndersela take it ill
per favore please	spōrgersi, spōrsi, spōrto lean out
pericoloso dangerous	danno 3 <i>pl. pres. ind. of dare</i> (<i>irr.</i>)
secondo second	give
a tempo in time	
terzo third	

EXERCISE

I

1. Si monta in treno. 2. Tutti si danno il buon viaggio. 3. Il treno parte fra poco: tornerò subito alla stazione. 4. Non bisogna far tardi, se vogliamo arrivarvi a tempo. 5. Non se la prenda. 6. Voglio accompagnarcela. 7. Dove si comprano i biglietti? Allo sportello. 8. Mi dia due biglietti di seconda classe per Parigi. 9. Me li dia subito, per favore. 10. Nei treni italiani c'è sempre un avviso, che dice: *È pericoloso sporgersi.* 11. Ho avuto notizie di un mio amico. 12. La lettera che m'ha scritta è più interessante che lunga. 13. Desidera ch'io gliela legga? 14. Il suo viaggio è

- stato pericoloso. 15. Non se l' ha a male ; non me ne ha parlato.
 16. Ha comprato una bellissima villa, e desidera di mostrarmela.
 17. Fermiamoci alla prima stazione per visitarla.

II

1. Let John accompany them to the station. 2. Will he buy the tickets? Yes, he will buy them, and [will] bring them to us. 3. One buys one's tickets at the ticket-window. 4. Let us return there at once. 5. Our brother will not look for us there, but he will wait for us near the door. 6. Wait a minute. Here are the newspapers I have bought. 7. I will read them to you, if you wish me to read them to you. 8. Don't lean out, Marcellina. 9. Two travelers in the compartment are talking of Paris: they say that it is more beautiful than London. 10. Do not lean out, madam. It is dangerous. 11. He buys a gun and gives it to them. 12. They will show it to her. 13. Having felt offended, he does not wish me to speak to him about it.

LESSON XVIII

IRREGULAR VERBS

128. Irregular Verb: Regular Forms. *a.* Certain parts of all irregular verbs except *essere* are always regular: the past descriptive indicative, past subjunctive, and present participle, the second person plural of the present indicative, and the second person singular and first and second persons plural of the past absolute.

1. In addition, the second and third persons singular and first plural of the present indicative, and the first and second plural of the present subjunctive, are regular in many irregular verbs, as *rimanere*.

129. The Verb *rimanere* 'remain.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *rimanere*, *rimanendo*, *rimango*, *rimarrò*, *rimasi*,
rimasto (*or rimaso*)

	INDICATIVE	
	PRESENT	PAST DESCRIPTIVE
<i>rimango</i>	<i>rimaniamo</i> , <i>rimanghiamo</i>	<i>rimanèvo</i> , <i>etc.</i>
<i>rimani</i>	<i>rimanete</i>	
<i>rimane</i>	<i>rimāngono</i>	
	FUTURE	PAST ABSOLUTE
<i>rimarrò</i>	<i>rimarremo</i>	<i>rimasi</i> <i>rimanemmo</i>
<i>rimarrai</i>	<i>rimarrete</i>	<i>rimanēsti</i> <i>rimaneste</i>
<i>rimarrà</i>	<i>rimarranno</i>	<i>rimase</i> <i>rimāsero</i>
	PAST FUTURE	
	<i>rimarrēi</i> , <i>etc.</i>	
	IMPERATIVE	
		<i>rimaniamo</i>
	<i>rimani</i>	<i>rimanete</i>
	<i>rimanga</i>	<i>rimāngano</i>
	SUBJUNCTIVE	PAST
	PRESENT	
<i>rimanga</i>	<i>rimaniamo</i>	<i>rimanēssi</i> , <i>etc.</i>
<i>rimanga</i>	<i>rimaniate</i>	
<i>rimanga</i>	<i>rimāngano</i>	

130. **Principal Parts.** To the three principal parts of regular verbs (cf. 91) must be added, for wholly irregular verbs, the first person singular of the present indicative, of the past absolute, and of the future. But of very many (cf. 120, *b*) the infinitive, past absolute, and past participle are enough, and the present participle is required only of a few, like *porre*, *ponendo*, or *dire*, *dicendo*, where its stem differs from that of the infinitive. The system of formation is as follows:

a. From the present participle :

1. The past descriptive.
2. The second person plural of the present indicative. EXCEPTIONS: **dire** and **fare**, which have **dite** and **fate**.
3. The second person singular, and first and second plural, of the past absolute. EXCEPTIONS: **dare** and **stare**, which change **a** in the stem to **e** (**dēsti**, **stēmmo**, etc.).
4. The past subjunctive. EXCEPTIONS: **dare** and **stare**, as above.
5. Often, as in **rimanere**, the second and third persons singular and first plural of the present indicative, and the first and second plural of the present subjunctive.

b. From the first person singular of the present indicative :

1. The third person plural of that tense. EXCEPTIONS: **andare**, **avere**, **dare**, **fare**, **sapere**, **stare**, which have **vanno**, **hanno**, **danno**, **fanno**, **sanno**, **stanno**.
2. The entire singular and the third person plural of the present subjunctive. EXCEPTIONS: **avere**, **dare**, **sapere**, **stare**, which have **abbia**, **dia**, **sāppia**, **stia**, and **abbiano**, **diano**, **sāppiano**, **stiano**.

NOTE. The other persons of the present indicative and subjunctive may be regular, as in **rimanere**, or not; in any case the first and second plural of the subjunctive follow the first plural of the indicative.

c. From the future, whether regular or irregular, is formed the past future.

d. From the first person singular of the past absolute are formed the third singular and plural of that tense (cf. 120, **a**).

e. The imperative of irregular verbs is identical with the corresponding persons of the present indicative and subjunctive. EXCEPTIONS: **avere**, **sapere**, **valere**, in which it follows wholly the subjunctive; and **andare**, **dare**, **dire**, **fare**, **stare**, which have in the second singular the shortened forms **va'**, **da'**, **di'**, **fa'**, **sta'** (cf. 100, **b**).

NOTE. Only as many parts of a verb will be found in the special vocabularies as are necessary to its conjugation on the principles just explained. If the present and future are omitted, they are regular. If the first person only of the present is given (unless marked *irr.*), then the present indicative and subjunctive are to be conjugated like *rimanere*. Unusual or alternative forms are to be found in the alphabetical list of irregular verbs.

VOCABULARY

il bacio (<i>pl.</i> baci) kiss	inviare send
compagno, -a companion	mandare send, order
il dolce sweetmeat, dessert	parere, paio, parrò, parvi, parso seem, appear
la licenza leave; in licenza on leave	promettere (di), promisi, promesso promise (to)
Pasqua (<i>f.</i>) Easter	riabbracciare embrace again
dèvi (<i>2 sg. pres. ind. of dovere, irr.</i>) must	vedere, vedrò, vidi, visto see
fa' (<i>2 sg. imper. of fare, irr.</i>) make, have	allegro joyful, happy
mai ever	disperato heartbroken
sta' (<i>2 sg. imper. of stare, irr.</i>) be	dispiacente sorry
vièni (<i>2 sg. imper. of venire</i>)	francese French
	mille a thousand
	sicuro sure, safe

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

PASQUA

Caro Lucio

il 12 aprile, 1914
il 12 aprile, 1914
te agelava

La mamma è disperata. Come ci avevi promesso, ti s'aspettava tutti per Pasqua; si era sicuri che ti avrebbero mandato in licenza, ed io volevo vederti vestito da soldato. O come mai non ti hanno più mandato? Povero Lucio, anche tu devi essere molto dispiacente!

Il babbo e la mamma ti hanno inviato dei dolci; il giorno di Pasqua sta' allegro coi tuoi compagni, e ricordati di noi.

Fa' buona Pasqua, e vieni presto presto; ci par mille anni a tutti di riabbracciarti.

Tanti baci del tuo

piccolo fratello

Mino

II

1. The teacher showed me the letter which the pupil had written.
2. What is the name of the little boy who wrote the letter? His name is Mino.
3. Have you any sweetmeats, Mino? No, but my brother has promised to buy me some.
4. These are the most beautiful roses I have ever seen.
5. They saw Lucio (on) Easter Day; he had returned on leave to his brother's.
6. Do you wish some water? Yes, bring me a glass (of it).
7. Here is my fountain pen; make use of it, pray [pure].
8. If I had made use of it, I should have feared to [di] lose it.
9. Return home, my brother; it seems to me a thousand years till I see you again [rivedere].
10. If they returned to London, they would remain there six weeks.
11. My sisters wish me to remain in Florence, because they will soon return thither.
12. If we should see some French books at the bookseller's we should not forget to send you some.

LESSON XIX

THE VERBS DARE, SAPERE, VOLERE

131. The Verb *dare* (cf. 130, e) 'give.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *dare, dando, dō, darò, dētti or diēdi, dato*

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PAST ABSOLUTE	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE
dō diamo	dētti, diēdi	dia diamo
dai date	dēsti	dia diate
dà danno	dētte, diēde	dia diano

*a. Idioms with **dare** (for reference):**dare addosso a** to hold to blame**dare a fare a** to give trouble, make work or bother for**dare ad intēdere a** to make (one) believe**darci dentro** to guess right**darsi d' attorno** to look about, try every means**dar del tu, del Lei, etc.,** to use **tu**, or **Lei****dar fuoco a** to set on fire**dare in una risata, in singulti** to burst into laughter, into sobbing**dar la buona notte, il buon giorno** to say good night, good day**dar la mano a** to shake hands with**dar luogo a** to give rise to**dar nel secentismo** to fall into seventeenth-century affectations**dar noia a** to disturb, annoy**dar nell' occhio** to be conspicuous**dar pensiero a** to cause worry to**darsi pensiero** to worry, feel worried**dar retta a** to heed**dar sull' Arno** to face on the Arno132. The Verb *sapere* 'know.'PRINCIPAL PARTS: **sapere, sapendo, sò, saprò, seppi, saputo**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

sò sappiamo

sai sapete

sa sanno

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

sappia sappiamo

sappia sappiate

sappia sappiano

a. Special meanings of **sapere**:

1. When followed directly by the infinitive, it means 'be able,' in the sense of to know how, to have learned how.

Non sa leggere nè scrivere

He cannot read or write

2. It may mean 'learn of.'

Ho saputo la cosa stamane

I learned of the matter this morning

3. Followed by **di**, it means 'smack of' or 'know about.'

Calamecca, nome che sa di saracino	Calamecca, a name which smacks of the Saracen
Di storia patria ne sai nulla?	Do you know anything about the history of your country?

4. **Saperne di** means 'have to do with,' 'hear of,' 'put up with.'

La Francia non volle mai saperne di una tassa di questo genere	France would never hear of a tax of this kind
-----------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------

133. The Verb *volere* 'will,' 'wish,' 'intend.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **volere, volendo, voglio, vorrò, vòlli, voluto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

voglio	vogliamo
vuoi	volete
vuole	vogliono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

vòglia	vogliamo
vòglia	vogliate
vòglia	vògliano

a. Special meanings of *volere*:

1. With **ci**, in the third person, it means 'it takes,' 'it needs.'

Quanto denaro ci vuole?	How much money is needed?
Ci vorranno almeno quindici anni	It will take at least fifteen years

2. **Volere bene a** means 'love.'

I bambini vogliono bene ai genitori	Children love their parents
--------------------------------------------	------------------------------------

134. Uses of *da*. *Da* with a measure of time means 'for.' The present tense is used in this construction to translate the English present perfect (cf. 139, a).

Da quando abita a Livorno?	How long have you been living in Leghorn?
Da undici anni	For eleven years

VOCABULARY

l'ingegno (<i>m.</i>) talent, brains	andò (3 <i>sg. p. abs. of andare, irr.</i>) go
la lotta struggle	ardere, arsi, arso burn
la minaccia threat	attrarre, attraendo, attraggo (<i>irr.</i>), attrarrò, attrassi, attratto draw, attract
la miniera mine	dotare endow
l'opera (<i>f.</i>) work	esiliare exile
la parte share, part, side	morire, muoio (<i>irr.</i>), morirò, morii, morto die
la pietra stone	nascere, nacqui, nato be born
giòvane young	peregrinare wander, go on pil- grimage
inesauribile inexhaustible	prevalere, prevalgo (<i>irr.</i>), prevarrò, prevalsi, prevaluto prevail
nuovo new	riparare take refuge
prezioso precious	scoprire, scopersi, scoperto dis- cover; take off one's hat
vivo alive	
qualora whenever (<i>w. subj.</i>)	
seicento six hundred	
in età di at the age of	

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

DANTE ALIGHIERI

Dante Alighieri, il più grande dei poeti italiani, nacque in Firenze da nobile famiglia nell'anno 1265. Dotato di straordinario ingegno, si diede con ardore agli studi e, giovane ancora, incominciò a poetare. L'amore di patria lo attrasse nelle lotte, che fervevano allora in Firenze tra i Bianchi ed i Neri, e prese parte ad alcune battaglie.

Ma, prevalendo i Neri, il sommo poeta fu esiliato dalla patria con minaccia di essere arso vivo, qualora fosse tornato, e andò peregrinando per l'Italia. Finalmente riparò a Ravenna, dove morì il giorno 14 settembre dell'anno 1321 in età di 56 anni.

Scrisse molte opere; ma il suo lavoro più rinomato è il poema chiamato Divina Commedia, che, da seicento anni circa, gl'Italiani

e gli studiosi di tutto il mondo leggono e ammirano, scoprendovi ogni giorno nuove e sublimi bellezze, come in una miniera inesauribile di pietre preziose. Gl' Italiani dicono che Dante è l' uomo più straordinario che Dio abbia mandato sulla Terra.

II

1. We learned the news yesterday. 2. They learned it this morning. 3. How much time will it take? 4. It will take two months. 5. The Italian authors were born in Florence. 6. The Whites drew Dante into the struggle. 7. I found your newspaper, and gave it to them. 8. We did not take part in the battle. 9. We burned his books. 10. He will wander many years, and will die in Ravenna. 11. The two Americans died in Paris. 12. Who discovered America? 13. The young Italian will show you a precious stone. 14. We gave it to him. 15. John will give it to his sister. 16. The Spaniard burned their house.

LESSON XX

THE DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUN. THE VERB *VENIRE*

135. The Disjunctive Pronoun. The disjunctive pronoun differs from the conjunctive in that it is not, like the latter, inseparable from the verb. It has two cases :

a. The *nominative* (cf. 65), which is used as the subject of the verb, when expressed (cf. 63, *a*).

b. The *objective*, which has various uses. Its forms are as follows :

mę me	noi us
tę thee	voi you
lui him	loro them (<i>m. and f.</i>)
lei her	
sę (<i>refl.</i>) himself, herself, themselves (<i>m. and f.</i>)	

136. The Objective Case of the disjunctive pronoun is used—

a. After prepositions (cf. 222, *a*).

Vanno al muşęo. Andiamo con loro	They are going to the museum. Let us go with them
Vęnga a pręndere il tę da mę alle cinque	Come and have tea with me at five
La bambina scrisse la lęttera da sę	The little girl wrote the letter all herself

1. Instead of **con me**, **con te**, and **con se**, may be used the forms **męco**, **tęco**, and **sęco**. **Seco** is sometimes equivalent, where there is no ambiguity, to **con lui** or **con lei**.

Vę a casa. Vięn męco	I am going home, come with me
-----------------------------	-------------------------------

b. Hence, after comparatives.

Il suo fratęllo minęore ę pię grande di lui	His younger brother is taller than he
--------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------

c. As a substitute for the conjunctive,

1. Where there are two objects in the same construction.

I nęstri genitęri amano tę e mę	Our parents love you and me
Parla a lui ed a nęi	He speaks to him and to us

2. For clearness, emphasis, or contrast.

L' hanno dato proprio a mę	They have given it to me myself, to me in person. (The unem- phatic form would be <i>Me</i> [<i>for</i> <i>Mi</i>] lo hanno dato)
Lędo tę , Giannętta, e biasęmo lui .	I praise you, Giannetta, and re- prove him

(*a*) Sometimes the conjunctive form is retained redundantly:

A me non mi piace l' arte modęrna	I do not care for modern art
-------------------------------------------------	------------------------------

d. In the third person, where the other persons would take the nominative case (cf. 65).

1. When the subject follows the verb, in a declarative sentence.

L' ha fatto **lui**, *or lui stesso* He has done it **himself**

But

L' ho fatto **io stesso**

2. When the verb is understood.

Lui pittore, lui poeta, lui musicista, He a painter, a poet, a musician,
lui ingegnere, lui architetto! an engineer, an architect!

3. Before **Signori**, or a cardinal number.

Chè desiderano **lor(o) Signori?** What do **you** gentlemen wish?
Loro tre **They** three

4. After **anche, neanche, nemmeno**.

Anche loro sono dalla mia They also are on my side
Nemmeno lui è venuto Not even he came

But

Io vorrei viaggiare. **Anch' io** I should like to travel. So should I

***e.** In exclamations.

Felice **lui!** Pōvera **te!** Happy he! Poor you!

***f.** After **come, dove, quanto, salvochè, siccome**.

Lēi potrà riuscirvi **come me** You can succeed in it as well as I
Io non sono dōtto **quanto lui** I am not so learned as he

***g.** As a predicate after **essere** (in Tuscan usage often preceded by **in**).

S' io fossi **te** (in te), non lo farēi If I were **you**, I would not do it
Non avrēbbe voluto esser **me** (in If he had known everything, he
me), se avesse saputo tutto would not have wished to be **I**
EXCEPTION: Non sono più **io** I am no more myself, I don't
know myself

***h.** In absolute construction, as the subject of the past participle and of the present participle in **-ante, -ente**. With the form in **-ando, -endo**, the nominative is preferred. (Cf. 193.)

Venuti loro, cominciammo a parlare di politica When they had come, we began to talk of politics

Vivente me, non lo farai You shall not do it while I live

But

Essendoci io, non vōllero parlarne I being there, they refused to speak of it

**i*. The disjunctive reflexive, *sè*, can of course be used only when it represents the same person as the subject.

Va da *sè* It goes without saying (of itself)

But (since 'Rembrandt' is not the subject)

Un ritratto di Rembrandt, fatto da lui medesimo A portrait of Rembrandt painted by himself

1. When reciprocal, *sè* is replaced by *loro*.

Non s' accōrdano fra loro They do not agree among themselves

2. *Sè* loses its accent before *stesso*.

Non vōlle mai parlare di *sè stesso* He would never talk of himself

137. The subjunctive is used after *crēdere* meaning 'think' or 'believe.' The future is admissible.

Crēdo che *piōva* I think it is raining

Non crēde che ci *sia* io He does not believe I am here

138. The Verb *venire* 'come.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **venire, venendo, vengo, verrò, venni, venuto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

vengo veniamo

viēni venite

viēne vengono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

venga veniamo

venga veniate

venga vengano

a. Special uses of venire :

1. **Venire** is often used instead of **essere** to construct the passive (cf. 97, a, 1).

Questi desiderî non vĕnnero compiuti These desires were not fulfilled

2. **Venire** takes **a** before an infinitive.

Vĕnga **a** trovarmi alle quattro Come **and** see me at four

3. **Venire** is used for **andare**, when motion is with or toward the second person.

Verrò, verranno, da Lei domani I shall come, they will come, to your house to-morrow

VOCABULARY

il calzino	sock	augurare	wish, wish well
il caporale	corporal	crĕdere	think, believe, have an opinion
il cartellino	sheet, label	impostare	post, mail (impòsto)
il fazzoletto	handkerchief	lodare	praise (lòdo)
la fotografia	photograph	passare	pass, pass as
il francobollo	postage stamp	pensare	think, reflect; pensare a think of, have in mind
la lana	wool	risparmiare	save
il nome	name (given)	tenere, tĕngo	(irr. like venire), terrò, tĕnni, tenuto hold
il pacco	(pl. pacchi) package	affettuoso	affectionate
il principio	beginning	lontano	distant
appena	hardly	postale	postal
costaggiù	down there near you		
dunque	then, well		
insieme	together		

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

NATALE

il 22 dicembre

Caro fratello,

il babbo e la mamma mi hanno detto: scrivi tu a Lucio. Ma come fare che appena so tenere la penna in mano? Ho pregato la signora maestra di aiutarmi, e fra lei e me si è messa insieme questa letterina.

Dunque: a nome di tutti di famiglia ti auguro buon Natale e buon anno.

Riceverai un pacco postale: il babbo ci ha messo i dolci, la mamma i fazzoletti, la Gigina i calzini di lana che ti ha fatti da sè, ed io un bel libro, che ti ho comprato con i denari che risparmio alla scuola coi cartellini dei francobolli.

Sta' allegro il giorno di Natale: noi penseremo a te che sei costaggiù a Tripoli, tanto lontano da noi; ma anche tu pensa a noi, che ti vogliamo bene.

È vero che sei passato caporale? allora fatti la fotografia, e mandacela.

Tanti baci da tutti, un abbraccio dal tuo

aff.^{mo} fratello

Mino

II

1. We shall think about our family on Christmas Day. 2. Shall you think about yours? I am always thinking of it. 3. Buy ten postage-stamps for me, and mail these letters for him. 4. I have mailed them. Many thanks. Don't mention it. 5. What was there in the postal package that Mino's brother received? 6. Mino's brother found in it six handkerchiefs and some woolen socks. 7. Mino says his little sister has made the socks all by herself. 8. Is his sister younger than I? 9. The teacher would not praise

the letters which the pupils had written. 10. Mino hardly knew how to hold the pen in his hand, and asked the teacher to help him. 11. Between him and me a letter has been put together. 12. My friend will come with us, but his brothers have returned with them. 13. We shall wish them Merry Christmas and Happy New Year. 14. Does the teacher praise you or him, Giannino? 15. Give me the gun, please. No, I will not give it to you, but to him. 16. We think our brother and his friend will come on Easter Day.

LESSON XXI

SPECIAL USES OF TENSES. SEQUENCE OF TENSES. AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT. INVERSION

139. Present Indicative. *a.* With a measure of time after *da*, and sometimes in temporal clauses with *dacchè*, the present indicative is used to translate the English present perfect expressing an action begun in the past but continuing into the present (cf. 134).

Siamo in Italia da sei mesi

We **have been** (and still are) in Italy for six months

Dacchè sono qui

Since I **have been** here

1. If the action, begun in the past, was continuing at a later date in the past, the English past perfect is to be translated by the past descriptive.

Era ammalato da una settimana

He **had been** ill a week (and still was so at the time of which I speak)

Combattevamo da più di sei ore

We **had been fighting** for more than six hours

b. It is used, as in English, of the immediate future.

Parto domani

I **leave** to-morrow

***c.** For vividness of narration it is used, as in Latin and some other languages, for the past; this is known as the *historical present*.

<p>Trovandomi vicino a una stazione, vollì fare una corsa per la strada sotterranea. Scendo due o tre scale, e mi trovo tutt' a un tratto sbalzato dal giorno alla notte</p>	<p>Happening near a station, I decided to take a ride on the underground railway. I descend two or three steps, and find myself suddenly transported out of day into night</p>
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

140. Past Tenses of the Indicative. *a.* These are not susceptible of really logical analysis. The **past absolute** describes a past action, and translates the English simple past.

<p>Ricevei una lettera ieri Morì a Parigi nel 1860</p>	<p>I received a letter yesterday He died in Paris in 1860</p>
--------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------

b. The **present perfect** may be used —

1. Generally speaking, to translate the corresponding English tense, expressing an action completed within a period that has not yet expired.

<p>Abbiamo speso tanto denaro Molti soldati sono arrivati questa settimana</p>	<p>We have spent much money Many soldiers have arrived this week</p>
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

2. For an action completed since midnight.

<p>Stamane ho scritte tre lettere</p>	<p>This morning I wrote three letters</p>
----------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------

3. To describe an action which happened at an unstated time in the past, whose consequences extend into the present.

<p>Ho perduto il mio orologio L' Ariosto ha scritto l' <i>Orlando Furioso</i> Colombo ha scoperto l' America</p>	<p>I have lost my watch Ariosto wrote the Orlando Furioso Columbus discovered America</p>
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

NOTE. Outside of Tuscany the distinction between past absolute and present perfect is not carefully enough observed, and foreigners who have studied French are in danger of using the present perfect too much. Still, usage varies with mental attitude, vivid interest, etc.

c. The **past descriptive** is used to express incomplete or habitual action ; to describe an action that was taking place when something else occurred ; and in description.

Chiacchieravano

Noi si **andava** spesso al teatro l' inverno

Scriveva quando **entrai**

Un **velo nero** **cadeva** dalle due parti

Il tempo **era** cattivo

Il castello **era** a cavaliere di una valle angusta e **serviva** di confine ai due stati

They **were chatting**

We **used to go** often to the theater in winter

He **was writing** when I **entered**

A black veil **descended** on both sides

The weather **was** bad

The castle **bestrode** a narrow valley, and **acted** as boundary to the two states

1. Cf. 139, a, 1.

*2. It is often found substituted for the past future perfect (especially in **bisognare**, **convenire**, **dovere**, **potere**) and sometimes for the past subjunctive.

Sarei andato se potevo
Andavo se avessi potuto
Andavo se potevo

are all
equivalent to

Sarei andato se avessi potuto
I should have gone if I had been able

d. The **past perfect** translates the English past perfect except where the second past perfect is required (cf. **e**).

Mentre il frate **stava** così meditando, Renzo **era comparso** sull'uscio ; ma visto il padre soprappensiero e le donne **che facevan** cenno di non disturbarlo, si **fermò** sulla soglia

While the friar **stood** thus in meditation, Renzo **had appeared** at the door ; but seeing the holy father in thought, and the women **making** signs not to disturb him, he **stopped** on the threshold

1. Past tenses of **nāscere**. 'Was born' is variously translated : **è nato**, of a person still living ; **era nato**, of one recently dead ; **nacque**, of one long dead.

e. The **second past perfect** translates the past perfect —

1. In temporal clauses beginning with **appena**, **quando**, **tostochè**, etc., immediately followed by a principal clause whose verb is in the past absolute.

Quando ebbe serrato l'uscio dietro a sè, vide un uomo ritirarsi pian piano, strisciando il muro	When he had locked the door behind him, he saw a man withdrawing very softly, skirting the wall
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

2. In such phrases as this :

Fra cinque minuti li ebbe finiti	He had them finished in five minutes
-----------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

NOTE. To temporal clauses with either the past perfect or second past perfect, is very often preferred in actual usage the absolute construction with the participle (cf. 195).

141. The Future Tense. The future tense is used —

a. Contrary to English usage,

1. To indicate possibility or probability ; when the action referred to is past, the future becomes future perfect.

L' avrò perduto	I must have lost it
Saranno le otto	It must, or may , be eight o'clock
Sarà un' illusione, sarà vero	It may be true, it may be an illusion

2. To indicate actual future time after **quando**, **se**, etc.

Quando la vedrò , glielo dirò	When I see her, I shall tell her so
--------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------

*3. As an alternative to the present subjunctive,

a. To indicate possibility.

Bada, che ti brucerai	Take care, you may burn yourself
------------------------------	-----------------------------------------

b. When the dependent clause refers to future time (169, *i*, N. I).

Credo che verranno	I think they will come
---------------------------	------------------------

b. As in English,

*1. Instead of the imperative, in a general precept or when the action is not to be performed immediately.

Amerai il prossimo tuo come te stesso	Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself
-------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------

142. The Past Future. *a.* The past future is used like the English forms with *should, would, might*, to express what is uncertain or indefinite in the principal clause.

Potrēbbero şmarrirsi	They might lose their way
Non mi farebbe spęcie	It would not surprise me
Si direbbe che fosse pazzo	One would say he was mad

b. To express future time in relation to the past tense of a verb of saying, thinking, etc.

Dice che farà, diceva che farebbe, il giro del mondo	He says he will, he said he would, make the tour of the world
---------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------

1. When the statement made has failed to come true, the past future perfect is required.

Dissero che sarebbero venuti	They said they would come (but they did not)
------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------

c. In deferential or polite requests.

Vorrei vedere i suoi quadri	I should like to see his pictures
-----------------------------	------------------------------------------

d. In a statement reported by hearsay, on the authority of another.

Secondo i nostri dispacci, la Germania avrebbe dichiarato la guerra alla Francia	According to our telegrams, Germany has declared war upon France
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------

e. In the conclusion of conditional sentences (cf. 93).

NOTE. In general, the past future perfect is often used in Italian where English would employ the simple past future.

Ciascuno studiava il luogo dove avrebbe dovuto cacciare la baionetta	Each one considered the point where he should have to drive his bayonet
----------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------

***143. Sequence of Tenses.** If the present or future of the independent clause be changed to a past tense, the present

of the dependent clause is changed to the past descriptive, the present perfect to the past perfect.

Lo lodò perchè fa, ha } fatto, bene	} becomes	{ Lo lodavo (<i>or</i> lodai) perchè faceva, aveva fatto, bene
----------------------------------------	-----------	--------------------------------------------------------------------

a. If the dependent clause states a general truth, the present tense may stand.

Galileo diceva che il mondo si muove	Galileo said that the world moves
--------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

***144. Agreement of Verb with Subject.** *a.* If there is more than one subject, the verb is plural.

Il monārchico e il repubblicano non sono d'accordo	The monarchist and the republican do not agree
-------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------

1. But if there is close alliance between them, a singular verb may be admitted.

Grande è la fierèzza e la voracità della talpe	The temerity and voracity of the mole are considerable
---------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------

2. Two or more singular subjects of the third person connected by *o* take a singular verb.

L'uno o l'altro verrà senza fallo	One or other of them will come without fail
-----------------------------------	------------------------------------------------

3. Singular subjects connected by *con* or *nè* may take the verb in the singular or plural.

Non verrà, verranno, nè l'uno nè l'altro	Neither the one nor the other will come
---------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------

La zia colla nipote partì, partirono, sul far del giorno	The aunt with the niece departed at daybreak
-------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------

b. If the subjects are of different persons, the verb agrees with the first person in preference to the second, with the second in preference to the third.

Lo duca ed io per quel cammino ascoso Entrammo [DANTE]	The leader and I entered upon that secret way
-----------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------

Tu e lui siete dalla mia	You and he are on my side
--------------------------	---------------------------

c. The verb of a relative clause agrees in person and number with the antecedent.

Voi, chę intendędo il tęrzo cięł You who by understanding move
movęte the third heaven

d. Collective nouns take a plural verb usually, if followed by a plural noun in a phrase with **di**.

La maggior parte degli Italiani The majority of the Italians wished
desideravano la libertą for liberty

***145. Inversion of Verb and Subject.** The subject frequently follows the verb in Italian, there being no hard and fast rule about it. Such inversion may occur —

a. In interrogative sentences (cf. **62, b**), unless beginning with an interrogative pronoun.

b. With impersonal verbs, especially with the partitive.

Ci mąncano dięci minuti alle otto It lacks ten minutes to eight
Ve ne ha tanti There are so many of them

c. For emphasis or contrast.

L'ha dętto anche lei *She* said so too
S'ęgli mi parlava una lingua che If he spoke to me in a language I
io non capivo, io potevo bene did not understand, I might well
parlargli una lingua che non speak to him in a language *he*
capisse lui would not understand

d. With participles in the absolute construction (cf. **136, h**).

Parlando tu, tutti stanno attenti When you talk, every one gives
heed

e. In exhortations, wishes, or imprecations.

Ci fossi tu! If you were only here!
Lo ricompęnsi Iddio! May God reward him!

f. In relative clauses and indirect questions.

Le mostrerò il gioiello che m'ha dato lo zio	I'll show you the jewel my uncle gave me
Domando dove sono le seconde classi	I ask where the second-class places are

g. In adverbial clauses of time or place.

Dal fondo della escavazione cen- trale si partono le gallerie secondarie	From the end of the central excavation start the secondary galleries
Nel 1817 capitò a Venezia un viaggiatore inglese	In 1817 there happened to come to Venice an English traveler

h. With verbs which take the dative of the person.

Le dispiace la notizia	The news causes her pain
Gli tremavano le labbra	His lips trembled

i. When the subject or predicate has long modifying clauses, which should logically be placed near it.

Quale uomo fosse il Thour, quanto l'Italia gli debba, come in lui s'accoppiasse alla lucidità della mente la bontà del cuore, dice in questo volume il biografo con autorità che non è dato ad alcuno di pareggiare	What kind of man Thour was, how much Italy owes him, how in him goodness of heart was united to clearness of mind, the biographer tells in this volume with an authority which it is given to no one else to equal
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

j. In general, in narrative style and in conversation, to avoid pedantry, or to emphasize the verb.

Venne subito la disfatta di Novara	The defeat of Novara came soon after
È morto il papa	The pope is dead

k. The subject may follow both verb and predicate nominative.

Era presidente del Consiglio Mas- simo d'Azeglio	Massimo d'Azeglio was President of the Council
-----------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------

VOCABULARY

l' allōdola (<i>f.</i>) lark	agguantare possess oneself of
il brano scrap, fragment; fare a brani tear to pieces	appollaiarsi roost, lodge
la civiltà civilization	avventarsi (a) fall (upon)
il falco (<i>pl.</i> -chi) hawk, falcon	cacciare hunt, drive out
la fatica (<i>pl.</i> -che) fatigue	succhiare suck
il nonno grandfather	dopoche (<i>conj.</i>) after
il pezzo piece	dovesse 3 <i>sg. p. subj. of dovere</i>
il resto remainder, rest	fecero 3 <i>pl. p. abs. of fare</i>
il risorgimento resurrection	già already
il secolo century	nonostante che (<i>with subj.</i>) notwithstanding that
lo straniero stranger, alien	per uno apiece
il suolo soil	qualche some (<i>indef. adj. w. sg. n.</i>)
altro other	sotto under
	via (<i>adv.</i>) away

EXERCISE

I

UN PO' DI STORIA DEL RISORGIMENTO ITALIANO

Nonostante che la nostra Italia dovesse essere sacra per gli uomini di tutto il mondo dopoche da essa avevano imparato le arti, le scienze, le industrie e la civiltà sotto tutte le forme, gli stranieri, in altri tempi, l' hanno sempre guardata come i falchi guardano le allodole: per avventarcisi, per farla a brani e per agguantarsene un pezzo per uno.

E disgraziatamente per noi, non si contentarono di guardarla, ma fecero anche il resto.

Voi, ragazzi italiani, avrete già qualche idea di quello che i vostri nonni e i vostri babbi hanno fatto per cacciar via dal nostro suolo i vampiri che da secoli vi s' erano appollaiati per succhiargli il sangue.

Ora i vampiri se ne sono andati. Ma quante fatiche, quanti pericoli e quanti morti!

II

(Involves 139, 140, 141, 142)

1. The duke possessed himself of the state. 2. If many Italians had not fought for their country, they would not have driven out the alien from their soil. 3. He read my letter after I had written it for the second time. 4. Your grandfathers drove out the strangers from Italy, because they had sucked her blood for centuries. 5. According to the letter I received this morning, my mother has returned to Paris. 6. This is the shortest letter I have ever received from her. 7. The palace of the stranger was larger than the house which was near it. 8. Hawks fall upon the other birds. 9. The Spaniard said he would come before noon, but he has not yet arrived. 10. Where is my umbrella? I must have left it in that compartment. 11. We were talking of John's pupil when he entered. 12. We used to see her every week last winter, but we have not seen her this year. 13. When he had bought the tickets, he put them in his pocket. 14. When I arrive at my grandfather's I shall find the others there.

LESSON XXII

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE. THE VERB *ANDARE*

146. The Definite Article. The definite article is used far more in Italian than in English. It is used where it would not be in English —

- a. Before the possessive adjective (cf. 107, 108).
- b. Before abstract nouns and nouns denoting a whole class (cf. 73, a).
- c. Before family names of men; often, especially to imply familiarity or affection, before given names of women; rarely before given names of men, when referring to a character

or to the man's works ; sometimes before the surnames of women, to indicate fame or familiarity.

Il Tasso passò sette anni in prigione a Ferrara	Tasso spent seven years in prison at Ferrara
La Lauretta è una brava bambina	Laura is a capable little girl
L' Amleto del Shakespeare	Shakespeare's Hamlet
Ha molto studiato il Dante	He has studied Dante (the works of Dante) a great deal
La piccola Bugiani	The little Bugiani girl
La Duse	Duse, the great actress

1. When men's surnames, as Garibaldi's, are in very familiar and affectionate use, the article would be an affectation.

d. Before names of continents, countries, and provinces ; and names of lakes, islands, mountains, and rivers (except **Arno**).

L' Australia è molto lontana dall' Europa	Australia is very far from Europe
Viva l' Italia !	Long live Italy !

1. After **in** meaning 'in' or 'to' a country it is omitted with names ending in **a** (unless modified).

Resteremo tutta l' estate in Italia	We shall remain all summer in Italy
But	
Stetti due mesi nel Belgio	I stayed two months in Belgium
È mai stato nel Giappone?	Have you ever been in Japan?
Avēvano passato l' inverno nella Francia meridionale	They had spent the winter in southern France

2. It is omitted likewise after **di**, when preposition and noun are equivalent to an adjective of nationality (cf. 147, *d*).

Il re d' Inghilterra	The king of England, the English king
Vini di Francia	French wines

3. A few names of cities require the article, such as **l' Aia** 'the Hague,' **il Cairo** 'Cairo,' **la Spezia** 'Spezia,' etc.

4. Among names of islands which do not take the article are **Creta** 'Crete,' **Cipro** 'Cyprus,' **Rodi** 'Rhodes.'

e. Instead of the possessive: with parts of the body or clothing, or some names of relatives; in general, where the idea of possession is intimate and there cannot be ambiguity (cf. 109); sometimes with **ne** to translate 'its' (cf. 107, c).

Si levò l' impermeabile	He took off his raincoat
I capelli gli scendevano fin sulle spalle	His hair fell down to his shoulders

Come sta la mamma?	How is your mother?
---------------------------	----------------------------

1. Likewise after **avere**, of personal characteristics.

Egli ha gli occhi azzurri	He has blue eyes
Ella ha le mani piccole	She has small hands

*2. In poetic usage this may be in an adverbial accusative construction.

Poggiati il ginocchio allo scudo	Leaning their knees against their shields
-----------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------

f. Before the number of the year or the hour, or the name of a particular month.

Il Petrarca nacque nel 1304	Petrarch was born in 1304
Verrò da Lei alle cinque	I shall come to your house at five
Nell' ottobre dell' anno scorso	In October of last year

g. Distributively,

1. In expressing measure.

Hò pagato questa seta cinque lire il metro	I paid five francs a meter for this silk
------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

2. With days of the week, to mean 'every.'

La mia maestra d'italiano viene da me il mercoledì	My Italian teacher comes to me on Wednesdays, or every Wednes- day
--------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

a. Without article, the name of a day of the week may be understood to refer to the last or the next one.

Lo vidi lunedì I saw him on **Monday**, last **Monday**

h. Before a title followed by a proper name.

È arrivata la regina Ēlena nel suo yacht Queen Helen arrived in her yacht

È in casa la Signora Casagrande? Is Mrs. Casagrande at home?

i. Before any other part of speech used as a noun.

Mi duole il dirlo It pains me to say it

Rifiutò di dirmi il perché He refused to tell me the reason

Pensava con grande sgomento al come avrei fatto a pagare I thought with great anxiety of how I should manage to pay

j. In constructing the superlative degree (cf. 116).

**k.* In a number of idiomatic phrases :

Dare il buon giorno To say good morning

Dire le bugie To tell lies

Fare il Natale To keep Christmas

Fare le scuse To make excuses

i. Many such phrases take the feminine article alone, with a noun, presumably *cosa*, understood. (Or this may be considered the feminine conjunctive pronoun, replacing *la cosa*.)

Averla con To have a grudge against

Darla vinta a To surrender

Dársela con To be congenial to

Dirla schietta To speak frankly

Farla da padrone To act arrogantly, play the master

Farla finita To make an end of it

Io la veggio brutta It looks bad to me

Legársela al dito To hold a grudge

Saperla lunga To know all about it

147. The Definite Article is Omitted —

a. In the vocative, and after a pronominal adjective or a numeral.

S' accōmodi, Signore. Il signore	Sit down, sir. The gentleman sits
s' accōmoda	down
Questo lume	This lamp
Due scodēlle	Two soup-plates

b. In proverbs.

Cōsa fatta capo ha	A thing done has an end, is ended
--------------------	-----------------------------------

c. In enumerations, if summed up collectively.

Nōbili, popolani, contadini, uōmini, dōnne, tutti s' affollavano allo scalo	Nobles, populace, peasants, men, women, everybody was throng- ing down to the landing-place
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

d. With *di*, to indicate material, contents, intimate characteristics, or nationality.

Il vestito di sēta	The silk dress
Il bicchier d' acqua	The glass of water
Il maēstro d' italiano	The Italian teacher
La cioccolata di Svizzera	Swiss chocolate
Una moltitūdine di pellegrini	A multitude of pilgrims

**e.* In many set phrases, such as

A letto	In bed
A scuōla	At school
Barca a rēmi	Rowboat
Da mane a sēra	From morning till night
Di giorno, di notte	By day, by night
Di settēmbre	In September
In casa	At home
In città	In town
In pièdi	On one's feet
Uōmo di giudizio	Man of judgment, good behavior

***148. Agreement of Definite Article with Two or more Nouns.**

a. In a series of substantives of the same number and gender, the article may be used with one alone.

Le montagne, valli e piagge della Riviera italiana sono bellissime	The mountains, valleys, and coasts of the Italian Riviera are most beautiful
--------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------

But

Le montagne ed i ghiacci della Svizzera	The mountains and glaciers of Switzerland
-----------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------

149. The Verb *andare* 'go.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **andare, andando, vado, anderò or andrò, andai, andato**

PRESENT INDICATIVE		PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
vado, or vò	andiamo	vada	andiamo
vai	andate	vada	andiate
va	vanno	vada	vādano

For the imperative, cf. 130, *e*.

a. Special uses of *andare*.

1. **Andare** takes *a* before the infinitive. To 'go and' is translated **andare a**.

Andrò a comprare della carta da scrivere	I shall go and buy some writing-paper
------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

2. **Andare** with the present participle translates the verb 'be,' with an additional idea of continuation (cf. 102).

Va crescendo a poco a poco	It is growing little by little
----------------------------	--------------------------------

3. With the past participle, it makes a passive carrying the additional idea of obligation or propriety (cf. 97, *a*, 1).

I ragazzi italiani non vanno mandati soli a scuola	Italian boys are never sent to school unaccompanied
Questo non va messo qui	This isn't to be put here

***b. Idioms with andare.**

Andare a cavallo	To go on horseback
Andare in collera	To become angry
Andare dietro a	To be inferior to; to follow
Andare in estasi	To go into ecstasies
Andare fuori	To go out
Andare a piedi	To go on foot
Andar superbo	To be proud
A lungo andare	In the long run

VOCABULARY

il caffè coffee	andare a cavallo ride horseback
la conoscenza acquaintance	andare a piedi go on foot
il figlio son	aprire, apersi, aperto open
la figlia daughter	aver piacere di be pleased to
il latte milk	conoscere, conobbi, conosciuto be
Milano Milan	acquainted with, meet, become
Nāpoli Naples	acquainted with
il principe prince	dar fuoco a set fire to
la principessa princess	dar la buona notte <i>etc.</i> say good
la regina queen	night <i>etc.</i>
il romanzo novel	dar noia a annoy
la seta silk	dar pensiero a worry (<i>tr.</i>)
come al solito as usual	incontrare meet, run across
per il solito usually	presentare introduce
in casa at home	restare stay, remain
fuori out	sperare hope
or ora just now	chiudere, chiusi, chiuso close
quest' altro next, coming	

EXERCISE**I**

1. È in casa la Signorina Conti? No, Signora, è andata fuori.
2. Buon giorno, Signora. Mi permetta di presentarle il Signor Orselli.
3. Ho piacere di far la Sua conoscenza.
4. Dove sono le Sue figlie? Perché non sono venute con Lei?
5. Sono andate in

Francia. Ci resteranno due mesi, e passeranno l'estate in Inghilterra. 6. Dove ha conosciuto il Signor Pisani? A Napoli. Conosco lui e sua sorella. 7. Conosce il nuovo romanzo del Fogazzaro? Desidero di comprarlo. 8. Dove va, Signorina? Vado da mia zia. Spero che sarà in casa. 9. Non ci sarà. L'ho vista or ora in Via Cavour. 10. Andiamo a trovarla. L'incontreremo per la strada. 11. Ha sentito che il Bianchi è andato in Inghilterra? 12. Sono andata questa mattina dalla mia maestra d'inglese. 13. Ci vo il martedì e il venerdì, e pago tre lire la lezione. 14. Come si chiama la regina d'Italia? Si chiama la regina Elena. 15. Ha visto la principessa Vittoria? Ha gli occhi neri, e le mani molto piccole. 16. Andai la settimana scorsa a fare il Natale da mio cognato. 17. L'Italia è la nostra patria. 18. Di giugno si va per il solito in campagna, e si torna di settembre in città. 19. Non si dia pensiero. 20. Leggevo il famoso romanzo del Manzoni quando venne la mia amica a trovarmi. 21. Le do noia se apro la finestra? L'aveva chiusa or ora. 22. Desidera una tazza di caffè e latte?

II

1. We usually came into town in October. 2. America is larger than Europe. 3. Manzoni was a writer of Italy. He was born in Milan. 4. We opened the door, as usual, but they closed it. 5. Orselli has gone to France. He will stay three weeks with Count Costa. 6. Let me introduce you to Princess Porciani. 7. Have the soldiers set fire to our house? 8. I should have opened the window of the compartment, but it would have annoyed one of the passengers. 9. Is Mrs. B. at home? No, miss, she has gone out. 10. Did she go on foot? No, she went on horseback. 11. This news worries us. 12. The children came and said good-morning to their teacher. 13. I wish to read Fogazzaro's best novel. 14. Having read it, I shall talk of it to my friends. 15. Where did you meet Miss C.? I am not acquainted with her. 16. Permit me to introduce to you Mr. B. 17. I am happy to make your acquaintance.

18. We were reading, when they came and said good morning to us. 19. Bring me a glass of milk. 20. Here is my cousin's silk dress. 21. When I go to her house I shall carry it to her. 22. Where are your books, Laretta? Go and find them.

III

L' ARRIVO IN UNA STAZIONE FERROVIARIA ITALIANA

Si arriva a Firenze. Un lungo fischio, il treno rallenta, poi si ferma alla stazione. State pensando commosso a tutto quello che avete a vedere in questa bellissima città; ma queste emozioni sono interrotte bruscamente dagli altri viaggiatori che cominciano a buttar giù i loro bagagli dalla rete, con gran pericolo di farvi male. Quelli che li hanno già in mano si sporgono allo sportelló, chiamando: — Facchino! — Se hanno la fortuna di trovarne uno pronto, lo caricano di tanti sacchi, tante valigie, tante borse, da farlo parere più ciuco che uomo. Vi mena all' uscita dove dovete dare il vostro biglietto all' impiegato, poichè in Italia si deve renderlo non solo all' entrata in treno ma anche all' uscire dalla stazione. È il facchino che vi trova una carrozza, o un legno, come si chiama a Firenze. Ci mette tutta la vostra roba e vi salite anche voi. Poi gli dite di andare nel bagagliaio per ritirarne il vostro baule, dandogli la bolletta. Mentre che lo aspettate, vedete uscire dalla stazione tanta gente frettolosa, affollata, occupata a chiamarsi, a urtarsi, a stringersi la mano, baciandosi sulle gote anche gli uomini, che è un piacere a vederli. Ecco il vostro facchino col baule su un carretto. In un attimo il baule è sulla vettura, e al facchino che sta in aspettativa davanti a voi, si da una mancia che non basta mai. Per quanto generosa sia, egli vi guarderà con una espressione commovente, e vi dirà: — Ma . . . è poco! — Bisogna fare l' orecchio da mercante e tirar via per le strade rumorose, fino al Lungarno dove sta il vostro albergo.

LESSON XXIII

CARDINAL NUMERALS. DATES, TIME, AGE. MONEY.
MEASUREMENT. THE VERB *MORIRE*

150. The Cardinal Numerals are —

1 uno	21 ventuno	100 cento
2 due	22 ventidue	101 centuno
3 tre	23 ventitré	102 centodue
4 quattro	24 ventiquattro	160 centosessanta
5 cinque	25 venticinque	180 centottanta
6 sei	26 ventisei	200 dugento
7 sette	27 ventisette	600 seicento
8 otto	28 ventotto	800 ottocento
9 nove	29 ventinove	1000 mille
10 dieci	30 trenta	1001 mille uno
11 undici	31 trentuno	2000 duemila
12 dodici	32 trentadue	20,000 ventimila
13 tredici	38 trentotto	
14 quattordici	39 trentanove	
15 quindici	40 quaranta	
16 sedici	50 cinquanta	
17 diciassette	60 sessanta	
18 diciotto	70 settanta	
19 diciannove	80 ottanta	
20 venti	90 novanta	

a. Uno has a feminine **una**, and when used adjectively has the forms of the indefinite article (cf. 59, 60).

Uno scopo, una patria, un dio One purpose, one fatherland, one God

1. With **ventuno**, **trentuno**, etc., used adjectively, the noun should be in the singular when it follows the numeral, in the plural when it precedes, the numeral agreeing in gender only.

Trentun soldato, soldati trentuno Thirty-one soldiers

Centuna lira, lire centuna One hundred and one lire

b. With **cento** and **mille** the indefinite article is not used. The plural of **mille** is **mila**.

Cento uōmini e **mille** cavalli **A hundred men and a thousand horses**

c. 'Eleven hundred,' 'twelve hundred,' etc., must be translated 'one thousand one hundred' etc.

La prima crociata ebbe luogo circa The First Crusade took place about
il **millecento** 1100

La guęra civile americana in- The American Civil War began
cominciò nel **milleottocento** in 1861
sessantuno

d. 'Both' = **tutti e due**, **tutt' e due**; 'all three' = **tutti e tre**; etc. If a noun follows, it takes the article.

Tutt' e due gli amici Both (the) friends

e. The numerals above twenty may be written as one word or as two except when the digit is one or eight, when they must be written as one.

Ventidue, vęnti due; quarantuno; sessantotto; trenta sei, trentasei

f.* **Cento may be written **cen** when followed by a numeral not accented upon the first syllable.

Centiciassętte, cęnquaranta; *but* cęntosei, cęntovęnti, cęntosędici

151. Dates. *a.* For the days of the month, except the first (which takes the ordinal, **primo**), the cardinals are used, preceded by the definite article. Both article and numeral precede the name of the month.

Il **quattro** gennaio, il **25** giugno January fourth, the 25th of June
Il **primo** agosto The first of August

1. A more stately form inserts the word **di** 'day.' (And for the occasional use of the form **li** in dates, cf. **71, d.**)

Il **di** (*or addi*) sei di marzo The sixth of March

b. The definite article precedes the number of the year (cf. 146, *f*).

Lo Shakespeare morì nel 1616 Shakespeare died in 1616

c. The number of a century expressed in cardinals serves to indicate the century following (cf. 157, *c*). **Mille** is often dropped.

Il trecento, il milletrecento The fourteenth century — *lit.* the
'three hundreds,' the 'thirteen
hundreds'

Il dugento, l'ottocento The thirteenth century, the nine-
teenth century

d. 'Ago' is expressed by **fa**, **sono**, or **or sono**, following a measure of time.

Due mesi fa Two months ago
Anni sono Years ago
Cent'anni or sono A hundred years ago

***e.** Idiomatic phrases :

Otto giorni	A week
Quindici giorni	A fortnight
Oggi a otto	A week from to-day
Doman l'altro	The day after to-morrow
Ieri l'altro, l'altro ieri	The day before yesterday
Ogni tre giorni	Every three days
Un giorno sì, un giorno no	Every other day
Quanti ne abbiamo del mese?	} What day of the month is it?
Quanti ne abbiamo?	
A' quanti siamo del mese?	
Ne abbiamo tre	} It is the third
È il tre	
Siamo ai tre	
Ai tanti del mese	On such a day of the month
A' quanti del mese parte?	On what day of the month does he leave?
Nella prima metà di maggio	In the first half of May

Ai primi di ottobre	In the first days of October
L'anno scorso di luglio	In July of last year
Fra due mesi	Within two months, two months from now
L'èbbe finito in due mesi	He had it finished within two months
Da due anni	For two years past
Anno	} Last year, a year ago
L'altr' anno	
Oggi è l'anno	A year ago to-day
Anno di là	Year before last
Da qui all'ora	From now until then

152. Time of Day. *a.* With numerals indicating the time of day, the definite article precedes, and both article and verb agree with *ora*, *ore*, understood.

Sono le tre	It is three o'clock
Erano le undici e mezzo	It was half-past eleven
Vada alle cinque	Go at five

b. In time-tables, and increasingly in general usage, the hours after noon are counted from midnight.

Il treno parte alle diciassette e arriva alle ventidue	The train leaves at 5 P.M. and arrives at 10 P.M.
-----------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------

1. A.M. and P.M. may be expressed by the adjectives *ante-meridiano* and *pomeridiano*, modifying *ore* understood.

Va dalla maestra alle dieci ante- meridiane	She goes to her teacher at ten in the morning
------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------

c. 'One o'clock' is *il tocco* in good Tuscan usage, though *l'una* is used elsewhere.

Il tocco di notte	One o'clock at night
La colazione si serve al tocco	Luncheon is served at one

d. 'Noon' is *mezzogiorno*, and means twelve o'clock precisely; *mezzanotte* is 'midnight.'

*e. Idiomatic phrases :

Chę ore sono?	What time is it?
Sono le cinque passate	It is after five
È la mezza	It is half-past
Suonano le due	It is striking two
Quanto c'è alle nove?	How near is it to nine?
Ci mancano dieci minuti alle nove	It lacks ten minutes to nine
Sono le dodici e mezzo	It is half-past twelve
Di quanto sono passate le dieci?	How long after ten is it?
Le dieci sono passate da tanto	It is some time after ten
A che ora devo venire?	At what time shall I come?
Verso le sette	About seven
Sono le due meno un quarto	It is a quarter before two
Sono le otto e dieci	It is ten minutes past eight
Stamane, stasera	This morning, this evening
Stanotte	Last night (until noon; after noon it means 'to-night')

153. Age. Age is expressed by means of the verb **avere** with **anni**.

Quanti anni hai?	How old are you?
Ho sette anni	I am seven years old

a. In speaking of an infant or an animal, **tempo** replaces **anni**.

Quanto tempo ha questo bimbo?	How old is this baby?
-------------------------------	-----------------------

154. Money. The Italian system is decimal, based upon the **lira**, which, like the French franc, is equivalent to nearly 20 cents.

$$5 \text{ centēsimi} = 1 \text{ soldo} = \text{about } 1 \text{ cent}$$

$$100 \text{ centēsimi} = 20 \text{ soldi} = 1 \text{ lira}$$

***155. Measurement.** Italians use the metric system. The **mętro** equals nearly forty inches, and the **centimętro** is the 100th part of a **mętro**. An inch equals about $2\frac{1}{2}$ **centimętri**. The **chilęmetro** is a long half-mile; the **chilęgramma** (masculine) a generous two pounds; the **litro** about a quart.

Ho pagato questo nastro una lira il metro	I paid twenty cents a yard for this ribbon
Queste buste sono lunghe quindici centimetri	These envelopes are six inches long
Una stanza della lunghezza di sei metri e della larghezza di quattro metri	A room six meters long by four meters wide

156. The Verb *morire* 'die.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *morire, morendo, muoio, morrò, morii, morto*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

muoio	moriamo
muori	morite
muore	muōiono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

muoia	moriamo
muoia	moriate
muoia	muōiano

VOCABULARY

le armi arms (weapons)	il segreto secret
il bimbo baby	le truppe troops
il carbonaro charcoal-burner	Vittōrio Emanuele Victor Em- manuel
il consigliere adviser	accordarsi agree (accordo)
Cristōforo Colombo Christopher Columbus	cacciare chase, drive out
il fulmine thunderbolt	dirigere, dirēssi, dirētto direct
il galantuomo honest man	fallire fail
l'indipendenza <i>f.</i> independence	istituire found, establish
il moto movement	coprire, copērsi, coperto cover
l'opera <i>f.</i> task, achievement	ardito bold
Petrarca Petrarch	dolorosamente sorrowfully
il politico statesman	faticoso laborious
il re king	

EXERCISE

1. Quegl' Italiani che per i primi si diedero alla faticosa opera di cacciare lo straniero erano i più intelligenti, i più buoni e i più arditi d' Italia. 2. Ma erano pochi e senza armi. 3. Bisognava accordarsi in segreto. 4. Istituirono nel 1820 la società segreta,

così detta, dei Carbonari. 5. I primi moti rivoluzionari preparati da questa società cominciarono a Napoli. 6. Ma dolorosamente fallirono! 7. La liberazione d'Italia fu l'opera di moltissimi eroi. 8. Li diressero quattro grandi uomini: uno scrittore, un re, un soldato, e un uomo politico. 9. Il Mazzini, il grande agitatore, nacque nel 1805 e morì nel 1872; aveva 67 anni. 10. Vittorio Emanuele II, il re galantuomo, nacque il 14 marzo, 1820, e morì il 9 gennaio, 1878. 11. Garibaldi, quel fulmine di guerra, nacque nel 1807 e morì nel 1882. 12. Il conte Cavour, il consigliere del re, nacque nel 1810 e morì nel 1861. 13. Vittorio Emanuele, re di Piemonte, fu dichiarato re d'Italia il 18 febbraio, 1861. 14. Le truppe italiane entrarono vittoriosi in Roma il 20 settembre, 1870. 15. In che giorno nacque Dante Alighieri?

II

1. In what year was Petrarch born? In 1304. 2. In what year did he die? In 1374. 3. There is a poor man. If I had forty-one lire, I would give them to him. 4. What day of the month is it today? It is the 17th. 5. Christopher Columbus discovered America in 1492. 6. They wish me to leave at 7.30 P.M. 7. How old is your father? He is fifty; he was born fifty years ago. 8. How many books have you? I have more than a thousand. 9. At what time to-morrow shall I return to your house? At a quarter past eight in the evening. 10. The Spaniard died last month in Paris. He was born in 1872, and was forty-three years old. 11. Shakespeare was born in 1564 and died in 1616. 12. How old was he when he died? He was fifty-two. 13. What time is it? It is twenty minutes past ten. It lacks ten minutes to eleven. 14. How old is this baby? He is three months old; he was born on the twenty-eighth of March. 15. The author died on the twenty-third of January, 1913, at two o'clock in the morning. 16. On what day did King Victor Emmanuel die?

LESSON XXIV

ORDINALS. COLLECTIVES. MULTIPLICATIVES.
INDETERMINATES. THE VERB *PARERE*

157. Ordinals. The ordinal numerals are —

1st	primo	20th	{ ventēſimo vigēſimo
2d	ſecondo	21st	{ ventunēſimo ventēſimo primo
3d	terzo	22d	{ ventiduēſimo ventēſimo ſecondo
4th	quarto		<i>etc.</i>
5th	quinto	30th	trentēſimo
6th	ſeſto	40th	quarantēſimo
7th	ſeſtimo	50th	cinquantēſimo
8th	ottavo	60th	ſeſſantēſimo
9th	nono	70th	ſettantēſimo
10th	dēcimo	80th	ottantēſimo
11th	{ undēcimo undicēſimo dēcimo primo	90th	novantēſimo
12th	{ duodēcimo dodicēſimo dēcimo ſecondo	100th	centēſimo
13th	{ tredicēſimo dēcimo terzo	101st	centēſimo primo
14th	{ quattordicēſimo dēcimo quarto	102d	centēſimo ſecondo
15th	{ quindicēſimo dēcimo quinto		<i>etc.</i>
16th	{ ſedicēſimo dēcimo ſeſto	130th	centotrentēſimo
17th	{ diciſettēſimo dēcimo ſeſtimo	170th	centoſettantēſimo
18th	{ diciottēſimo dēcimo ottavo	200th	ducentēſimo
19th	{ diciannovēſimo dēcimo nono	500th	cinquecentēſimo
		600th	ſecentēſimo
		1000th	millēſimo
		1001st	millēſimo primo
			<i>etc.</i>
		2000th	duemillēſimo
		30,000th	trentamillēſimo
		100,000th	centomillēſimo

a. The ordinals are adjectives, and agree as such.

La quarantēſima pāgina The fortieth page

b. Fractions below one half are expressed by ordinals.

Cinque miglia e tre quarti Five and three-quarters miles

1. 'Half' is translated as an adjective by **mezzo**, as a noun by **la metà**. **Mezzo** agrees when it precedes.

Mangiò mezza la pera He ate half the pear

Una mezz' ora A half hour

Sono le tre e mezzo It is half-past three

Ne prese la metà He took half of it

c. The number of the century may be expressed by ordinals (cf. 151, *c*).

Il sēcolo dēcimo quarto The fourteenth century

d. Numerical titles of rulers, and of volumes, chapters, etc., are indicated by the ordinals following, without article.

Carlo quinto Charles the Fifth

Luigi dēcimoſeſto Louis XVI

Capitolo terzo Chapter three

e. Ordinals precede cardinals in such phrases as

I primi sei canti The first six cantos

*158. **Collectives.** *a.* The commonest are —

una coppia a couple un milione a million

un paio a pair un miliardo a billion (U.S.), thou-
sand millions (Eng.)

una decina half a score

una dozzina a dozen un bilione a trillion (U.S.), billion
(Eng.)

una ventina a score

un centinaio about a hundred ambedue, entrambi both

un migliaio about a thousand

1. 'About' so many may be indicated by **da** or **un** before a cardinal.

Da seicento About six hundred

Un settanta About seventy

b. Collectives with special meanings :

1. *Games*: *ambo*, *terno*, *quaderno*, *cinquina*, 'a two,' 'a three,' etc., in the lottery, or certain games of cards.

2. *Paper*: *un quaderno*, *un quinterno*, a packet of four, of five sheets.

3. *Time*: *centenario* 'centenary'; *triduo*, *novena*, *quarantena*, periods of three, nine, forty days; *bimestre*, *trimestre*, *quadrimestre*, *semestre*, periods of two, three, four, six months; *biennio*, *triennio*, *quinquennio*, *sessennio*, *decennio*, *centennio*, *millennio*, periods of two, three, etc. years.

4. *Versification*: *La terzina* or *il terzetto*, *la quartina*, *la sestina*, *l'ottava*, etc., three-, four-, six-, or eight-versed stanzas; *quadernario*, *quinario*, *senario*, *ottonario*, etc., four-, five-, six-, or eight-syllabled verses.

5. *Binario* is used of the two rails of a railway-track.

*159. *Multiplicatives*. a. Multiplicatives are the adjectives (also used substantively) *doppio* 'double,' *triplo* 'triple,' *quadruplo* 'quadruple,' *quintuplo* 'fivefold,' *sestuplo* 'sixfold,' *centuplo* 'one hundredfold,' etc. Similar forms may be constructed with *volte* 'times.'

Una scatola a *doppio* fondo

A double-bottomed box

Dodici è il *triplo* di quattro

Twelve is three times four

La mia parte era *dieci volte* più grande della sua

My share was ten times as great as his

Due alla *volta*

Two at a time

1. The similar forms *duplici*, *triplice*, etc. are used only as adjectives, and only of abstract things.

La *Triplice* Alleanza

The Triple Alliance

b. Arithmetical processes :

Cinque via cinque, venticinque	Five times five are twenty-five
Due e due fanno quattro	Two and two make four
Dieci meno cinque, cinque	Ten minus five leaves five

160. Indeterminate Numerals. These are **molto**, **poco**, **troppo**, **tutto**, **tanto**, **quanto**, and **parecchi** (f. **parecchie**) 'several.' When used as adjectives, they agree, and dispense with the article (except **tutto**, cf. *c*). When used substantively, the masculine singular is abstract and neuter in meaning, while the masculine plural refers to persons. For their use as adverbs, cf. **89, b**.

Ho troppa cose da fare	I have too many things to do
Spende poco	He spends little
Parecchie donne avēvano paura	Several women were afraid
Molti hanno abbandonato la città	Many have abandoned the city

***a. Molto.** Tuscan usage sanctions **di** before **molto**.

Ha perduto il denaro, e ne aveva di molto	He has lost his money, and he had a great deal
-----------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------

b. Poco. Preceded by **un** it means 'a little,' and is often shortened to **po'**; it is used adverbially in this form to mean 'just.' In the plural it means 'few,' 'a few.'

Mi dia un po' di pane	Give me a little bread
Pochi la pēnsano come me	Few are of my opinion
Dimmi un po'	Just tell me

c. Tutto used adjectively precedes the article and the noun, unless it follows both. The article is required.

Tutti gli uōmini	All men, all the men
Gli uccelli tutti	All birds, all the birds

1. In the singular it may mean 'whole.'

Tutto il giorno	All day, the whole day
Tutto un giorno	All one day, a whole day

2. Reinforced by **quanto** it means 'all possible,' 'all there were,' 'all of them,' 'every one of them.'

Tutti quanti fuggirono **Every one of them** fled

3. Before a relative, **tutto** takes **quello** or **ciò**.

Tutto quello che disse fu vero **All that** he said was true

d. **Poco, molto, troppo, tanto**, and **quanto** are often used as referring to time.

Stette molto a tornare	He was a long time getting back
Ci vorrà troppo	It will take too long
Quanto ci sarà da aspettare?	How long will there be to wait?
Dopo non molto	After a short time
Ogni quanto c'è il tram?	How often does the tram run?
Ogni tanto	Every so often, every little while
Poco fa	A little while ago
Fra poco	In a little while

161. The Verb *parere* 'seem.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **parere, parendo, paio, parrò, parvi or parsi, parso or paruto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

paio	paiamo
pari	parete
pare	pàiono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

paia	paiamo
paia	paiate
paia	pàiano

VOCABULARY

Borbone *m.* Bourbon
il ducato duchy
le Due Sicilie the Two Sicilies,
 Naples and Sicily
Enrico Henry
Filippo Philip
Giorgio George
il granducato grand duchy
l'impèro *m.* empire

il Lombardo-Vēneto Lombardy and
 Venetia
il mestiere trade
la paglia straw; **muovere** ~ stir
la pera pear
il Piemonte Piedmont
il regnante ruler
il regno kingdom
la Savoia Savoy

il tornaconto advantage
la Toscana Tuscany

dividere, divisi, diviso divide
eleggere, eletti, eletto elect
intendere, intesi, inteso understand
muovere, mossi, mosso move
reggere, ressi, retto rule

davvero truly, indeed
dietro behind
faccio 1 sg. pres. ind. of fare (irr.)
do, make
faceva 3 sg. past descr. ind. of fare
nulla anything; with non, nothing
o well, now
sotto under
veramente really

EXERCISE

I

PIPPO DICE LA STORIA

Un signore che visita la scuola domanda a un contadinello :

— Come ti chiami ?

— Pippo del Falorni, ai suoi comandi.

— E tuo padre come si chiama ?

— Gasparo del Falorni, ai suoi comandi.

— Che mestiere fa ?

— Il contadino.

— Ti piace il mestiere del contadino ?

— Sissignore.

— Perché ?

— Perché si sta sempre all' aria aperta, si lavora di molto e siamo pieni di salute.

— Bravo Pippo! . . . E . . . dimmi un po': di storia patria ne sai nulla ?

— Sissignore. La so tutta veramente bene.

— O sentiamo. In quale anno incominciarono le guerre per l' indipendenza d' Italia ?

— Nel 1848.

— Va bene ! O dimmi un po', Pippo, in quanti stati si divideva a quel tempo l' Italia ?

— L' Italia era divisa, a quel tempo, in sette stati: il Piemonte sotto la dinastia di Savoia; il Lombardo-Veneto soggetto all' impero d' Austria; il ducato di Parma, quello di Mōdena e il granducato di Toscana, governati da principi i quali non movevano paglia senza il permesso dell' Austria; il Regno delle due Sicilie retto dai Borboni, che erano i peggio di tutto; e lo stato Pontificio.

— Bravo bambino! E . . . dimmi un po'; nel governo di questi piccoli stati era rappresentato il popolo?

— Non capisco.

— C' erano le Camere dei deputati eletti dal popolo, i senatori, i ministri?

— Nossignore. Ogni regnante faceva tutto da sè. Ben inteso che dietro c' era sempre l' Austria che ordinava, proibiva o approvava, secondo il suo tornaconto.

— Avevi ragione. Bravo Pippo! La sai veramente bene davvero, e ne faccio i miei sinceri elogi a te e al tuo maestro.

II

1. Just tell me, Pippo, how many wars were fought for Italian independence? Three, sir. 2. When began the first? About seventy years ago. 3. And the second? In 1859. 4. And the third? In 1866. 5. Few states of Italy were well governed before the War of Independence. 6. Foreign rulers divided Italy among themselves. 7. Dante was born in the thirteenth century and died in the fourteenth. 8. Louis XIV, Charles IX, Philip II, Henry VIII, and George III were all of them famous rulers. 9. How often does the train for Florence run? 10. It is half past three; it will arrive in a little while. 11. These pears seem good; I will give you half of mine. 12. $24 - 8 = 16$. $27 \times 14 = 378$. $117 + 54 = 171$. 13. I shall not accompany them to the train. It would take too long.

LESSON XXV

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE. THE VERB *FARE*

162. **The Indefinite Article.** The indefinite article is omitted in Italian —

a. Before a predicate noun, unmodified, expressing nationality, or condition in life.

Morì mārtire	He died a martyr
È Italiano	He is an Italian
È professore?	Is he a professor?
Napoleone s'è fatto imperatore	Napoleon became (<i>or</i> made himself) emperor
Quella signora è contessa	That lady is a countess
Vittorio Emanuele II fu un re valoroso	Victor Emanuel II was a valorous king

1. In answer to the question 'Who is he?' as distinguished from 'What is he?' the indefinite article is retained.

Who is he? He is a lawyer	È un avvocato
What is he? (What is his occupation?) He is a lawyer	È avvocato

*2. If the predicate noun is used metaphorically, the indefinite article is retained.

È un angelo	He is an angel
--------------------	-----------------------

But, speaking literally,

Non erano passati otto giorni e il bambino era angelo	In less than a week the child was an angel (i.e. dead)
--------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------

b. Before a noun in apposition, when explanatory and not alluding to a familiar fact. (The appositive often precedes.)

Il Gabelli, uomo di pensiero e di studi	Gabelli, a man of thought and studious habits
-----------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------

Gēnero di Alessandro Manzoni, amico del d' Azeglio, il Giorgini fu uno degli ũltimi testimoni di quel perĩodo della letteratura italiana	Son-in-law of Alessandro Manzoni, friend of d' Azeglio, Giorgini was one of the last witnesses of that period of Italian literature
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

The definite article is used in familiar allusion.

Giuseppe Mazzini, il grande agita- tore	Mazzini the great agitator
--------------------------------------------	----------------------------

c. After *da* in the sense of 'like,' 'in the character of,' or when indicating origin.

Morì da soldato	He died like a soldier
Nacque da padre veneziano e da madre grēca	He was born of a Venetian father and a Greek mother

d. Before *cento* and *mille* (cf. 150, *b*).

e. In such phrases as 'that wretch of a,' etc.

Quel monello di Gigi	That rascal of a Gigi
Quella civetta di Mirandolina	That coquette of a Mirandolina

f. After *che*, in exclamations.

Che bambina carina, che carina bambina!	What a pretty child!
---------------------------------------------------	----------------------

g. In fractions, before the name of the thing measured.

Un terzo di miglio	A third of a mile
Mi dia mezzo chilo	Give me half a kilo

163. The Verb *fare* 'make,' 'do.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *fare, facendo, faccio, farò, feci, fatto*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

<i>faccio, fò'</i>	<i>facciamo</i>
<i>fai</i>	<i>fate</i>
<i>fa</i>	<i>fanno</i>

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>faccia</i>	<i>facciamo</i>
<i>faccia</i>	<i>facciate</i>
<i>faccia</i>	<i>facciano</i>

For the imperative, see 130, *e*.

a. **Fare** governs the infinitive directly. In this construction the *active present infinitive* renders the *passive past participle* in such phrases as 'to have a thing done.'

Lo fêcero punire

They **had** him **punished** (*lit.* they caused to punish him)

Fêce preparare una câmera

He **had** a room **made ready**

***b.** Idioms with **fare**.

Fare il bagno

To take a bath

Fare i bauli

To pack one's trunks

Far caldo, freddo, etc.

To be hot weather, cold weather, etc.

Far capolino

To peep out

Fare di cappello

To take off one's hat

Far çaso di

To make account of

Far cômmodo

To come handy

Far complimenti

To stand on ceremony

Far frõnte a

To face, oppose

Far fumo

To smoke (of a stove)

Far furõre

To make a hit

Fare le fusa

To purr

Far male a

To hurt

Far meglio a

To find it better to

Fare del suo meglio

To do one's best

Fare a meno di

To do without

Fare un mestiere

To ply a trade

Fare a metà

To go halves

Fare una passeggiata

To take a walk

Far piacere a

To do a kindness, give pleasure, to

Far preçto

To be quick

Farsi il ritratto

To have one's picture taken

Far sangue

To bleed

Far sciõpero

To strike; take a holiday

Far sì che

To bring it about; to manage so that

Fare un sonnellino

To take a nap

Far specie a

To surprise

Far strada	To be on the way, progress
Far di suo	To do of one's own accord
Far tardi	To be late
Fare a tempo	To be on time
Far di tutto	To try one's hardest
Fare le veci di	To take the place of
Far vedere	To show
Fare una visita a	To call on
Far vista di	To make pretense of
Sul far del giorno, della notte	At dawn, at dusk
Due giorni fa	Two days ago
Che tempo fa?	What kind of weather is it?
Fa bel tempo	It is fine weather

VOCABULARY

il bagaglio	baggage, luggage	far complimenti	stand on ceremony
il baule	trunk	fare a meno di	do without
il biglietto d' andata e ritorno	round-trip ticket	fare una passeggiata	take a walk
la carrozza	carriage	far piacere a	do a pleasure to
il compleanno	birthday	far strada	be on the way
la donna	woman, woman servant	fare una visita a	call upon
l'onomastico <i>m.</i>	saint's day	mutar di pensiero	change one's mind
la roba (<i>collective</i>)	things	non veder l'ora di	long to, be hardly able to wait to
il ventaglio	fan	pigliare	take
cōmodo	convenient, comfortable	sentire la mancanza di	miss (a person)
carino	} pretty	di giorno	by day
grazioso		di notte	by night
cortese	} kind	poi	then
gentile		a portata di mano	within reach of one's hand
educato	polite	posso <i>I sg. pres. ind. of potere</i>	(<i>irr.</i>) be able
pesante	heavy		
fare i bauli	pack one's trunks		
far cōmodo	come handy		

EXERCISES

I

1. Abbiamo voluto fare una visita alla Signora C. 2. La donna ci ha fatto passare, ma poi ci ha detto che non era in casa la signora. 3. L'abbiamo incontrata più tardi da nostra zia. 4. È vero che va a Vallombrosa, Signorina? 5. Sì, Signora. Non vedo l'ora di partire. 6. Mi piace tanto il viaggiare. 7. Ma pigli un biglietto d'andata e ritorno, per esser sicura di tornar qui. 8. Sentiremo molto la mancanza di Lei. 9. Ha da fare i bauli? 10. Sì, non posso fare a meno di tre bauli per la mia roba. 11. E poi ci sono i bagagli, i quali sono molto pesanti. 12. Mi permetta di darle questo ventaglio, perchè farà comodo se viaggia di giorno. 13. Grazie tante. Che grazioso ventaglio! Ci vuole molta roba per il viaggio, perchè fa caldo prima, e poi fa freddo. 14. A che ora partirà stasera? Ha ordinato la carrozza? 15. Non bisogna ordinarla oggi. Ho mutato di pensiero. Non parto prima di mercoledì. 16. Chi è il forestiere che ha invitato a pranzo? 17. È un professore. È Francese? No, è Americano. 18. È un uomo molto educato. Viene a farmi una visita sempre pel mio compleanno. 19. Quando è il Suo onomastico? Il ventitre giugno.

II

1. What day is your birthday? The 28th of January. And your saint's day? The 18th of July. 2. Will you take a walk with me, to [per] do me a pleasure? 3. Please buy me a round-trip ticket to Florence. 4. When you have bought it, bring it to us. 5. The servant will pack the trunks for them. 6. Let us call upon our friend Mrs. D., and on our way we will buy some things for our mother. 7. They always travel by night, because it is less hot. 8. What a pretty fan! It is prettier than mine. 9. I have put your books on the shelf, within reach of your hand. 10. They will miss us and I shall miss them. 11. I cannot do without my friends.

12. Here is Mrs. C. Sit down, Mrs. C. Do not stand on ceremony. 13. They wish me to pack the trunks, and there are more than four of them. 14. Come at half-past four. Do not change your mind.

DIALOGO

IN UN ALBERGO

Vengono tre signore e una bambina, che domandano del padrone. Lui viene e dice loro :

— Buon giorno, Signore. Che desiderano ?

— Desideriamo delle camere. Ne vogliamo due a un letto, comunicanti, e una a due letti perchè la bambina stia colla mamma.

— Benissimo, Signore. Farò Loro vedere quali camere sono libere. Eccone due a un letto, comunicanti, con terrazza. Sono esposte al sole. Ci si sta bene d' inverno. Ecco quest' altra che dà sul giardino ; è grande, con due letti, e se non è a mezzogiorno non c' è male perchè c' è il termosifone.

— Vabbene. Queste camere ci piacciono. Quanto sarebbe la pensione ?

— Se Loro restano almeno tre giorni, sarà di otto lire il giorno.

— Vabbene. Faremo venire i bauli stasera, e verremo prima del pranzo.

LESSON XXVI

IMPERSONAL VERBS. THE VERB *STARE*

164. Impersonal Verbs. *a.* Impersonal verbs have no real subject, and are conjugated only in the third person. What would be the subject in English is often expressed by the dative. They are used to express necessity, convenience, or accident; weather; appearance; satisfaction, dissatisfaction; etc.

Non merita il conto	It is not worth while
Non importa	It does not matter
Non conviene	It is not proper, not suitable
Me ne rincresco	I am sorry about it
Piùve a rovescio	It is raining in torrents
Come le pare?	How does it seem to you? What do you think?

*1. Occasionally *egli (gli)* or *e'* is used redundantly as subject of an impersonal verb (cf. 100, *g*, 2).

Gli è che siamo in alto mare	The truth is we are in deep water
------------------------------	-----------------------------------

b. Impersonal verbs require the subjunctive if the subject of the dependent clause is not of the same person as the dative pronoun; otherwise they may take the infinitive (cf. 174, *c*).

Bişogna che tutti lavorino	All must work
Bişogna lavorare	It is necessary to work
Mi dispiace che Lei debba partire	I am sorry you must go
Mi dispiace di partire	I am sorry to go

1. These verbs take *di* before a noun object.

Mi dispiace della sua malattia	I regret his illness
--------------------------------	----------------------

c. Many verbs not essentially impersonal may be used impersonally.

Sta a lui di farlo	It lies with him to do it
È (di) mestieri } Fa d' uopo }	It is necessary
Tocca a me	It is my turn
Pare che abbia molto denaro	He seems to have much money
Va bene	It goes well ; very well
Basta	That's enough
Minaccia di nevicare	It threatens to snow
È cessato di piovere	It has stopped raining

d. Many verbs are used only, or mostly, in the third person, but as they have a subject they are not impersonal.

Mi duole la testa	My head aches
Mi dolgono i denti	My teeth ache
Mi piace quel quadro	I like that picture
Mi piacciono le camere	I like the rooms
Mi sembrano ariose	They seem airy
Mi occorre un lapis	I need a pencil
Mi bastano questi	These are enough for me

1. These verbs when followed by a clause are strictly impersonal.

Mi duole che lo dica	It pains me to have you say it
Mi piace che voglia venire	I am glad you wish to come
Non basta che scriva ; deve venire	It is not enough that he write ; he must come

2. **Non mi piace**, 'I do not like,' should not be confused with **mi dispiace**, 'I am sorry,' 'I regret.'

Non mi piace questa canzone	I do not like this song
Mi dispiace che Lei abbia ricevuto una brutta notizia	I am sorry you have had bad news

e. For the impersonal use of the reflexive, cf. 106, *b.*

165. Expressions that Describe Weather.

Piove	It is raining
Nëvica	It is snowing
Tuona	It thunders
Lampeggia, balena	It lightens

Tira vento	The wind blows
Għela, ghiaccia	It is freezing
Sgħela, dighiaccia	It is thawing
Fa bəl tɛmpo	It is fair weather
Fa cattivo tɛmpo	The weather is bad, disagreeable
Fa caldo, frɛddo, frɛsco, ũmido	It is hot, cold, cool, damp
C' è il fango	It is muddy
C' è la nɛbbia	It is foggy

166. The Verb *stare* 'be,' 'stay.' (Cf. 130, e.)

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **stare, stando, stɔ, starò, stɛtti, stato**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

stɔ	stiamo
stai	state
sta	stanno

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

stia	stiamo
stia	stiate
stia	stiano

a. Special uses of **stare** :

1. With the present participle, or with **a** and the infinitive, to translate the English 'be' (cf. 102).

Stɔ leggendo	I am reading
Stanno parlando	They are talking
Eravamo stati a guardarci pɔchi minuti	We had been looking on a few minutes

2. To mean 'be,' in the sense of to be in a place or a condition.

Non stɛtti molto a Firenze	I was not long at Florence
Sta bɛne di salute	He is in good health
Stɔ di casa in Via Garibaldi	I live on Via Garibaldi

*b. Idioms with **stare**.

Stare allegro	To be cheerful
Stare attɛnto	To be attentive
Star bɛne, male	To be well, ill
Star bɛne a, star male a	To befit, not to befit
Stare al buio	To be in the dark
Star di casa	To live, reside

Stare in casa	To stay in
Star cōmodo	To be comfortable
Star fërmo	To be still
Stare frësco	To be sadly off (<i>derisory</i>)
Stare con le mani in mano	To be idle
Star nascosto	To be hidden
Stare in pensiero	To be worried
Stare per far una cōsa	To be on the point of doing a thing
Stare in pièdi	To stand up
Star vicino, lontano	To be near, far
Star zitto	To be silent
Cōme sta? Stō bene	How do you do? I am well

VOCABULARY

la disgrazia	misfortune	accadere, accadde, accaduto	happen
il fango	mud	avvenire (<i>like venire</i>)	happen
il ghiaccio	ice	balenare	lighten
la nebbia	fog	bastare	suffice, be enough
il sole	sun	cessare (di)	cease (to)
brutto	disagreeable, ugly	dispiacere a (<i>irr.</i>)	make sorry, cause to regret; mi dispiace I am sorry
ricco (-chi, -che)	rich	diventare	become (<i>divento</i>)
al giorno d' oggi	nowadays	ghiacciare	freeze
non . . . che	only, not but, nothing but	minacciare	threaten
non c' è male	pretty well	nevicare	snow
non c' è rimedio	there is no help for it	occorrere, occorse, occorso	be necessary
non mi par vero di	I can't believe, I can't wait to	piovere, piogve, piovuto	rain
star di casa	live, reside	rincrescere, rincrebbe, rincresciuto	(a) (<i>impers.</i>) make sorry; mi rincresce I am sorry (<i>w. dat.</i>)
stare in casa	stay in the house	tirar vento	blow
star cōmodo	be comfortable	tonare (cf. 110, d)	thunder
stare in pensiero	worry, be worried		
star per (<i>w. inf.</i>)	be about to		

EXERCISE

I

1. Buon giorno, Signore. Come sta? Non c'è male, grazie.
 2. E la Signora Bondi, come sta? Non sta tanto bene. 3. Non va fuori perchè minaccia di nevicare. 4. Starà in casa tutto il giorno.
 5. Mi dispiace che non stia bene di salute. 6. Quando sarà cessato di nevicare, farà una passeggiata. 7. Le dica che andrò a prenderla. 8. Dove sta di casa? In Via Cavour. 9. Le rincresce della brutta notizia. 10. Per imparare una lingua, non basta che lo scolare la studi e la legga. 11. Occorre anche la pratica. 12. Rincrebbe loro che non venissimo. 13. Avviene spesso al giorno d'oggi che il povero diventi ricco. 14. Che tempo fa? Fa cattivo tempo. 15. Il vento tira forte, ghiaccia, dighiaccia, piove, nevica, tutto a un tempo. Che brutto tempo! 16. Non c'è quest'inverno che il fango, la nebbia e la neve. 17. Allora non andrò fuori. Si sta più comodo in casa. 18. Non mi piace che tiri vento. C'è sole?

II

1. What day of the month is it? 2. It is the 9th. 3. What kind of weather is it? 4. It is very hot. 5. It is lightening, and threatens to thunder. 6. Has it stopped raining? 7. Yes, and the wind does not blow, but there is no sun. 8. I shall stay in the house to-day, but I wish you to go out. 9. Do you think it is raining? 10. It seems to me they do not wish to give it to me. 11. A misfortune has occurred, and we are very sorry. 12. I am about to go to France. 13. They need two trunks. 14. How do you do? I am well, but my mother is ill. 15. I am sorry, but do not be worried. 16. Your mother will be better to-morrow. 17. I hope so [it]. 18. It seems to me I have nothing but misfortunes. 19. She lives in Florence. 20. I live on Via del Casato. 21. One is very comfortable in Via Cavour.

LESSON XXVII

CONJUNCTIVES WITH A DEPENDENT INFINITIVE.
THE VERB *POTERE*

167. Conjunctive Objects with a Dependent Infinitive.

a. Generally speaking, if a dependent infinitive has a pronoun object (or objects), the latter may either be appended to it (cf. 95, *b*), or precede the main verb.

Manda a prēnderlo	} He sends for him
Lo manda a prēndere	
Vorrebbe dirmelo?	} Should you be willing to tell it to me?
Me lo vorrebbe dire?	

b. But when the governing verb is impersonal, the object must go with the infinitive.

Non conviēne farlo	It is not convenient to do so
Bișogna dārgliela	It is necessary to give it to her

c. Whereas, if the governing verb be *fare*, *lasciare*, *sentire*, *udire*, or *vedere*, the object must precede the main verb. The dependent verb, if transitive, becomes passive in meaning.

Lo fēcero fucilare	They had him shot
Ti sēnto cantare	I hear you singing
Lo lasciarono bāttere	They allowed him to be beaten

1. If the object of either verb be a noun, it usually follows both verbs.

Carlētto amava di sentire sonare la banda	Charlie liked to hear the band play
Il generale fece punire il soldato	The general had the soldier punished

2. If the main verb also has an object, that object becomes indirect.

Glielo vidi fare	I saw him do it
Per non fare prendere un raffred- dore ai bōvi	In order not to let the cattle take cold
Fēcero accettare la cārica al gene- rale	They made the general accept the office
La fanno accettare al generale	They make the general accept it

168. The Verb *potere* 'be able.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **potere, potendo, pōsso, potrò, potēi, potuto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

pōsso	possiamo
puōi	potete
può	pōssono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

pōssa	possiamo
pōssa	possiate
pōssa	pōssano

a. Cf. 132, a, 1.

VOCABULARY

la banda band	piccino little, tiny
il caffè caffè	
il cameriere waiter	ascoltare listen, listen to (ascolto)
la finestra window	condurre, conducendo, conduco, con- durrò, condussi, condotto take, conduct
il gelato ice, ice cream	figurarsi imagine
la gioia joy	ordinare order (ordine)
la giratina little walk	riunire unite, assemble
lo spasso walk, excursion	sonare (110, d) play (an instrument)
lo statuto constitution	sorbire sip
a un tratto suddenly	spicciarsi hasten, hurry
fuori (di) outside (of)	spiegare explain
fuori di porta outside the walls	stancarsi become tired
mentre while	

EXERCISE

I

PERCHÈ OGGI SUONA LA BANDA?

Quella prima domenica del mese di giugno, Carletto, tutto vestito a festa, fu condotto a spasso dal suo babbo.

Prima essi fecero una giratina fuori di porta, poi ritornarono in paese, dove, nella piazza principale, sonava la banda.

Carletto si stancò a stare in piedi. Allora il suo babbo lo condusse al caffè, lì nella piazza, e gli fece prendere un gelato. Il gelato piaceva tanto a Carletto: figuratevi la sua gioia di poterlo sorbire seduto, mentre ascoltava la banda.

A un tratto egli domandò:

— Babbo, perchè suona oggi la banda, e perchè in molte case ci sono le bandiere alle finestre?

— Perchè oggi è la festa dello Statuto — gli rispose il babbo.

— E che cosa è lo Statuto?

— Ah! tu sei così piccino, non saprei come spiegarlo: ti basti sapere che lo Statuto è la più solenne nostra festa civile, la quale insegna a tutti noi Italiani, adulti e piccini, che siamo liberi e riuniti in una sola grande famiglia.

Allora Carletto, battendo le mani, esclamò: *Viva l' Italia!*

II

1. What day is Constitution Day in Italy? It is the first Sunday of June. 2. Why are there tricolored flags at the windows? 3. Can his father explain it to him? 4. He will explain it to him when he is ten years old. 5. Charlie's father took him to walk. 6. Charlie will become tired standing. 7. His father will take him to the café. 8. Will he give him [have him take] an ice? 9. He cannot have him take it because there is no room. 10. Now they have found a table and they can order it. 11. The waiter will bring it to them. 12. Charlie can hardly wait to sip it. 13. But his father

says: "Wait a moment. Let him bring it to you." 14. The waiter would not make them wait if he could hurry. 15. They like the ice very much. 16. They can sip it while they listen to the band. 17. Charlie's father thinks it is beginning to rain. 18. If it rained, they would leave the café. 19. Charlie does not wish it to rain. 20. He wishes to stay there where he can hear the band play. 21. We should like to hear them sing. 22. If it should thunder and lighten they would not be able to stay there. 23. There is the sun! It must have stopped raining.

DIÀLOGO

DALLA SARTA

È noioso d' andare dalla sarta, ma le signore ne hanno troppo bisogno.

— Dove sta la sua sarta? Ho sentito ch' è molto brava.

— Sta all' ultimo piano di una casa in Via Tornabuoni. L' avvertò che ci sono molte scale. Vuole che l' accompagni?

— Mi farebbe un vero piacere. Così mi aiuterà a scēgliere il figurino e la stōffa. . . . Vorrei un abito da passeggio.

— Come dev' essere, scuro o chiaro?

— Siccome sto per fare un lungo viaggio, me ne occorrerebbero due, uno d' inverno e uno di mezza stagione. Ho bisogno anche di un vestito da casa e un vestito scollato da sera.

— Cominciamo col vestito da casa. Lo farei di una stoffa mezza seta, con guarnizione d' un tōno piū scuro.

— Gli abiti da passeggio li vorrei colla sottana a pieghe, molto sēmplice, all' inglese, e piuttosto corta, perch' è piu pratica. Mi ci metta nella giacchetta una fōdera bianca.

— Mi raccomando che la fodera sia forte, perchè quella dell' ultimo vestito che mi fece a me, mi si sciupò subito.

— Quanto al colore, ci penserò e glielo dirò quest' altra volta quando tornerò per la prova del vestito da casa.

LESSON XXVIII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE VERB *DOLERE*

169. The Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses. The subjunctive, generally speaking, is used to express uncertainty, or at most something less than certainty. It is required in dependent clauses,

a. After verbs of causation or prevention, desire or emotion, concession, doubt, opinion, or ignorance.

Il generale ha dato ordine che non smontino il campo	The general has given orders not to break camp
Impediranno che il nemico s' avvicini	They will prevent the enemy from approaching
Pregava che fossero generosi	He begged them to be generous
Si messe in testa che l' avessero fatto a posta	He took it into his head that they had done it on purpose
Credei d' indovinare che cercasse di morire	I fancied I had guessed that he sought to die
Di dove esca , dove vada , non lo so	Where he comes from, whither he is going, I do not know
Mi fa piacere che vivano lieti	I am glad they are living happily
Temo che il mio figliuolo sia ammalato	I am afraid my little boy is ill

1. Pleonastic **non** is commonly used in subordinate clauses after **temere**, **badare**, **mancar poco**, **non dubitare**, **non c' è dubbio**, and similar expressions.

Temo che il viaggio non sia troppo lungo	I am afraid the journey will be too long
Poco mancò che non cadesse	He came near falling (It lacked little that he should fall)
Non dubito che non sia vero	I do not doubt that it is true

b. After a verb used negatively or interrogatively.

Non è vero che i ricchi siano sempre felici	It is not true that the rich are always happy
Di rado avviene che un forestiere parli italiano speditamente	It rarely happens that a foreigner speaks Italian fluently
Chi direbbe che fossero Inglesi?	Who would say they were English?

c. After conjunctions of time (before which), concession, and purpose (not yet accomplished), and those meaning 'as if,' 'whenever,' 'wherever,' 'without.' (Cf. 230, a.)

Glielo dirò prima che vengano	I shall tell you before they come
Purchè guarisca , non importa dell' altro	Provided he recovers, nothing else matters
Benchè lo dica lui stesso, non lo credo	Though he says so himself, I don't believe it
Tentò di comprare un vagabondo, perchè facesse una testimonianza falsa	He tried to pay a vagabond to give false testimony
Stava in pensiero, come se temesse qualche disgrazia	He was in anxiety, as if he feared some misfortune
Dovunque sia , lo troveremo	Wherever it is, we shall find it
Passarono diversi minuti senza che desse un segno di vita	Several minutes passed, without his giving a sign of life

d. In conditions whose conclusion is in past future (cf. 93, a).

Se rimanesse , farebbe piacere a sua madre	If he should remain, he would please his mother
------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------

e. After impersonal verbs or expressions.

Si può dire che l' uomo abbia due nature	It may be said that man has two natures
Occorrerebbe che andasse via subito	It would be necessary for him to go away at once

*I. When the subordinate verb in the subjunctive has a subject, the order is often such as to make that subject appear to belong with the impersonal main verb.

Tutto il paeſaggio pareva che dicesse la tranquillità	All the landscape seemed to express tranquillity
La battaglia era venuta a quel punto in cui la direzione biſogna che sia supplita dal ſenno	The battle had reached the point where it is necessary that authority be replaced by judgment

f. After superlatives, and 'only' in relative clauses.

Lavora il più che sia poſſibile	He works the most he can
La più bella città ch' io abbia mai vista	The most beautiful city I have ever seen

*1. Sometimes, for vivacity or emphasis, after comparatives.

Il brigandaggio è molto meno frequente che non lo foſſe	Brigandage is much less frequent than it was
-----------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------

g. In an attributive clause which predicates of the antecedent something doubtful, limited, or not yet accomplished.

Un Americano che vada in Italia e studi il movimento politico	An American who should go to Italy and study the political situation (would find, etc.)
Cerca degli orecchini che accom- pāgnino la collana	She is looking for earrings to match the necklace
Non c' è uno su dieci che la pēnsi come lui	There is not one in ten who is of his opinion

h. After indefinites.

Chi ci avesse visti dal basso, ci avrebbe preſi per due pazzi	Any one who had seen us from below would have taken us for two madmen
Per quanto patisse , non si lagnò	No matter how much he suffered, he did not complain
Chiunque venga , non sarà ricevuto	Whoever may come, he will not be received

i. In indirect questions.

Tutti sanno quale famoſo cacciatore egli foſſe	Everybody knows what a famous hunter he was
Pagherei sapere quello che faccia	I wonder what he does

Sentì **quanta fosse** la grandezza di He realized how great was the
quell' uomo nobility of that man

NOTE 1. For the subjunctive may usually be substituted the future, when it relates to future time. It is always future, when the matter is certain.

NOTE 2. **Che** is not infrequently omitted.

Una sera sembrò dicesse avessi dato One evening it seemed **that** he said
retta ai suqi consigli! **that** if only I had given heed to
his advice —!

170. Sequence of Tenses. *a.* A principal verb in the present, imperative, future, or present perfect is followed by the present or present perfect subjunctive.

Non vuole ch' io rimanga?	Do you not wish me to remain?
Dille che venga	Tell her to come
Non crederà che sia venuto	He will not believe I have come
Non hò richiësto che vada	I have not demanded that he go

b. A principal verb in any other past tense will be followed by the past or past perfect subjunctive.

Si diceva che avesse dei parëti	It was said that he had some poor
pōveri	relatives
Bişognerebbe che partissi	I should have to leave
Non dicemmo che fosse morto	We did not say he had died

1. The past tenses of the subjunctive may, of course, follow a present tense of the main verb, where the sense requires it.

Crediamo che fossero partiti prima	We believe they had gone before
che noi ne avessimo notizia	we had news of it

171. Subjunctive in Independent Clauses. The subjunctive is used in the independent clause,

a. To supply the missing third person of the imperative (cf. 92, *a*).

Sia dëtto ad onor del vero	Be it said out of respect for the
	truth

b. In the past tense to express an augury or imprecation, usually unlikely of fulfillment.

Ho due canarini. Tu vedessi come I have two canaries. If you could
son graziosi! only see how pretty they are!

172. The Verb *dolere* 'grieve,' 'pain.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *Dolere, dolendo, dolgo, dorro, dolci, doluto*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

dolgo (*doglio*) *dogliamo* (*dolghiamo*)
duqli *dolete*
duole *dōlgono* (*dōgliono*)

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

dolga (*doglia*) *dogliamo* (*dolghiamo*)
dolga *dogliate*
dolga *dōlgano* (*dōgliano*)

VOCABULARY

la difesa defense

il dovere duty

la faccia face

la salvezza safety

lo scopo purpose

lo spirito spirit

militare military

mite mild, gentle

selvaggio savage, wild

umano human

vile cowardly

contro against

finchè as long as

finchè . . . non (*w. subj.*) until

qualora whenever

qualunque (*adj.*) whatever

sebbene although

accrescere increase

alterare alter

comandare command

deprimere, depreſsi, depreſso de-
press, lower

dimostrare show, demonstrate

eſitare hesitate

eſporre, eſponendo, eſpongo, eſpoſi,
eſpoſto expose

impedire prevent

importare (*impers.*) be important

lanciare hurl

punire punish

richiedere, richieſi, richieſto de-
mand

sembrare seem (*sembro*)

sparire disappear

EXERCISE

I (From *La terza Italia*)

1. Lo scopo supremo delle istituzioni militari è la difesa del paese. 2. A questo scopo importa soprattutto che non sia depresso lo spirito militare. 3. Giuseppe Garibaldi ha sempre comandato forze troppo piccole perchè ci possa fornire insigni esempi di organizzazione; ma ha vinto. 4. Noi Americani possiamo dire sinceramente che non siamo militaristi; ma ci sembrerebbe un vile l'uomo che parlasse contro il dovere di esporre la vita, qualora sia necessario, per la patria. 5. Il nostro Lincoln era l'uomo più mite, più antimilitarista che sia stato al mondo. 6. Ma dimostrò che egli non avrebbe esitato un momento a lanciare il suo paese in una guerra tremenda, se la salvezza del paese stesso l'avesse richiesto. 7. Le guerre sono una cosa terribile, uno spettacolo selvaggio; speriamo che col tempo finiscano per sparire della faccia della terra. 8. Finchè il mondo rimane quello che è, bisognerebbe alterare profondamente la natura umana per impedire che la coscienza della superiorità nazionale non accresca le energie individue, in qualunque direzione esse vengano applicate.

II

1. Let us hope that wars may disappear from the face of the earth. 2. As long as the world remains what it is, it is important that men should know how to fight for their country. 3. In whatever direction they are going, they wish the soldiers to follow them. 4. Do you think that the supreme purpose of military institutions is the defense of the country? 5. The general gave orders that his soldiers should not expose their lives that day. 6. We wish to prevent the military spirit from increasing. 7. It grieves us that you should speak of it. 8. It seems to us that the defense of the country is important above all. 9. Although he was a mild man, the safety of the country demanded that he should

fight. 10. They would talk against a soldier who should hesitate to expose his life. 11. We are afraid that he will seem a coward, although he has done his duty. 12. The general had him punished, although he had shown the military spirit. 13. He exposed his life whenever the safety of the country demanded it. 14. We must alter the world before wars can disappear. 15. He seems the greatest general that has ever commanded our soldiers. 16. If we could reduce the military spirit, we should prevent wars from increasing. 17. The general ordered us to follow him in order not to expose his soldiers.

LESSON XXIX

THE INFINITIVE. THE VERB *DIRE*

173. **The Infinitive.** The infinitive may be used —

a. As a substantive, in all cases; it often best translates the English gerund in *-ing* (cf. 193, *d*).

Mi duole il dirlo	It pains me to say it
Non è assurdo lo sperare che si possa rinunciare alla guerra	It is not absurd to hope that war may be given up
La produzione dell' Inghilterra è lungi dal bastare ai suoi bisogni	The production of England is far from sufficing for its needs
Le arti giovano al paese nel suo andare verso la civiltà	The arts are helpful to a country in its movement toward civilization
Stimava il ridere essere medicina sicura	He thought that laughing was a sure remedy
Al primo entrare	On first entering
Fu imprigionato per aver congiu- rato	He was imprisoned because of having conspired

b. As a verb, governing objects, etc., being substituted very often, especially where the subject is identical, for a dependent clause (usually in the subjunctive) of time, cause;

command, purpose, result, condition or concession, or indirect discourse or question.

Le donne, a vederci passare, piangevano	The women, as they saw us pass, were weeping
Mi telefoni prima di venire	Telephone me before you come
Ditegli di scrivermi	Tell him to write me
Ha promesso di mutar vita	He has promised to change his way of life
Chi è posto tanto in alto da non temere di cadere?	Who is so high that he need fear no fall?
L'ha detto in modo da farsi credere	He said it in such a way as to make them believe him
A sentirlo parlare, si direbbe che fosse Francese	If you heard him speak, you would say he was a Frenchman
Lo lasciarono partire, a patto di tornare l'indomani	They let him go, provided he should return next day
Credo di doverlo fare	I think I have to do it
Cercava qualche luogo ove fare il suo deposito	He was looking for some place where he might make his deposit

1. Or it may be at once substantive and verb, governing an object while itself an object.

Si propose di far un viaggio	He intended to make a journey
------------------------------	-------------------------------

c. Elliptically, with the force of a finite verb.

E poi da capo a parlare inglese	Then they began all over again to talk English
Ecco venire frettoloso un volontario	Here came up hastily a volunteer
Qui, il Griso a proporre, don Rodrigo a discutere finchè ebbero concertata la maniera di condurre a fine l'impresa	Hereupon Griso began to propose and Don Rodrigo to discuss, until they had arranged a method for bringing the enterprise to a conclusion
Che fare?	What is to be done?
Piuttosto morire che fare una tal cosa	I would rather die than do such a thing

174. Government of the Infinitive. The infinitive may depend upon —

a. A noun, by means of **da** or **di**.

Mācchina da scrivere	Typewriter
Ha intenzione di farlo	He intends to do it

b. An adjective.

1. By means of **a**.

Il coltello è adatto a tagliare	The knife is useful for cutting
Siamo pronti a partire	We are ready to leave
Fu il primo a entrare	He was the first to enter
Cose leggiadre a riguardare	Things lovely to look at

2. By means of **da**.

Il suolo è rīpido da doverci posare i pièdi ben pari	The ground is so steep that we must plant our feet very evenly
-------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------

3. By means of **di**.

Siamo felici di vederlo	We are happy to see him
--------------------------------	-------------------------

c. A verb.

1. Directly, upon the following :

ardire dare	occorrere be necessary
bastare suffice	osare dare
bisognare be necessary	parere appear
convenire be suitable	potere be able
dovere owe, must, ought	sapere know how
essere d' uopo, essere (di) mestieri, be necessary	sentire hear, feel
fare make, cause, have done	udire hear
lasciare allow, let	vedere see
	volere wish, will

2. By means of **a**. Verbs of motion or rest, and many verbs signifying the source, beginning, continuance, or promotion of an action, take **a** before the infinitive.

Andò a chiamarla	He went to call her
Si misero a discorrere in italiano	They began to talk in Italian

Stette a sentire con aria di curiosità	He stood listening with an air of curiosity
Seguitavo a leggere ad alta voce	I went on reading aloud

3. By means of **di**. Most other verbs govern the infinitive by means of **di**.

Mi par di averlo veduto	It seems to me I have seen him
Promette di venire	He promises to come
M' ha scritto di mandarglielo	He has written me to send it to him
Dimostra di avere gran ricchezza	He appears to have great wealth

4. In special senses, by means of **per** and **da**. The infinitive with **per** expresses purpose; with **da** it expresses obligation, or propriety, and usually may be translated by the passive.

O anima che vai per esser lieta	O spirit who goest to (in order to) be joyful
Che resta da fare ?	What remains to be done?
Ci sarà molto da aspettare ?	Will there be long to wait?
Le costruzioni francesi sono da evitarsi	French constructions should be avoided

175. The Verb *dire* 'say,' 'tell.' (Cf. 130, e.)

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **Dire, dicendo, dico, dirò, dissi, detto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

dico	diciamo
dici	dite
dice	dicono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

dica	diciamo
dica	diciate
dica	dicano

VOCABULARY

il bilancio balance, account
 la civiltà civilization
 la coscienza consciousness
 l' *esercito* *m.* army
 il danno damage
 l' *evenienza* *f.* occurrence
 l' *onda* *f.* wave

l' *ordinamento* *m.* arrangement
 la povertà poverty
 il sostegno support
 la spesa expense
 assurdo absurd
 civile civilized, civil
 fiacco weak

appartenere	belong	trattarsi di	be a question of
diffondere, diffusi, diffuso	scatter	eroicamente	heroically
figurare	figure	forse	perhaps
rinunziare a	give up (<i>sometimes di</i> <i>before an inf.</i>)	in quanto a	as for
		verso	towards

EXERCISE

I (From *La terza Italia*)

1. Non è da dimenticare che in Italia lo spirito militare è molto fiacco. 2. Naturalmente, in quanto a spese militari, la miglior cosa sarebbe che se ne potesse fare a meno. 3. Forse potrà venire un giorno in cui queste spese non figureranno più nei bilanci delle nazioni civili. 4. Ma è assurdo il credere che una nazione possa rinunziare a tenersi pronta per ogni evenienza. 5. La relativa povertà dell' Italia moderna dipende soprattutto, come credo d' aver dimostrato, dai suoi cattivi ordinamenti amministrativi, ordinamenti che non servono di sostegno al paese nel suo andare verso la civiltà. 6. Questa onda di sentimento, che si cerca di diffondere nel popolo italiano, contraria a tutto ciò che sa di vita militare, finirà per esser di grave danno al paese. 7. Non si tratta di fare del militarismo, ma di far sì che ogni buon figlio d' Italia abbia la coscienza d' appartenere a un grande popolo, e sia determinato a fare eroicamente il suo dovere. 8. Non sarebbe difficile far combattere i soldati quando l' esercito fosse condotto da buoni generali.

II

1. We think we have shown that it is not a question of the military spirit. 2. We must not give up holding ourselves in readiness to defend our country. 3. It is to be hoped that war will vanish from the face of the earth. 4. We wished to go to France, although the expenses of the journey would be great. 5. It is absurd to think that the army is not led by good generals. 6. We are happy to know that they are talking against everything that smacks of war.

7. It is important that we should be ready to leave. 8. They ended by giving up following the army. 9. They would have told me to write them about it if they had wished to know. 10. He hesitates to leave, and we are trying to prevent him from leaving. 11. Would it be difficult to make the army leave before the general returns? 12. It pains us to see that he cannot write. 13. It pleases us to belong to a great people. 14. They have several letters to write. 15. They are glad to write them. 16. We cannot hear them sing.

LESSON XXX

NUMBER IN NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. THE VERB *PIACERE*

176. Invariables. All monosyllables, and all nouns ending in a consonant, an accented vowel, *u*, *i*, or *ie* (except *moglie*), remain unchanged in the plural.

il *re* the king; *i re*
 il *lapis* the pencil; *i lapis*
 la *libertà* liberty; *le libertà*
 il *chiù* the cue-owl; *i chiù*
 la *crisi* the crisis; *le crisi*
 la *serie* the series; *le serie*

177. Feminine Plurals. *a.* Feminine nouns, and feminine forms of adjectives, ending in unaccented *a*, change *a* to *e* in the plural.

la *spazzola* the brush; *le spazzole*

1. Those in *-ca* and *-ga* form the plural respectively in *-che* and *-ghe*, inserting the *h* to preserve the hard sound of *c* and *g*.

la *barca* the boat; *le barche*
 la *bottèga* the shop; *le bottèghe*
 la *mano bianca* the white hand; *le mani bianche*

2. Nouns (but not adjectives) in unaccented **-cia** and **-gia** preceded by a consonant drop **i** before the **e** of the plural.

la provincia the province; **le province**

la spiaggia the beach; **le piagge**

But

la nostalgìa homesickness; **le nostalgìe**

la sottana grigia the gray shirt; **le sottane grigie**

3. Feminine nouns in **o** and **e** (not **ie**) form their plural in **i**.

la mano the hand; **le mani**

la lite the lawsuit; **le liti**

178. Masculine Plurals. *a.* Masculine nouns in **a**, **o**, **e** (not **ie**), and masculine forms of adjectives in **o** or **e**, form their plural in **i**.

il papa the pope; **i papi**

il problema the problem; **i problemi**

il socialista the socialist; **i socialisti**

il buono Inglese the good Englishman; **i buoni Inglese**

l'Italiano intelligente the intelligent Italian; **gl'Italiani intelligenti**

1. Those in **-ca** and **-ga** form their plural respectively in **-chi** and **-ghi**.

il duca the duke; **i duchi**

il collega the colleague; **i colleghi**

Except **Belga** 'Belgian,' of common gender, which has a masculine plural **Belgi**, and a feminine **Belghe**.

2. Those in unaccented **-io** change **io** to **i** (often written **ì**, **j**, or **ii**). Where the **i** is accented, the plural is always **ii**.

lo studio the study; **gli studi**

il foglio the sheet of paper; **i fogli**

But

l'oblio forgetfulness; **gli oblii**

3. When a noun in **-ista** refers to a woman and takes the feminine gender, its plural ends in **e**.

la socialista the woman socialist; **le socialiste**

b. Those in **-go** form their plural in **-ghi**.

l' albergo the hotel; *gli alberghi*

1. But those in unaccented **-fago**, and those in unaccented **-logo** when referring to scientists, form the plural in **-gi**.

antropofago man-eating; *antropofagi*
il filologo the philologist; *i filologi*

But

il dialogo dialogue; *i dialoghi*

2. **Mago** has two plurals, differing according to meaning: **maghi** 'magicians' and **magi** 'Magi.'

c. Those in **-co** form their plural in **-chi** if the penult is accented; otherwise in **-ci**. Adjectives in **-co** likewise.

il mēdico ricco the rich physician; *i mēdici ricchi*
il fuoco māgico the magic fire; *i fuochi māgici*
il cięco stanco the tired blind man; *i cięchi stanchi*
il mōnaco austriaco the Austrian monk; *i mōnaci austriaci*

1. The following words, though the penult is accented, form their plurals in **-ci**:

amico friend

greco Greek

nemico, inimico enemy

porco pig

NOTE. **Greco** has a regular plural in the phrase *vini grechi* 'Greek wines.'

2. The following words, although the penult is unaccented, form their plural in **-chi**:

cārico loaded

mānico handle

strāscico train of gown

dimēntico neglectful

pārroco parish priest

tōssico poison

fōndaco warehouse

stōmaco stomach

trāffico traffic

lāstrico pavement

stōrico historic

NOTE. There are further exceptions under **b**, 1, and **c**, 2, but the words are obsolete or rare.

179. Irregular Plurals. *a.* Certain masculine nouns in *o* have an irregular plural in *a* with change of gender. These are

un centinaio about a hundred; delle centinaia
 un migliaio about a thousand; delle migliaia
 il miglio mile; le miglia
 il paio pair; le paia
 l' uovo egg; le uova

b. Many others have this feminine plural in *a* in addition to a regular masculine one in *i*. For most of the following words the form in *a* is very common; especially for those referring to parts of the body when taken collectively:

l' anello ring; gli anelli, le anella
 il budello bowel; i budelli, le budella
 il calcagno heel; i calcagni, le calcagna
 il castello castle; i castelli, le castella
 il dito finger; i diti, le dita
 il ginocchio knee; i ginocchi, le ginocchia
 il grido cry; i gridi, le grida
 il labbro lip; i labbri, le labbra
 l' osso bone; gli ossi, le ossa
 il pugno fist; i pugni, le pugna
 lo strido shriek; gli stridi, le strida

**I.* In the following nouns the plural in *a* has a different or more restricted meaning, usually more literal:

il braccio, i bracci, arm	le braccia arms <i>of the body</i>
il carro, i carri, wagon	il carro, le carra, wagon-load
il cervello, i cervelli, brain	le cervella brains <i>in the physical sense</i>
il ciglio, i cigli, visage	il ciglio, le ciglia, eyebrow
il coltello, i coltelli, knife	le coltella large knives
il corno, i corni, horn	le corna horns <i>of an animal</i>
il cuoio, i cuoi, leather	le cuoia hides, whole skins
il filo, i fili, thread	le fila <i>collective</i>
il fondamento, i fondamenti, foundation	le fondamenta foundations <i>of a building</i>

il frutto, i frutti, fruit	le frutta fruit <i>served on the table</i>
il fuso, i fusi, spindle	le fusa purring
il gęsto, i gęsti, gesture	il gęsto, le gęsta, exploit
il gōmito, i gōmiti, elbow	le gōmita elbows, <i>part of the body</i>
il lęgno, i lęgni, wood	le lęgna wood <i>to burn</i>
il lenzuolo, i lenzuoli, sheet	le lenzuola pair of sheets
il męmbro, i męmbri, member	le męmbra parts of the body, <i>collectively</i>
il muro, i muri, wall	le mura all the walls of a building or city, <i>collectively</i>
il riso, i risi, rice	il riso, le risa, laughter
il sacco, i sacchi, sack	il sacco, le sacca, sackful
lo staio, gli stai, barrel	lo staio, le staia, barreland
il suęlo, i suęli, ground, pavement	il suęlo, le suęla, sole of a shoe
l'urlo, gli urli, cry	le urla <i>human cries</i>

*2. The following have the feminine plural in **a** only in poetry :

il fato fate	il pōmo apple
il peccato sin	il vestigio trace, footstep

c. Plurals wholly irregular.

l'ala wing; le ali (le ale)	la mōglie wife; le mōgli
il bue ox; i buoi	l'uōmo man; gli uōmini
il dio god; gli dęi	

*180. Plurals of Proper Names. **a.** Given names form their plurals according to the regular rules, except that masculines in **a** and feminines in **o** are invariable.

I Carli	The Charleses
I Geremīa	The Jeremiahs
L' Elene	The Helens
Le Clio	The Clios

b. Family names are invariable, unless ending in **o** and not compound.

Il Galilęo, i Galilęi	Galileo, the Galileos
Il Buondelmonte, i Buondelmonte	Buondelmonte, the Buondelmonte family
Il dęlla Rōbbia, i dęlla Rōbbia	Della Robbia, the Della Robbias

181. Plural of Compound Nouns. Compound nouns form their plural in one of four ways :

a. The second member only is variable.

il **gentiluomo** gentleman ; i **gentiluomini**
 il **lavamano** washstand ; i **lavamani**

b. The first member only is variable.

il **capopopolo** head of the popular party ; i **capipopoli**

c. Both members are variable.

la **buonamano** tip, fee ; le **buonemani**
 il **palcoscenico** proscenium arch ; i **palchiscenici**

d. Both members are invariable.

il **lustrascarpe** bootblack ; i **lustrascarpe**
 il **portavoce** megaphone ; i **portavoce**

***182. Defective Nouns.** *a.* The following nouns have no singular :

gli annali annals	le forbici scissors	gli occhiali spectacles
le busse beating	i maccheroni macaroni	le tēnēbre darkness
le eşēquie obsequies	le nozze wedding	etc.

b. The following have no plural :

la calvizie baldness	la fame hunger	la sete thirst
la canizie white hairs	la mane morning	etc.
la copia plenty	il pepe pepper	

Many names of metals, and many abstract nouns.

c. Many nouns, though not strictly defective, are used almost exclusively in either the singular or the plural. Such are

la progēnie , la prole , la stirpe ,	i rūderi ruins
race, progeny	gli spinaci spinach
i pōsteri posterity	

d. Some nouns have a different meaning in the plural.

la mōlla spring, catch	le mōlle tongs
il rostro beak	i rostri tribune, rostrum
il vezzo custom	i vezzi caresses

***183. Collectives.** Collective nouns which are plural in meaning but singular in form take a verb or adjective in the singular.

Sono **gente** che non **viaggia** mai They are people who never travel
Avevo lasciato **tutta** la mia **roba** a I had left all my things in Paris
Parigi

***184. Distributive Singular.** The singular is used in Italian, of nouns referring to parts of the body or to clothing, to mean 'one each,' where the plural would be used in English.

Alzarono **la mano** destra They raised their right **hands**
Si levarono il **cappello** They took off their **hats**

But

Fece tagliar loro **le mani** He had their **hands** cut off (both
hands of each)

a. Yet the adjective in such cases agrees in the plural.

L'idea d'uscirne **sani e salvi** non The idea of getting out safe and
passò per il **capo** a **nessuno** sound never entered **their heads**

185. The Verb *piacere* 'please,' 'be pleasing.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **Piacere, piacendo, piaccio, piacerò, piacqui, piaciuto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE		PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
piaccio	piacciamo	piaccia	piacciamo
piaci	piacete	piaccia	piacciate
piace	piacciono	piaccia	piacciano

VOCABULARY

l' albergo <i>m.</i> hotel	la bottega shop
l' antologia <i>f.</i> anthology	il chirurgo surgeon
l' arancio <i>m.</i> orange-tree	la città city
la barca boat	il diálogo dialogue
il Belga Belgian	il dito finger

il domēstico domestic	l' uovo <i>m.</i> egg
le fōrbici scissors	la virtù virtue, power
il frutto fruit	
il fungo mushroom	antico ancient
la gente folk, people	austriaco Austrian
il ginōcchio knee	bēllico pertaining to war, of warfare
Giulio Cēzare Julius Cæsar	bellicoso warlike
la guancia cheek	britānnico Britannic
il labbro lip	caduco weak
il lapis pencil	cārico loaded
il lavamano washstand	cieço blind
il legno wood	clāssico classic
la letteratura literature	etrusco Etruscan
il luogo place, location	filosōfico philosophical
il lustrascarpe bootblack	forzato forced
la macchia brambles, thicket	grēco Greek
la marcia march	lāico laic, layman
la metrōpoli metropolis	ricco rich
la moglie wife	scārico run down, free, unloaded
la molla spring, mainspring	simpātico nice, congenial
le mōlle tongs	stanco tired
il muro wall	tīpico typical
il nemico enemy	ubriaco drunk
il paio pair	
il pāroco parish priest	accēdere, accēsi, accēso, light, kindle
il soprābito overcoat	caricare load, wind up
la spēcie kind, sort	lustrare black, polish
lo stivale boot	rōmpere, ruppi, rōtto break
il tacco heel	tagliare cut
la tēsta head	

EXERCISE

I

1. They have their boots blacked. 2. The Britannic kings were old. 3. The watches are run down, both of them. 4. They must be wound up. 5. The mainspring is broken. 6. The Greek boot-blacks had little shops in all the great metropolises. 7. Bring me

some wood for the fires. 8. Let us take a walk outside the walls. 9. The Etruscan cities have been dead for centuries. 10. She has burnt her fingers. 11. The philosophical Greeks studied political institutions. 12. Julius Cæsar tells us that the ancient Belgians were a warlike people. 13. I have lost two pairs of scissors, and all my pencils. 14. Her lips and cheeks are red. 15. The Austrian surgeons are very rich. 16. There are orange-trees in our garden. 17. Oranges are the fruit of the orange-tree. 18. The soldiers are not drunk but tired; they have made many forced marches. 19. Scissors are adapted to cutting. 20. The fires were kindled by hostile soldiers.

II

1. The ancient Greeks were a very civilized people. 2. The boats are loaded. 3. Monks and laics are all enemies of the army. 4. Please give me the tongs. 5. The doctors finished their studies in two Austrian cities. 6. The old servants are not rich; they are blind. 7. It is difficult to find mushrooms. 8. They will search for them in the woods and other places. 9. My friends have some anthologies of Greek and Italian literature. 10. The rich politicians have taken off their overcoats. 11. In the hotels of French cities one is very comfortable. 12. The classic literatures were very congenial to him. 13. The Etruscan kings had domestic wives. 14. He had their heads cut off. 15. The virtues of the ancient Greeks were many. 16. He brought me several packages of fruit. 17. They are typical Englishmen. 18. By [with] dialogues one learns the spoken language. 19. I like Mrs. B., I think she is very nice. 20. Send me six eggs and three kinds of fruit. 21. My Greek friends will arrive to-morrow. 22. They seem typical parish priests. 23. It is absurd to say the ancient civilizations were not great. 24. The French are an agreeable people. 25. They are people who think the military spirit is an evil. 26. Her Austrian friends (*f.*) are very nice. 27. Surgeons and doctors become tired because of working too much. 28. Guns are instruments of warfare.

LESSON XXXI

MODAL AUXILIARIES. THE VERB *DOVERE*

186. Modal Auxiliaries. *a.* The modal auxiliaries are *volere* 'wish,' 'will,' *potere* 'be able,' *dovere* 'be obliged,' expressing what *must, may, should, ought to, or is to* happen.

b. As these verbs are not defective like their English equivalents, *potere* and *dovere* may as auxiliaries be conjugated in the compound tenses. The dependent infinitive remains in the present tense, whereas in English it must be thrown into the compound past tense.

Avrebbe dovuto **farlo**

He ought to **have done it**

Non avrebbe potuto **venire**

He could not **have come**

Non ha **potuto** andarvi **oggi**

He has not **been able** to go there
to-day

1. But cf. 140, *c*, 2.

c. These verbs follow the regular rules for the agreement of the past participle (cf. 194, *b*).

Ci sarebbero **voluti** pochi **soldi**

It would have taken but a few cents

Tali sono **oggi**, quali li hai **potuti**
vedere

Such they are to-day as you have
been able to see (them)

d. When governing an infinitive, these verbs may take the auxiliary of the dependent verb.

Non **era** voluto **partire**

He had not wished to leave

Non **hanno** potuto **lavorare**

They could not work

Sarebbe dovuto **venire**

He ought to have come

È cominciato a **ammalare**

He began to be taken ill

*1. When the infinitive is passive, the modal auxiliary may be thrown into the passive and the infinitive remain active.

Non potè esser **portato** }
Non fu potuto **portare** } He could not be carried

2. Used absolutely, without infinitive, the auxiliary is **avere**.

Ha voluto ma non ha potuto He wished to but could not

187. Special Uses of the Modal Auxiliaries.

a. Special uses of **volere**.

1. The past future means 'should like.'

Vorrei visitare la città I **should like** to see the sights of
the city

2. 'Will you?' unless it means 'Do you wish?' 'Should you like?' is often best translated not by **volere** but by the present tense of the verb.

Mi fa il piacere di indicarmi la Will you do me the kindness to
strada? show me the way?

3. Cf. 133, a, 1 and 2.

b. Special uses of **potere**.

1. It translates 'may' or 'might' in independent clauses (the subjunctive translates them in dependent ones).

Si può dire che tutti i Tedeschi It may be said that all Germans
sappiano cantare know how to sing

Potrebbe darsi It might be, it might be the case

Potevano essere le due It might have been two o'clock

2. **Non poter a meno di** means 'not be able to help.'

Non potei a meno di ridere I could not help laughing

3. **Poter su** 'have power over,' 'influence.'

Sortì da natura fortissimo ingegno He had by nature a powerful gen-
e animo fiero. I casi della vita ius and an intrepid spirit. The
molto poterono sull'uno e sul- chances of life had great influ-
l'altro ence upon both (*lit.* had much
power over the one and the other)

4. Cf. 132, a, 1.

c. Special uses of *dovere*.

1. In the past future it means 'ought'; in the other tenses, 'must,' 'have to,' 'is to,' etc.

<i>Dovrebbe</i> pagarlo subito	He ought to pay it at once
<i>Deve</i> pagarlo subito	He must pay it at once
<i>Doveva</i> passare l'inverno a Nizza	He was to pass the winter at Nice

2. For the 'must' or 'must have' of probability is substituted the future or future perfect of the dependent verb (cf. 141, a, 1).

3. In the first person singular present indicative it translates 'Shall I?' in the sense of 'Do you wish me to?'

<i>Devo</i> fare i bauli?	Shall I pack the trunks? (Do you wish me, is it time, to pack the trunks?)
---------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------

188. The Verb *dovere*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *dovere*, *dovendo*, *dovrò*, *dèvo* or *dèbbo*, *dovèi*, *dovuto*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

<i>dèvo</i> , <i>dèbbo</i> , (<i>dèggio</i>)	<i>dobbiamo</i>
<i>dèvi</i> , <i>dèi</i>	<i>dovete</i>
<i>dève</i> , (<i>dèbbe</i>), <i>dèc</i>	<i>dèvono</i> , <i>dèbbono</i> , (<i>dèggiono</i>)

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>dèva</i> , <i>dèbba</i> , (<i>dèggia</i>)	<i>dobbiamo</i>
<i>dèva</i> , <i>dèbba</i> , (<i>dèggia</i>)	<i>dobbiate</i>
<i>dèva</i> , <i>dèbba</i> , (<i>dèggia</i>)	<i>dèvano</i> , <i>dèbbano</i> , (<i>dèggiano</i>)

Imperative wanting.

VOCABULARY

il <i>chilo</i> kilogram	<i>dì là</i> on that side
il <i>conto</i> bill, account	<i>dì qua</i> on this side
la <i>corsa</i> run, course	<i>nemmeno</i> not even
il <i>fornaio</i> baker	<i>però</i> however
la <i>moneta</i> coin, piece	<i>soltanto</i> only
il <i>resto</i> change	<i>stretto</i> tight, narrow
il <i>servizino</i> little service	<i>tra</i> within, between
<i>difilato</i> straight ahead	

costare cost	rifare make again, rebuild
dubitare doubt	ripetere repeat
mormorare murmur	rivoltare turn back
osservare observe	sbagliare make a mistake
ricontare count over, recount	voltarsi turn

EXERCISE

I

— Egisto, va' qui dal fornaio a comprare mezzo chilo di pane, di quello da trenta centesimi il chilo. Eccoti una lira, sta' attento, fatti dare il resto. E mi raccomando, non ti fermare per la strada, eh? —

Queste parole erano dette a Egisto dalla mamma. Il bambino a cui non pareva vero di fare i servizini a sua madre, andò difilato dal fornaio; prese il pane e il resto della lira, e via verso casa, senza nemmeno voltarsi di qua o di là.

Quando fu a mezza strada ebbe un'idea: quella di ricontare i denari del resto; erano sei monete da dieci centesimi e due da un soldo, dunque il conto non tornava.

— Facciamolo meglio — mormorò tra sè Egisto — se un chilo di pane costa 30 centesimi, mezzo chilo costa 15. Il fornaio doveva darmi 85 centesimi di resto, invece me ne ha dati soltanto 70.—

Egisto non stette più a pensare; rivoltò, e tornò di corsa dal fornaio, e gli disse:

— Sa, Lei ha sbagliato, mi ha dato tre soldi meno di resto; guardi.

— Proprio, bambino? — rispose il fornaio — Li avrai persi per la strada.

— No, no, — ripeté il ragazzo con vivacità; — li tenevo stretti stretti in questa mano.

Il fornaio lo guardò; e gli lesse in viso un'aria tale di sincerità, che non dubitò più. Gli ridiede i soldi, ma gli osservò:

— Ho sbagliato, e lo riconosco; però un'altra volta sta' attento, e il conto rifallo subito qui in presenza mia.

II

1. We must always count our money. 2. She could not do without bread. 3. He would not have been able to help losing his way. 4. Egisto's mother told him not to stop on the way. 5. She says to him: "Here are two lire for you. Don't forget to bring me the change." 6. Go to the baker's, hurry, and be careful. 7. He ought to have brought it to her. 8. Shall I light the fire in all the rooms? 9. The boy ought to have brought two lire; it might be that he had lost them on the way. 10. His mother told him to hurry, that he might bring her the bread before lunch. 11. He was not able to start before eleven, he could not have brought it to her in time. 12. He had the change given him. 13. It must be ten o'clock. 14. He had in his pocket three ten-centesimo pieces and four one-cent pieces. 15. I do not doubt that it is to happen. 16. He had to return at once to the baker's. 17. Egisto was not to stop on the way. 18. His mother feared, if he did not hurry, that he might lose his way. 19. They have not been able to rebuild the walls of those cities. 20. It would have taken ten years. 21. They ought to have told us so before beginning the work. 22. Bakers make bread. 23. It was twelve o'clock before he returned. 24. His mother thinks he has lost his way. 25. The baker might have made a mistake. 26. He might have given me two cents too little. 27. No, he has given me three cents too much.

DIALOGO

DAL SARTO

— Vuol venire con me dal sarto? Mi devo provare un abito da passeggio.

— Volentieri. Dev' essere pronto anche il soprabito che ho fatto pulire. Com' è il nuovo abito?

— È fatto di una stoffa di lana leggièra, a quadrettini neri e bigi. È un color pratico.

— Eccoci arrivati. Il sarto sta al terzo piano.

— Buon giorno, Signori. Sono venuti per la prova? Tutt' è pronto. Aspettino un momento che venga il giovane. Ecco. Come le piace?

— Mi pare che i calzoni siano un pochettino troppo lunghi. E la giubba non mi sta bene sulle spalle; è troppo attillata. Che ne pensa?

— Le maniche mi sembra che siano un po' troppo corte e anche larghe.

— Come crede, Signore. Lasci fare a me. Siamo in tempo a cambiar tutto facilmente. E Lei, Signore, non le occorre niente?

— Per dir la verità, ho proprio bisogno di una nuova *redingote*. Siccome non mi piace la roba bell' e fatta, devo ordinarlo. Può farmelo fra tre giorni? Sto per far un viaggio.

— Altro! Glielo farò trovare in casa giovedì sera. Ma ci vuole la misura. Prendiamola subito.

— Vabbene. Si deve pagare anticipatamente o dopo?

— Ma che Le pare! Un amico del Signor B. Mi pagherà quando Le converrà. Non ha bisogno di nient' altro?

— No, grazie. Andiamo dunque, e al ritorno devo far delle compre, mi occorre tanta roba da vestiario: delle scarpe basse colorate, un cappello sodo, e un altro a cencio, da viaggio. Il cilindro non lo prendo. Poi delle ciarpette di seta, chiare e scure.

— Come le piacciono le cravatte, rigate o scozzesi?

— Nè l' une nè l' altre. Le porto sempre lisce.

— Ecco una bottega che ha per insegna: *Novità da uomini*. Entriamoci.

LESSON XXXII

RELATIVE, DEMONSTRATIVE, AND INTERROGATIVE
PRONOUNS. THE VERB *UDIRE*

189. The Relative Pronoun. *a.* For the forms, see 114.

b. Special uses of *che* :

1. It is often used elliptically, without preposition, in adverbial or descriptive clauses.

Paese **che** vai usanza che trovi

Whatever country you go to, [follow] whatever customs you find.
(In Rome, do as the Romans do)

È venuto nel momento **che** stavo mangiando

He came at the moment **when** I was eating

Una donna **che** tutti non facevano altro che dire che l'era tanto buona

A woman **of whom** every one did nothing but say how good she was

2. When its antecedent is a phrase, it must take the article.

Avevamo il largo e profondo fosso alle spalle con solo uno stretto ponte per passo, **il che** rendeva difficile la ritirata

We had behind us the wide, deep ditch, with only a narrow bridge for crossing, **which fact** made retreat difficult

c. **Cui**, which is usually used after prepositions, may be used as a direct object, where **che** (which may be either subject or object) might cause ambiguity.

E caddi come l'uom **cui** sonno piglia

And I fell like one, **whom** sleep overtakes

d. **Il quale**, which is either adjective or pronoun, is used (because declinable) to avoid ambiguity, and it seems rather to be preferred for general use, especially with a plural antecedent.

Quelli non erano tempi nei quali un presidente di Consiglio potesse agevolmente venir mutato. Non ci maravigliamo che la scena de' *Promessi Sposi* sia stata posta dall' autore in quel di Lecco, nei luoghi ove lo riportavano le prime e le più care sue reminiscenze, dai quali egli si era dovuto staccare per sempre con un vivo dolore.

Those were not times in which a President of Council could easily be changed.

We do not wonder that the scene of "The Betrothed" was laid by the author in the territory of Lecco, in the places whither his earliest and dearest recollections bore him, from which he had to sever himself with sharp grief. (The masculine form **quali** can evidently refer only to **luoghi**)

190. The Demonstrative Pronoun. a. Questo, quello, cotesto.

1. For the forms of **questo** and **quello**, see 86; **cotesto**, **codesto**, is inflected like **questo**.

2. **Questo** refers to what is near the speaker; **cotesto**, **codesto**, to what is near the person addressed; **quello**, to what is more or less removed from both.

Che ne pensa di **questo** cavallo?
Come si chiamano **quelle** colline?
M' è piaciuto parecchio **codesto**
abito

What do you think of **this** horse?
What is the name of **those** hills?
I greatly liked your costume, **that**
costume of yours

3. **Quello** and **questo** mean respectively 'the former' and 'the latter'; but **questo**, 'the latter,' is always mentioned first.

Il cavallo e il bōve sono tutt' e due utilissimi all' uomo, ma si affeziona meno a **questo** che a **quello**

The horse and the ox are both extremely useful to man, but we have **more** affection for **the former** than for **the latter**

4. To mean 'this one' and 'that one' when speaking of things, **questo** and **quello** are usually reinforced by **altro**.

Questo libro non l' ho letto. Ho letto **quell' altro**

This book I have not read. I have read **that one**

5. Special uses of **quello** :

a. **Quel che** = 'what' when it can be resolved into 'that which.'

Non credè **quel che** gli dissi He did not believe **what** I told him

b. Before **di** or a relative, it means 'the one,' 'that one.'

Ho prestato loro il mio cavallo e **quello di mio fratello** I have lent them my own horse
and **my brother's**

Quelli che vede non sono i Colli Euganei **The ones** you see are not the
Euganean Hills

c. Elliptically.

In **quel** (territorio) di Milano In the country round about Milan

Tu non sei più **quello** (medesimo, or di prima) You are no longer the same person

In **quella** (ora) At that moment

b. **Questi, quegli, (quei, que')**. These forms are invariable masculine singulars, applicable to persons only, and used only as subject. **Questi** = 'this one,' 'this man'; and **quegli** = 'that one,' 'that man.' Restricted to literary usage.

Questi, l'orme di cui pestar mi vedi This man in whose footsteps you
see me tread

c. **Costui, colui**. These have the same meaning as **questi** and **quegli**, but are completely inflected and are used in all cases.

1. Forms :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
costui	costoro	colui	coloro
costei		colèi	

2. 'He who' is expressed by **colui che**, or preferably by **chi**.

Colui che guadagna ha il diritto di spendere **He who** earns has the right to
spend

Il mondo è di **chi** se lo piglia The world belongs to **him who**
takes it

Chi dice soldato, dice obbedienza **Who** says soldier, says obedience

a.* In this use, **chi is sometimes equivalent to 'if one.'

<p>Chi è entrato nella vita politica, non conviene che cerchi di arricchirsi</p>	<p>If one enters political life, it is not fitting that he seek to enrich himself</p>
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

NOTE. These demonstratives referring to persons only all end in the singular in *i*.

d. Ciò. Ciò is a neuter of rather general meaning, referring not to a person or a thing, but to a whole idea, meaning 'this' or 'that.'

<p>Gl' Italiani sognavano libertà, ma ciò dispiaceva agli Austriaci</p>	<p>The Italians dreamed of liberty, but that displeased the Austrians</p>
-------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------

e. Desso, stesso, medesimo. These words all mean 'same,' 'selfsame,' 'that very,' etc. **Desso** is used only substantively, as a predicate complement, and for the most part of persons. **Stesso** and **medesimo** are either substantives or adjectives, and refer to either persons or things.

<p>Questi è desso, e non favella Il re stesso l' ha fatto La fortuna medesima è il nostro nemico</p>	<p>This is he, and he speaks not The king did it himself Fortune itself is our foe</p>
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

191. The Interrogative Pronoun. The interrogatives are—

<p>chi ? who? whom? che ? che cosa ? what? what thing? (<i>pronoun</i>), what kind of? (<i>adjective</i>) quale ? (<i>inflected</i>) what? which? (<i>adjective or pronoun</i>) di chi ? whose? quanto ? (<i>inflected</i>) how much? how many? come ? what did you say?</p>	<p>Who knows? What has he said? What kind of a book are you reading? Which (one) do you wish? Whose are these flowers? How many do you wish?</p>
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

a. 'What a,' 'what,' in exclamations, is expressed by **che** without article (cf. 162, *f*).

Che panorama stupendo!

What a magnificent view!

***b.** The interrogatives may be reinforced by **mai**.

Chi mai l' avrebbe creduto?

Who would ever have believed it?

Come mai l' ha fatto?

How did you ever do it?

***c.** **Cosa?** for **che cosa?** is frequent in familiar speech, but is not elegant.

Cos' hai fatto?

What have you been doing?

192. The Verb *udire* 'hear.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **Udire**, **udendo**, **òdo**, **udirò** (**udrò**), **udii**, **udito**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

òdo	udiamo
òdi	udite
òde	òdono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

òda	udiamo
òda	udiate
òda	òdano

VOCABULARY

il càrcere prison

la còsta coast

il cuòre heart

il dòsso back

l' eròe *m.* hero

la fucilazione execution, shooting

l' inganno *m.* deceit

l' isola *f.* island

la marina navy

il pòrto port

lo sbarco disembarkation

la scintilla spark

la strage butchery

il supplizio punishment, torture

il tradimento treachery, betrayal

l' ufficiale *m.* officer

la vèla sail; far vèla set sail

la vergogna shame

attèndere, attèsi, attèso await

avviarsi take one's way, start

cavare take out

corrispòndere (*like rispondere*) correspond

effettuare effect

fuggire flee

sbarcare land

scuòtere, scòssi, scòsso shake

assai much, very, rather

veneziano Venetian

EXERCISE

I

I FRATELLI BANDIERA

I fratelli Attilio ed Emilio Bandiera, figli di nobile famiglia veneziana, erano ufficiali nella marina austriaca. Cuori generosi come quelli, al servizio dello straniero! — Vada la nostra vita, ma scuotiamoci da dosso tanta vergogna — devono aver pensato quei due giovani eroi. E fuggirono. Fuggirono in Grecia, nell' isola di Corfù. Di là, corrispondendo coi loro amici d' Italia, pensarono di effettuare uno sbarco sulle coste della Calabria, per accendere la prima scintilla di guerra in quel di Napoli. Fecero vela con pochi compagni, e sbarcarono al porto di Cotrone.

Ma l' inganno e il tradimento li aspettavano su quella terra; furono presto arrestati e immediatamente condannati alla fucilazione. La strage fu consumata nella città di Cosenza. Attesero calmi l' ora fatale, sentendo in cuore la gioia di dare il loro sangue alla patria. E quando i soldati del Borbone vennero a cavarli dal carcere per condurli a morte, essi e sette loro compagni si avviarono al luogo del supplizio, cantando serenamente: *Chi per la patria muor, vissuto è assai.*

II

1. The Bandiera brothers, who were officers in the Austrian navy, wished to shake from their backs the shame of being in the service of the foreigner. 2. What awaited them in the territory of Venice? 3. Deceit and treachery awaited those brothers in the land of the Bourbon. 4. That is not what they hoped. 5. Who knows how many men have given their lives for their country? 6. He who reads the history of Italy must admire her heroes. 7. What a beautiful history! What do you think of it? 8. What I have read of it pleases me very much. 9. The heroes were taken out of prison to be led to the place of punishment. 10. Which of the Bandiera brothers was the older? 11. We sang as we took our

way to the place of punishment. 12. What did you sing? 13. We sang, "He who dies for his country, has lived enough." 14. They were arrested, and what is worse, sentenced to be shot. 15. The officers had them punished, which was not to be expected. 16. They do not believe that what you tell them is true. 17. We have sold our house, and that of our brother. 18. I have taken my new dresses out of the box. 19. I do not like this one; I think the other one is more beautiful.

LESSON XXXIII

PARTICIPLES. THE VERB *PORRE*

193. The Present Participle. The present participle has two forms: a form in *-ante*, *-ente*, which Italian grammar recognizes as the participle, and one in *-ando*, *-endo*, which Italian grammar calls the "gerundive."

a. The form in *-ante*, *-ente*, has the character of adjective, substantive, or verb, and is inflected like an adjective in *e*.

1. As adjective it is in frequent use.

Il grillo parlante

The talking cricket

I principi regnanti

The reigning princes

2. Any present participle with an article before it becomes a substantive, as *l' amante* 'the lover.'

3. As verb it is perhaps less common than the form in *-ando*, *-endo*, and rarely takes an object. It is used, with object, of the verbs *avere*, *contenere*, *fare*, *formare*, *indicare*, *rappresentare*, *tenere*, etc.

I treni aventi wagoni-letto

Trains having sleeping-cars

b. The form in *-ando*, *-endo*, has the character of verb or adverb, and is invariable.

1. As a verb it may replace a clause of time, cause, concession, condition, or simple explanation, and may always govern an object.

Andando insieme al teatro, chiacchieravano di molte cose

Trovandomi quell' autunno a casa, e **ricordandomi** di quel vecchio, andava spesso a visitarlo

Sentendosi incapace di muoversi, disse nonostante queste parole audaci

Rimproverandolo, potrà forse persuaderlo a mutar vita

While they were going to the theater they chatted of many things

As I happened to be at home that fall, and **to remember** the old man, I went often to visit him

Knowing that he was incapable of a movement, he yet spoke these audacious words

If you reprove him, you will perhaps be able to persuade him to change his way of life

c. To translate the English present participle,

1. With the verb 'to be,' cf. 102.

2. When standing alone or with object after a noun, it is often best to use a simple relative clause.

There is a lady **waiting**

And like a wasp **withdrawing** its sting

C'è una signora **che aspetta**

E come vespa **che ritragge** l' ago

3. After a verb of sensation use the infinitive.

They saw us **coming**

I heard her **singing**

Ci videro **venire**

La sentii **cantare**

d. To translate the English gerund,

1. In general, use the infinitive.

Smoking is forbidden

Working is praying

È vietato di **fumare**

Lavorare è pregare

2. After a preposition, use the form in **-ando**, **-endo**, without preposition, unless the latter be essential to the sense; when the preposition is essential to the sense, retain it, and translate the participle by the infinitive.

On recognizing him, I hastened to overtake him

Riconoscendolo, mi spicciai per raggiungerlo

One cannot make progress without studying	Non si può far progressi senza studiare
We talk of waging war	Parliamo di muover guerra

194. The Past Participle. *a.* The past participle may be used as adjective, noun, or verb.

Tutte le cose narrate si erano succedute con una rapidità maravigliosa	All the things narrated had succeeded each other with a marvelous rapidity
Il condannato era un povero Veneziano	The condemned man was a poor Venetian
Finita la messa	Mass being over

b. Agreement. As noun, as adjective, or when used without auxiliary, the past participle is always inflected. With auxiliary, it agrees —

1. After **essere**, in intransitive and passive verbs (cf. **99**).

2. After **avere** (cf. **122**) optionally with the object.

a. But it is usually invariable —

(1) When the object is part of a set phrase.

Ci ha dato fede	He has pledged his faith to it
Ho avuto fame	I was hungry

(2) When the participle has a dependent infinitive governing a noun object.

Non ho voluto comprare quelle scarpe	I did not wish to buy those shoes
---------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

(3) When **fatto** is substituted for the repetition of some other participle.

Certo negli ultimi venti anni si sono salite più montagne, che non s'era fatto in venti secoli	Certainly in the last twenty years more mountains have been scaled than in the preceding twenty centuries
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

b. Whereas it must usually agree —

(1) When the direct object is a personal pronoun or *ne*.

<i>Dove li hanno veduti?</i>	Where did they see them?
<i>Mi hai portato (or portati) dei fiori?</i>	Have you brought me any flowers?
<i>Te ne ho portati molti!</i>	I have brought you a great many!

(2) This is true even when the pronoun object belongs with a dependent infinitive.

<i>Li avreste potuti vedere</i>	You might have seen them
---------------------------------	--------------------------

3. With reflexives (cf. 104, c, 1).

a. With impersonal forms, the participle agrees if the verb is normally conjugated with *essere*; if it is regularly conjugated with *avere*, there is no agreement.

<i>Si è vissuti troppo</i>	We have lived too long
<i>Si è comprato molti cavalli per la cavalleria</i>	Many horses were bought for the cavalry

b. When the pronoun is a dative "of reference or concern" (cf. 105, b, 3) it is not a true reflexive.

c. Inversion. In temporal clauses the past participle and its auxiliary are often inverted, *che* then taking the place of *quando*, *appena*, etc.

<i>Liberato che fu</i>	When he was liberated, as soon as he was liberated
<i>Vinto che l'abbia, lo divorza</i>	When [as soon as] he has conquered it, he devours it

195. Absolute Constructions. These are extremely common in Italian, and may take the place of almost any kind of clause.

<i>Detto fatto</i>	No sooner said than done
<i>Giunto tardi a casa, ed acceso il lume, si accorse subito del furto</i>	Arriving home late, and having lighted the lamp, he at once noticed the theft

Dopo occupato l'altipiano, gl'Italiani cominciarono a tirare After occupying the elevation, the Italians began to fire

a. Cf. 136, h; 145, d.

196. The verb *porre* 'place.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **Porre, ponendo, pongo, porrò, posi, posto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

pongo poniamo, ponghiamo
poni ponete
pone põngono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

ponga poniamo, ponghiamo
ponga poniate
ponga põngano

VOCABULARY

il **bāvero** coat-collar
il **benefizio** benefit
il **cannone** cannon
il **cittadino** citizen
la **giacchetta** jacket
la **giovanezza** young girl
il **giovanezzo** boy, young man
il **gruppo** group
l' **incasso** *m.* receipts
il **metallo** metal
il **nastrino** little ribbon
il **petto** breast
lo **scudo** shield
la **somma** sum

il **Turco** Turk
la **vendita** sale

acquistare acquire
andarsene go away
appuntare pin
dare il buon anno wish a Happy
New Year
formicolare swarm
offrire, offerirsi, offerto offer
puntare aim
sparare fire, shoot

ciascuno each, every one

EXERCISE

I

IL PICCOLO SCUDO

1. Era il primo giorno dell' anno 1912, l' anno della nostra guerra contro i Turchi. 2. La gente formicolava per le strade e si salutava dandosi il buon anno. 3. Qua e là le persone, che passavano per le vie, erano fermate da gruppi di giovanetti e giovanette

che offrivano, a chi voleva comprarli, dei piccoli scudi di metallo bianco, portanti un nastrino coi tre colori della bandiera nazionale. 4. Su ogni scudo si vedeva un soldato che sparava, e un altro che puntava il cannone. 5. Gli scudetti erano venduti da quei giovani a beneficio dei nostri soldati che combattevano in Libia. 6. Costavano non meno di due soldi, ma ciascuno, prendendoli, poteva offrire quello che voleva. 7. E tutti i cittadini li acquistavano volentieri, con entusiasmo, e se li mettevano al bavero della giacchetta. 8. Li compravano anche le donne, e se li appuntavano sul vestito. 9. Quasi tutti ebbero ben presto sul petto questi piccoli scudi col nastrino tricolore. 10. L'incasso della loro vendita dette una somma considerevole.

II

1. The soldiers, while fighting in Libya, were led by the officers. 2. The combatants gave up firing, the cannon having been taken by the enemy. 3. That lady will pin the little shield upon her dress. 4. People flocking through the street and saluting each other wished each other a Happy New Year. 5. Having put the little ribbon on the collar of his coat, that citizen gave no less than three lire. 6. On New Year's Day of the year 1912, shields were sold for the benefit of the Italian soldiers. 7. As we entered the room, we found there a young girl singing. 8. We stayed, because we liked to hear her singing. 9. Having told us not to wait for them, they went away without speaking to him. 10. The shields bought, all soon had them at their breasts. 11. Little shields, on which was seen a soldier shooting, were offered by groups of young girls. 12. Do not go home before speaking to her. 13. Whoever wished to buy one, would pay not less than two cents. 14. By giving her two lire he won the approval of [made himself praised by] all the young people. 15. Have you bought a shield as you passed along the streets? 16. My brothers being both in Libya, I have bought two of them. 17. Having bought them, I shall give you one.

DIALOGO

DAL CALZOLAIO

— Ho da farmi fare un paio di scarpe. Andiamo in quella bottega di calzolaio ch'è sull'angolo di Via Parione. Ho sentito che quello lavora molto bene.

— Lo conosco di nome. Fa sempre le scarpe di lusso a una signora di mia conoscenza.

— Ecco il suo negozio. È davvero troppo grande ed elegante da chiamarlo bottega.

— Buon giorno, Signore. Che desiderano?

— Io vorrei ordinare un paio di scarpe bianche, alte.

— Alte non si fanno le bianche, Signora. Ne ho viste delle signore americane che le portano, ma qui in Italia non si trovano mai. Però, potrei fargliene un paio su misura. Ma bisognerebbe prima fare delle forme. Prendiamo la misura del suo piede. Ecco presa la misura. Come le vuole? Di pelle?

— No, di tela, di buona qualità. Le porterò domani una mia scarpa per confrontarla colla forma. Ho sempre paura quando vado per la prima volta da un calzolaio, che mi faccia le scarpe troppo larghe e troppo corte.

— Non dubiti, Signora. Colle forme ben fatte non si può sbagliare.

— Mi dia due paia di stringhe, e faccia attenzione che non scricchiolino le scarpe. Questo paio che ho fu bagnato dalla pioggia la settimana scorsa, e d'allora scricchiolano ch'è un orrore.

— Ci baderò, Signora. E i tacchi come li vuole? Di tela?

— No, di cuoio, e piuttosto bassi. I tacchi alti sciupano i piedi.

— Baderò a tutto, Signora. Sono sicuro che rimarrà soddisfatta. Quanto al prezzo, ci accomoderemo quando saprò quanto tempo ci vuole per far le forme. Farò un prezzo discreto da venti a venticinque lire.

— Vabbene. Buon giorno.

— Arrivedella, Signora.

LESSON XXXIV

GENDER OF NOUNS. THE VERB *USCIRE*

197. Gender Determined by Form. *a.* Cf. 80, *b.*

b. Feminine are the nouns ending in *ie*, *si* (*except il brîndiși* 'toast'), and accented *ice*; and abstract nouns when accented on the last syllable: *la specie* 'kind,' *la radice* 'root,' *la libertà* 'liberty.'

198. Gender Determined by Meaning. *a.* Cf. 80, *a.* Masculine are also—

1. Names of lakes; of mountains, *except le Alpi*, *le Ande*, *la Sierra Nevada*, and a few others; of rivers, unless ending in *a* (cf. *b*, 2); of empires, kingdoms, and provinces, unless ending in *a* or *de* (*except il Bengala*).

2. Names of trees, *except la quercia* 'oak,' *la palma* 'palm,' and *la vite* 'grapevine,' which are feminine, and *l'êlce* 'ilex,' of common gender.

3. Names of metals, *except la latta* 'tin.'

4. Names of months, and of all days *except domênica*.

5. Other parts of speech used substantively.

b. Cf. 80, *a.* Feminine are also—

1. Names of fruits, which usually correspond to the names of the trees. If the latter end in *o*, *o* changes to *a*; if in *e*, there is merely a change of gender.

Il pêsco, la pêsca

Il nôce, la nôce

The peach-tree, the peach

The walnut-tree, the walnut

EXCEPTIONS. The following names, of masculine gender, are identical for tree and fruit :

l' ananasso pineapple	il limone lemon
il cedro lime	il pistacchio pistachio nut
il dattero date	il pomo apple
il fico fig	il ribes currant

2. Names of cities, except **il Cairo** 'Cairo'; and of rivers ending in **a**, except **il Niagara**, **il Vqlga**, and a few others.

la Lqira the Loire	il Danubio the Danube
--------------------	-----------------------

199. Nouns having Two Genders with Different Meanings :

il cārcere imprisonment, prison	la cārcere, oftener le cārceri, prison
il dramma drama	la dramma dram
il fine purpose	la fine (il fine) end
il pianeta planet	la pianeta priest's cope
il prigiōne prisoner	la prigiōne prison
il tema theme	la tema fear

a. Some nouns, such as **fōnte** 'spring,' **fōlgore** 'thunderbolt,' **trave** 'beam,' etc., are of common gender without change of meaning.

200. Gender of Names of Animals. *a.* Of such as change their form with change of gender, those ending in **o** change **o** to **a**, and those in **e** change **e** to **essa**, rarely **a** :

cavallo, cavalla, horse	gatto, gatta, cat
cignale, cignala, wild boar	leone, leonessa, lion
colombo, colomba, dove	lupo, lupa, wolf
elefante, elefantessa, elephant	pavone, pavona, pavonessa, peacock

1. Irregular are —

cane, cagna, dog	gāmbro, gamberessa, crawfish
gallo, gallina, cock, hen	and others

2. Defective are —

toro, vacca	bull, cow
montone, ariete ; pēcora	ram ; (sheep), ewe
verre ; troia or scrofa	boar ; sow

b. Some of those ending in *e* or *u* are of common gender, and distinguished only by the article.

il serpe, la serpe, serpent *il gru, la gru*, crane

c. Others have but one gender for both sexes.

1. Masculine are —

<i>il coniglio</i> rabbit	<i>il serpente</i> serpent
<i>il delfino</i> dolphin	<i>il sōrcio</i> mouse
<i>il luccio</i> pike	<i>il topo</i> rat
<i>lo scarafaggio</i> beetle	<i>il tōrdo</i> thrush

2. Feminine are —

<i>l' āquila</i> eagle	<i>la rōndine</i> swallow
<i>la balēna</i> whale	<i>la scīmnia</i> monkey
<i>la formica</i> ant	<i>la tōrtora</i> turtle-dove
<i>la lucērtola</i> lizard	<i>la vīpera</i> viper
<i>la mōsca</i> fly	<i>la vōlpe</i> fox
<i>la pantēra</i> panther	

201. Names denoting Sex in Human Beings :

<i>maschio, fēmmina</i> , male, female	<i>gēnero, nuqra</i> , son-in-law, daughter-in-law
<i>padre, madre</i> , father, mother	<i>cognato, cognata</i> , brother-in-law, sister-in-law
<i>figlio, figlia</i> , son, daughter	<i>fratellastro</i> , half-brother
<i>fratello, sorella</i> , brother, sister	<i>patrigno, matrigna</i> , stepfather, stepmother
<i>nonno, nonna</i> , grandfather, grandmother	<i>figliastro, figliastra</i> , stepson, stepdaughter
<i>il nipote, la nipote</i> , grandson, granddaughter; nephew, niece	<i>compare, madrina</i> , godfather, godmother
<i>zio, zia</i> , uncle, aunt	<i>figlioccio, figlioccia</i> , godson, goddaughter
<i>cugino, cugina</i> , cousin	
<i>suqero, suqera</i> , father-in-law, mother-in-law	

202. Masculines in *a*. The following nouns, though ending in *a*, are of masculine gender :

Il boia 'executioner,' *il duca* 'duke,' *il monarca* 'monarch,' *il poēta* 'poet,' *qualcōsa* 'something'; nouns in *-ista* denoting the

professions, sects, etc., when referring to men; **il colera** 'cholera,' **lo scià** 'shah,' **il sofà** 'sofa,' and some other words of foreign origin; **l' enigma** 'enigma,' **il problema** 'problem,' and other words from the Greek in **-ma**; and many geographical names.

203. Feminine Forms of Words Expressing Professions, Rank, or Character.

abate	abbot, abbadessa or badessa	abbess
barone	baron, baronessa	baroness
cameriere	waiter, cameriera	waitress, chambermaid, stewardess
canōnico	canon, canonicessa	canoness
cantore	singer, cantante (cantatrice)	
capitano	captain, capitanesa (burl.),	captain's wife
conte	count, contessa	countess
diavolo	devil, diavolessa	
dio	god, dea, diva,	goddess
dottore	doctor, learned person, dottora, dottoressa	(often burl.)
duca	duke, duchessa	duchess
eroge	hero, eroina	heroine
fante	page, fantesca	maidservant
fattore	steward, (fattora), fattoressa,	steward's wife
filōsofo	philosopher, filōsofa (burl.),	filosofessa
forestiere	foreigner, forestiera	
governatore	governor, governatrice; governatora	governor's wife
imperatore	emperor, imperatrice	empress
istitutore	teacher, tutor, istitutrice	teacher, governess
marchese	marquis, marchesa	marchioness
mēdico	physician, medicessa	
padrone	master, padrona	mistress
papa	pope, papessa	
patriarca	patriarch, patriarchessa	
pittore	painter, pittrice	
principe	prince, principessa	princess
priore	prior, priora, prioressa,	prioress
professore	professor professoressa	
profeta	prophet, profetessa	prophetess
re	king, regina	queen

sacerdote priest, sacerdotessa priestess
 scolare scholar, pupil, scolara
 servo servant, serva
 stiratore launderer, stiratora, stiratrice laundress
 traditore traitor, traditora, traditrice traitress
 uditore auditor, uditrice

204. The Verb *uscire* 'go out.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *uscire, uscendo, esco, uscirò, uscii, uscito*

PRESENT INDICATIVE		PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE		IMPERATIVE	
esco	usciamo	esca	usciamo		usciamo
esci	uscite	esca	usciate	esci	uscite
esce	ēscano	esca	ēscano	esca	ēscano

VOCABULARY

acciaio steel	rame copper
argento silver	Reno Rhine
ferro iron	scarafaggio beetle
fico fig	Senna Seine
gallina hen	socialista socialist
gēnero son-in-law	suocero, -a father-in-law, mother-in-law
gru crane	Tamigi Thames
istitutore, -trice teacher	tēma theme
latta tin	Tēvere Tiber
limone lemon	traditore, -tora traitor, traitress
pēcora sheep	uva grape
noce walnut-tree; nut, walnut	vacca cow
nuora daughter-in-law	vite grapevine
olmo elm	mācchia thicket, brambles
oro gold	cogliere, cogliendo, cogli, coglierò,
padrone landlord, proprietor	cogli, cogli gather
pero pear-tree	uscire di go out of
pēscico peach-tree	
problema problem	
quercia oak	generalmente usually

EXERCISE

I

1. Beetles are usually black. 2. The grape is the fruit of the vine. 3. He has bought himself three cows and some hens. 4. Gold and silver are precious metals. 5. It is said that figs are not gathered from brambles. 6. My father-in-law and mother-in-law, having risen early, left this morning at seven. 7. The Spaniard aimed the gun at the cranes. 8. Grapes are gathered from grapevines, peaches from peach-trees, pears from pear-trees, and walnuts from walnut-trees. 9. His theme was the problem of the socialists. 10. The cows are hungry. 11. What kind of fruit is there on the table? There are figs and lemons. 12. Sheep and cows are usually bought at the village.

II

1. Iron, steel, tin and copper are not precious metals. 2. My son-in-law, having gathered some walnuts and having given us some, has carried the rest home in his basket. 3. As I went out of the house, I saw them returning. 4. At the end of the year 1870 the hostile soldiers came out of Rome. 5. Having gone away before half past ten, I did not hear them talking about it. 6. Hurry, sir, if you wish to arrive before the train leaves. 7. Here are some grapes; let us gather some. 8. I do not doubt the proprietor will permit us to carry some home. 9. Traitors and traitresses are to be punished in whatever places they are found. 10. Elms and oaks are found in America. 11. The Rhine, the Thames, the Seine, and the Tiber are rivers of Europe.

LESSON XXXV

INDEFINITES. THE VERB SCEGLIERE

205. Alphabetical List of Indefinites.

- alcuno, -i, -a, -e 'some,' 'any.' (Adj. or pron., used often with **non** to mean 'not any.')
- altrettanto, -i, -a, -e (pron. or adj.) 'as much more,' 'as many more'
- altri (pron.) 'another,' used of persons
- altri . . . altri (pron.) 'some . . . others,' used of persons (also sing.)
- altro (pron.) 'something else,' 'anything else'
- altrui (pron.) 'to, of, *or* for another,' or 'others,' used of persons, and never in the nominative
- certuni, -e (pron.) 'certain ones,' used of persons
- checcchè, checchessìa (pron.) 'whatever,' 'anything whatever'
- chi . . . chi (pron.) 'some . . . others,' 'one . . . another'
- chicchessìa, chiunque (pron.) 'whoever,' 'any one whatever'
- ciascuno, -a, ciascheduno, -a (pron.) 'each one,' used of persons
- cosiffatto, -a, -i, -e (adj.) 'such'
- nessuno, -a, niuno, -a (pron. or adj.) 'not one,' 'no one'
- ogni (adj.) 'every'
- ognuno, -a (pron.) 'every one,' used of persons
- parècchi, -ie (pron. or adj.) 'several'
- per quanto (adv.) 'however'
- i più (pron.) 'most,' 'most people'
- qualche (adj.) 'some'
- qualcheduno, -a, qualcuno, -a (pron.) 'some one'
- qualcosa (pron.) 'something'
- qualsiasi, qualsisìa, qualsivoglia (adj.) 'whatever,' 'any whatever,' never used in the nominative
- qualunque (adj.) 'whatever,' 'any whatever'
- tale, -i (adj. or pron.) 'such'
- tale . . . quale 'such . . . as'
- tanto, -i, -a, -e 'so much,' 'so many'
- tanto . . . quanto 'as much . . . as'
- uno, -a (pron.) 'one'; (adj.) 'one,' 'a single'

un che, un non so che 'a something,' 'something or other'

una cosa 'something,' clear in the speaker's mind

un tale (adj.) 'such a'; (pron.) 'so-and-so,' 'such a one'

l' uno e l' altro 'both'

nè l' uno nè l' altro 'neither'

l' uno o l' altro 'either'

veruno, -a 'no one,' 'any one,' used in negative or doubtful sentences or expressions of doubt

a. An indefinite followed by an adjective requires **di**.

Niente **di** nuovo

Nothing new

Qualcosa **di** bello

Something beautiful

206. **Alcuno**, etc., 'some,' 'any.' **a.** **Alcuno** is either adjective or pronoun. In affirmative sentences its use is confined chiefly to the plural.

Alcuni lo dicono

Some say so

Ho **alcuni** libri russi

I have **some** Russian books

1. With **non**, **alcuno** in the singular regularly means 'none,' 'not any,' and follows the noun.

Nella regione devastata dal terremoto, **non** rimane più casa **alcuna**

In the region devastated by the earthquake, there is not a house remaining

2. 'Anything,' 'anybody,' in questions, are translated by the negative indefinites (cf. **210**) **nulla**, **nessuno**, etc.

È venuto **nessuno**?

Has **any one** come?

Di quest' affare ne sa **nulla**?

Do you know **anything** of this matter?

3. 'Any one else' is **ogni altro**.

Ha fatto più di **ogni altro**

He has done more than **any one else**

4. For the translation of 'any' as pronoun, cf. **124**.

b. Qualcuno, qualcneduno, are singular substantive forms, meaning 'some one,' commonly preferred to **alcuno** in affirmative sentences.

C'è qualcuno che vorrebbe parlarle	There is some one who would like to speak to you
Scełga qualcuno di quești quadri	Choose some one of these pictures

c. Qualche, certo, are adjectives meaning 'some,' 'certain,' 'a certain.'

1. **Qualche** is used only in the singular, even when the idea is plural.

A queł pōvero si dēve qualche aiuto	That poor man should have some help
Vi stēterro qualche giorno	They stayed there some days

2. **Certo** requires **un** in the singular.

Certe abitūdini sono da riprovarsi	Certain habits are blameworthy
Un certo Ciceruacchio menò i Romani alla rivolta	A certain Ciceruacchio led the Romans to revolt

d. Qualcosa, meaning 'something,' is always used substantively.

Mi hanno dētto che ha qualcosa per me	They tell me you have something for me
----------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------

1. When referring to something in the mind, 'something' is translated **una cosa**.

Mi permetta di dirle una cosa	Allow me to tell you something
--------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

2. In an abstract sense, it is translated **un che, un non so che, un certo che**.

Nella sua prōsa c'è sempre un che di artificioso	In his prose there is always something artificial
In questo paesaggio trovo un non so che di pittoresco	I find something picturesque in this landscape

e. 'Some . . . others' is translated by **alcuni . . . altri, altri . . . altri, gli uni . . . gli altri, chi . . . chi**, and sometimes **quale . . . quale**. **Chi** and **quale** take the verb in the singular.

Alcuni combattēvano sēmpre, altri la dāvano vinta	Some continued to fight, others gave up
Chi lo compiangeva, chi lo deri- deva	Some pitied him, others laughed at him
Qual fiōr cadea sul lēmbō, qual sulle trēcce bionde	Some flowers fell on her robe's hem, some on her blond tresses

207. Uno 'one,' etc. *a.* The pronoun 'one,' in the general sense of 'we,' 'you,' 'they,' 'people,' is translated by **uno**, or by the third person of the reflexive (cf. **106, b**).

Quand' uno si trōva in un paēse straniēro, dēve studiarne i cos- tumi	When one is in a foreign country, he should study its customs
Dōve si ēntra ?	Where does one enter ?

b. Before a proper name, **un** is equivalent to **un certo**.

Fu il tēzō triūmviro un Carlo Armellini	The third triumvir was a certain Carlo Armellini
---------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------

c. **Uno** sometimes means 'one single,' 'one and the same.'

La pōvera vēcchia non ha un sōldo	The poor old woman has not a (single) penny
Amōre e 'l cōr gentil son una cōsa [DANTE]	Love and the gentle heart are one same thing [ROSSETTI]

i. In the feminine singular it modifies some word like **azione** 'action' or **truffa** 'trick,' understood. Cf. **146, k, i**.

Ce ne ha fatta una	He has played us one of his tricks
----------------------------------	-------------------------------------------

d. 'The . . . one,' with an adjective between, often takes a demonstrative where it would not be needed in English; the word 'one' is omitted in translation.

Non mi piace queſt' ombrellino.	I do not like this parasol. I shall
Prendo quello ſcuro	take the dark one
Codęſta pera non ę buona; prenda	This pear is not good; take the
quell' altra	other one
Mi piacciono quelle belle	I like thoſe pretty ones (<i>f.</i>)

e. 'Each one,' 'every one,' are translated by *ciascuno*, *ciascheduno*, and *ognuno*, pronoun. *Ogni*, 'each,' 'every,' is an adjective. For *tutti*, 'everybody,' *tutto*, 'everything,' cf. 160.

Ciascuno di quei principi fu degno	Each of thoſe princes was worthy
d' onore	of honor
Ogni casa aveva un giardinetto	Each houſe had a little garden
In ogni caſo	In any caſe
Ognuno agiſce come crede	Every one acts as he thinks beſt

i. 'Apiece' is translated by *per uno*, *per ciascuno*.

Dięde loro ſei lire per uno	He gave them ſix lire apiece
-----------------------------	------------------------------

f. *Uno* correlative with *altro*.

Saper l' un dell' altro	To know one from the other
L' uno e l' altro	Both
L' un lito e l' altro vidi infin la	Both ſhores I ſaw as far as Spain
Spagna	
Nę l' uno nę l' altro	Neither
L' uno o l' altro	Either
Gli uni . . . gli altri	Some . . . others

Used reciprocally, cf. 104, *b.*

i. Except in the phrase *gli uni . . . gli altri*, *uno* has no plural. Its plural is ſupplied by *alcuni*.

208. *Altro* 'other,' etc. *a.* *Altri* is a ſingular pronoun, referring to perſons; it means 'another,' 'ſome one else,' and is often uſed in contrast.

Nę tu nę altri	Neither you nor any one else
----------------	------------------------------

b. **Altrui** is like **altri**, except that it may have a plural meaning, and is never nominative.

Non si deve bramare i beni altrui One should not covet the goods of
others

c. **Altro** as pronoun refers only to things, and means 'something else,' 'anything else,' 'else.'

Ci vuole altro?	Is something else needed?
Nient' altro	Nothing else
Che altro?	What else ?
Non desidero altro	I do not wish anything else

1. With the article, or in the plural, it refers to persons.

L' **altra** è colei che s' ancise The other is she who killed her-
amorosa self for love

Un **altro**, che forata avea la gola Another, who had his throat pierced

2. With numbers, **altro** usually precedes.

Altri quattro Four **others**

d. **Altro** as adjective means 'other,' and has some special uses.

1. With **noi** and **voi** it is reënforcing.

Noi **altri** Russi We **Russians**

Voi **altri** Ingleſi You **English**

2. In the partitive construction it means 'some more.'

Desidera **dell' altro** vino? Do you wish **some more** wine?

Dell' altr' acqua calda, per piacere **Some more** hot water, please

Le piacciono le susine? Si serva Do you like the plums? Take
delle altre **some more**

3. Expressions of time.

L' **altro** anno **Last year**

Quest' altra settimana **Next week**

4. For its use correlatively and reciprocally, cf. 207, *f*.

5. For its adverbial use, cf. 215, *e*; 216, *f*.

e. Altrettanto, a pronoun referring to things, means 'as much *or* as many more.'

Diède cinque soldi al ragazzo e altrettanti alla sua sorellina	She gave five pennies to the boy, and as many more to his little sister
Legò tre mila lire a lui, e altret- tanto a me	He left three thousand lire to him, and as much more to me
Le auguro cento di questi giorni. Grazie, altrettanto a Lei	I wish you many happy returns of the day. Thank you, the same to you

209. Some More General Indefinites. a. Tale 'such,' tanto 'so much,' etc.

1. **Tale, un tale**, means 'one,' 'a certain one.'

Tal si partì da cantare alleluia	One left off singing alleluia
Queł tal Sandro, autòr d' un ro- manzetto	A certain Sandro, author of a tale

2. 'Such a' is translated **un tale**.

Non potēvano continuare a com- battere dopo una tale sconfitta	They could not continue fighting after such a defeat
-------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------

3. **Tal quale** may mean 'a kind of' or 'like.'

Quești uccelli producono una tal qual armonia che piace	These birds produce a kind of pleasing harmony
Come gli somiglia il suo gemello. È tal quale!	How much his twin brother re- sembles him! He is exactly like

4. **Tale . . . quale** means 'such . . . as,' and in long poetic comparisons **quale** often precedes.

Tal mi fec' io quai son color che stanno, Per non intēder quel ch' è lor risposto	I became as those who stand still because of not understanding what is replied to them
Qual è quel cane ch' abbaiando agugna . . . Cotai si fecer quelle facce lorde	Like the dog which barking craves . . . such those foul faces became

5. **Tanto . . . quanto** are similarly correlative, and mean 'as much . . . as.'

Quanto gli prestai, tanto mi restituì	He returned me as much as I lent him
-----------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------

6. Special uses of **tanto**.

Ai tanti del mese	On such a day of the month
Un tanto la settimana	So much per week
Vi si t̄ la Turchia agli ottanta tanti	He visited Turkey in the eighties

b. Chiunque, qualunque, etc., 'whoever,' 'whatever,' 'any whatever,' etc.

1. **Chiunque** and **chicchessia** are pronouns referring to persons; **chicchessia** and **checchessia** are not used in the nominative. **Checchè** is preferred to **checchessia**.

Non lo farò, chiunque me lo consigli	Whoever advises it, I shall not do it
Non lo darei a chicchessia	I should not give it to anybody at all
Checchè avvenga, non abbandoneranno la posizione	Whatever happens, they will not abandon the position

2. **Qualunque, qualsivoglia, and qualsiasi** are adjectives.

Garibaldi ritirandosi da Roma, si sarebbe rifugiato in qualsiasi paesetto	Garibaldi, when retreating from Rome, would have taken refuge in any village whatever
Qualunque ne sia il motivo, è un' azione indegna	Whatever may be its motive, it is an unworthy action

3. **Per quanto** is an adverb, meaning 'however.'

Per quanto il capitano fosse magnanimo, non potè perdonare un tale insulto	However magnanimous the captain might be, he could not forgive such an insult
-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

c. Cf. 169, h.

210. Negative Indefinites. *a.* **Nessuno, niuno, veruno,** are pronouns or adjectives referring to persons or things. **Nessuno** is the most common.

Nessun erōe fu mai piū valorōso di Orlando	No hero was ever braver than Roland
Nessuno ci si mōsse	No one stirred

1. **Nulla, niente,** are pronouns meaning 'nothing.'

Non c' è nulla da mangiare	There is nothing to eat
Non vōglio nulla	I wish nothing
Di niēte	Not at all, don't mention it

2. When one of these negatives follows the verb, **non** must precede. If the negative precede, **non** is not required.

Non fa niēte	Never mind
Non ci si vēde niēte	There is nothing to be seen
Nessuno era arrivato prima dēlle sette	No one had arrived before seven
Non c' è nessuno de' miei	Not one of my relatives is here

3. Used absolutely, without verb, these words are negative in meaning.

Chi c' è? Nessuno	Who is there? No one
--------------------------	----------------------

4. Cf. 206, *a*, 1.

211. The Verb *scegliere* 'choose.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **Scēgliere, scegliēdo, scēlgo, sceglierò,**
scēlsi, scēlto

PRESENT INDICATIVE

scēlgo	scegliamo, scelghiamo
scegli	scegliete
sceglie	scēlgonο

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

scēlga	scegliamo
scēlga	scegliate
scēlga	scēlgano

VOCABULARY

la carezza	caress	accōrgersi, accōrsi, accōrto	perceive
la chicca	sweetmeat	avvezzare	accustom
la collera	anger	corrēggere, corrēssi, corrētto	correct
la colpa	fault, blame	corrēggersi di un difetto	correct a fault
il difetto	defect, fault	durare	last, hold out
la fede	faith	principiare	begin
i genitori	parents	rimproverare	reprove (rimprōvero)
il nipotino	little nephew	riuscire (<i>like</i> uscire)	succeed; non mi riesce I can't
la pace	peace	tornar conto	be of advantage
il rimprōvero	reproof	alcuno, -i, -a, -e	some, any
il segno	sign	altrettanto	as much more
allora	then	nessuno	no, not any, no one
dentro di	within, inside of	niēte	nothing
dovunque	wherever		
spesso	often		

EXERCISE

I

DAL GIORNALE DI GIGI

Tutte le volte che ho da fare qualche cosa di nuovo, dico subito dentro di me — Non mi riesce! — e trovo gran fatica a principiare. Ma appena ho cominciato, spesso mi accorgo che quello che mi pareva impossibile è possibilissimo, e che, qualche volta, è anche facile. Ho poco fede nelle mie forze, e voglio correggermi di questo difetto.

Tutti mi rimproverano perchè sono troppo facile a lasciarmi prendere dalla collera. Se tutti mi dicono questo, è segno che deve esser vero. Specialmente la mamma non mi dà mai pace coi suoi rimproveri. Ma la mamma la voglio contentarla, e ora che son grande mi voglio correggere.

Questa è una cosa che non la sa nessuno; ma io la so. Una gran parte di quelle carezze che faccio ai nonni e ai miei genitori,

le faccio perchè mi torna conto. Ma io non ci ho colpa. Mi ci devono avere avvezzato da piccino, e più di tutti mi ci deve avere avvezzato la povera zia Francesca, buon' anima, che mi diceva sempre — Se mi dai un bacio, ti do una chicca. — E io, allora, duravo a dargliene finchè ci eran chicche; ma quando le chicche della zia Francesca eran finite, finivano subito i baci del nipotino Gigi.

II

1. Whenever one has something new to do, one should not say "I can't do it." 2. No one could make me begin it. 3. Do not say it to any one. 4. In this book there is nothing good. 5. My parents gave my little brother three cents, and they gave me as many more. 6. Wherever you go, you will find no one who loves you as they do [like them]. 7. Everybody reproved him for being easily made angry. 8. Has any one spoken of it to you? No one. 9. However bad your defects may be, you can correct them. 10. Do you wish anything else? Nothing else. 11. I had already perceived it last year. 12. I was not speaking of this book, but of the new one. 13. Let us try to correct our faults. 14. Some praised him for accustoming himself to working; others reproved him for not correcting his faults. 15. They will never give you peace as long as you let yourself become angry easily. 16. But it is not your fault. 17. Have you any nuts? Let me give you some more. 18. No, thank you, but I should like some more coffee. 19. Come with us, gentlemen; have you noticed what time it is? 20. However difficult those lessons are, he will have them learned within a few days.

III

L' AUTOMOBILE

Il mio amico Giācomo ha comprato un' automōbile. Siccome non sa ancora troppo bene condurla, gli cāpita di quando in quando qualche malanno. La prima volta ch' è rimasto in panna, fu per mancanza di benzina, il che può succedere anche agli automobilisti

esperti. Un'altra volta una persona sul marciapiede gli fece segno che uno dei copertoni delle ruote era consumato. Era sgonfio. Immediatamente dopo, uno schianto come un tuono lo avvertì che un altro pneumatico era scoppiato. Si dovè fermare dieci minuti a pompare. Poi tirò via, sonando la cornetta da svegliare i Sette Dormienti. Poco dopo gli è successo un accidente, di quelli gravi. Fu così: Il mātice, che generalmente lo teneva giù, era stato alzato per la pioggia; perciò non poteva vedere bene come al solito. A un tratto s'accorse che un bambino gli traversava la strada proprio davanti. Cercando di evitarlo, dette il freno, ma il freno, per la prima volta, non andava. Allora cercò di sterzare più presto che poteva, ma nell'eccitamento girò un po' troppo il volante; e l'automobile, che stava in cima alla salita, s'voltò improvvisamente a destra, andando a sbattere su quel po' di muricciuolo all'orlo della strada, il quale cedette, e l'automobile slittò giù fino al fiume. Si fermò per fortuna proprio sull'orlo del torrente, e benchè tutti fossero spaventati da morire, non ci fu nessuna disgrazia.

LESSON XXXVI

ADVERBS. THE VERB *VALERE*

212. Position of Adverbs. *a.* Rules for position are not very strict, but most adverbs, except **non**, follow the verb.

Non lo trovò	He did not find it
Lo trovò immediatamente	He found it immediately

b. An adverb modifying an adjective, another adverb, or a phrase, usually precedes.

È troppo difficile	It is too difficult
Riuscì singolarmente bene	He succeeded singularly well
Viaggiando, specialmente con un compagno simpatico, se ne gode moltissimo	When one travels, especially with a congenial companion, one has much enjoyment

213. Comparison of Adverbs. Cf. 115, 116, 117.

214. Adverbs of Manner. *a.* These are almost all formed by adding **-mente** to the feminine of the adjective.

Premuroso 'eager,' **premurosamente** 'eagerly'

1. If the feminine of the adjective ends in **-le** or **-re**, the **-e** is dropped before **-mente**.

Facile, facilmente; **particolare, particolarmente**

2. Certain adverbs ending in **-one**, **-oni**, indicate the posture of the body.

Bocconi 'flat on one's face,' **carponi** 'on all fours'

b. A few adverbs end in **-i** or **-e**; as **altrimenti** 'otherwise,' **bene** 'well,' **volentieri** 'willingly,' etc.

c. Certain adjectives in **-o** are used as adverbs; as **alto** 'high,' **presto** 'quick,' **sicuro** 'sure,' **sūbito** 'sudden.'

1. Certain others, when so used, continue to agree with their noun. Such are **caro**, **grande**, **mezzo**, **solo**, **tutto**, **primo**, and **ultimo**.

Mezza morta	Half dead
Desidero due sole paia	I wish only two pairs
Questa catena l' ho pagata cara	I paid dear for this chain

2. **Bello** is used adverbially along with the past participle.

La roba bell' e fatta	Ready-made goods
Lo scorpione era bell' e morto	The scorpion was good and dead

3. Certain adverbial phrases are used adjectively to modify nouns.

Il piede di dietro	The hind foot
Un uomo per bene	An honorable man
Una cosa da nulla	A trifle

215. Adverbs of Affirmation. *a.* **Sì** is 'yes' in answer to a question.

Verrà stasera? Sì	Shall you come this evening? Yes
--------------------------	----------------------------------

b. Già is 'yes' in simple confirmation or agreement.

Piùve a diròtto. **Già** It is pouring. Yes, it is

1. In such confirmatory phrases as 'I think so,' 'I hope so,' 'so' is expressed by **lo** (cf. 100, e, 1).

Lo spero I hope so

c. Pure adds emphasis, and is equivalent to 'do,' 'pray do.'

Venga **pure** Do come

d. Pur troppo assents with regret, meaning 'only too much,' 'only too well,' 'yes, unfortunately.'

Lò conosce? Pur troppo Do you know him? Only too well

e. The following are emphatic affirmatives :

Altro!	By all means!
Appunto	Exactly
Davvero	It is true. Really?
Certo, sicuro, sì bene	Yes, indeed
Lò crèdo!	I believe you!

f. Ma sì affirms while contradicting.

Non è mai stato in Amērica, crèdo. Ma sì, più vòlte You have never been in America, I think. O yes, several times

g. Altro che not only answers in the affirmative, but adds something not implied in the question.

Non s'è visto ancora il mēdico? Altro che visto! C'è! Nothing has been seen yet of the doctor? Better than that! He's here!

Conosce quella signorina? Altro che conoscerla! È mia sorèlla! Do you know that young lady? Rather! She is my sister!

h. Signora sì and **Signor no** are equally admissible with **Sì Signora** and **No Signore**, though less usual.

216. Adverbs of Negation. *a.* **Non** immediately precedes the verb, or the object pronoun if there be one.

Non voglio	I will not, I refuse
Non lo trovò	He did not find it

b. **Non . . . che** means 'only,' 'but.'

Non ne desidero che due	I wish only two of them
---------------------------------------	--------------------------------

i. In the locutions **non . . . che**, **non . . . mai**, the verb stands between.

Non lo fece mai	He never did it
Non chiede che un po' di pane	She asks only a bit of bread

c. 'Neither . . . nor' is **nè . . . nè**.

Nè più nè meno	Neither more nor less
------------------------------	-----------------------

d. **No** is 'no' spoken in reply to a question, and is used instead of **non** in the phrases **o no** 'or not,' **se no** 'if not,' and sometimes in antithetical phrases, where a part only of the proposition is contradicted.

Verrò domani, o no ?	Shall I come to-morrow or not?
Se no , verrò domani l'altro	If not, I will come day after to-morrow
Prendo il bianco e il marrone, ma non il rosso	I'll take the white one and the brown, but not the red one
Vengo volentieri al teatro, ma in platea no	I will go to the theater gladly, but not in the orchestra seats

i. **Di** is required with the adverbs of affirmation or negation in such expressions as the following:

Crede di no	I think not
Rispose di sì	He said yes

e. For the negatives 'nothing,' 'nobody,' etc., cf. **210**.

i. **Niente** is often used adjectively in conversation to mean 'not any.'

Niente frutta, grazie	No fruit, thank you
------------------------------	---------------------

f. The principal adverbs of negation are

nò no, not

nòn not

nòn . . . mai, non . . . giammai never

nòn . . . più no longer, never again

nòn . . . punto, non . . . mica (*contradicting*) not at all

niènte affatto nothing at all, not at all

per niènte not in the least

tutt' altro by no means, on the contrary

Non lo farò più

Non lavora più

Suo zio **non** le legò **niènte affatto**

Ma **non c'è nulla**, proprio **nulla**

Pensa insomma di farlo? **Per niènte!**

Le dà **nòia** se apro la finestra?

Tutt' altro; ci fa caldo

I shall never do it again

He is no longer working

Her uncle left her nothing at all

But there is nothing there, nothing at all

You *are* thinking of doing it after all? Not for anything

Will it disturb you if I open the window? On the contrary, it is too warm here

1. **Mai** and **punto**, used absolutely and without verb, have negative value; but **mai** alone in comparative or interrogative sentences means 'ever.'

Le piace questo paesaggio? **Punto**

Il migliore ch'io abbia **mai** visto

Ha **mai** visitato la Cina? **Mai**

Do you like this view? Not at all

The best I ever saw

Have you **ever** visited China? **Never**

217. Adverbs of Place. a. 'Here,' 'there,' etc., when at all emphatic, are expressed by the following adverbs, which are to be carefully distinguished according to whether the place indicated is near the speaker, near the person spoken to, or remote from either.

1. **Near the speaker**: **qua** means 'here,' 'here in this room or place'; **qui** means 'here by me'; **quaggiù**, **quassù**, mean respectively 'down here,' 'up here.'

2. Near the person addressed: *costì, costà*, 'there where you are'; *costaggiù* 'down there where you are'; *costassù* 'up there where you are.'

3. Remote from either: *là, colà, lì, ivi, quivi*, 'there' (*là* and *colà* being further removed than *lì*); *laggiù* 'down there' and *lassù* 'up there'; *indi, quindi*, 'thence.'

4. Special uses: *di qua, quaggiù*, mean 'here below,' 'on this earth'; *di là, costà, quassù*, 'above,' 'in the other world.'

Essere più di là che di qua

To be more **dead** than **alive**

Di lì a due giorni

Two days **from then**

Stare lì lì per far una cosa

To be on the **very point** of doing
a thing

Essere in là cogli anni

To be **well on** in years

b. When not emphatic, or when referring to a place already mentioned, 'here,' 'there,' and 'thence' are expressed respectively by *ci, vi, ne* (cf. 126).

1. Special uses of *ci*. *Ci* is used very often with apparent redundancy, as if to reinforce or enrich the meaning of the verb.

Non ci sento niente

I hear nothing

Ci hq due mila lire

I have two thousand lire (in the
house, on my person)

Iddio c'è

God is

c. 'Here is,' 'there is,' when demonstrative, are translated by *ecco* (cf. 100, *a*); when not demonstrative, by *c'è, ci sono, v'è, vi sono*. *Ecco* answers 'where?' *c'è* etc., 'what?'

Ecco una farfalla!

There is a butterfly

Ci sono tanti olivi sulle colline

There are many olive-trees on the
hillsides

d. *Altròve, altronde*, are adverbs of place meaning 'elsewhere.'

e. *Dove* and *quando* are used correlatively: *dove . . . dove* meaning 'here . . . there,' and *quando . . . quando* 'now . . . now.'

218. Adverbs of Quantity. a. Cf. 160.

b. Troppo is followed by **da** (or **per**) to mean 'too much . . . to.'

È **troppo** buono **da** farlo He is **too** kind to do it

1. **Troppo** followed by **più** has the meaning of **molto**.

È **troppo** più difficile che non crede It is **much** more difficult than you think

c. 'The more . . . the more' is translated by **più . . . e più**.

Più **vò** innanzi cogli anni **e più** amo **The older** I grow **the more** I love
i giòvani the young

219. Lists of Adverbs and Adverbial Phrases. (Cf. 227.)**a. Adverbs of Manner.**

Adagio	With ease, slowly, softly
Ad alta voce	Aloud
All' aperto, al fresco	In the open
A bell' agio	At ease, conveniently, comfortably
A braccetto	Arm in arm
Alla buona	In a familiar way, after a fashion
Alla carlona	Carelessly
A suo comodo	At one's convenience
Alla deriva	Adrift, to leeward
Affatto	Entirely, at all (<i>usually negative</i>)
A galla	Afloat
A gara	In competition
All' improvviso	Unexpectedly
Alla lunga	Long drawn out
A lutto	In mourning
Alla macchia	In secret
A malincuore	Against one's will
Alla meglio	For the best, as best one can
Alla peggio	The worst possible, very badly
Al possibile	The most possible
A quattr' occhi	Tête-à-tête
Alla rinfusa	Helter-skelter; abundantly
A rovescio	Upside down, wrong end to

Alla sfuggita	On the fly, at a glance
Al sōlito, come al sōlito	As usual
A soquadro	Topsy-turvy
Alla stracca	Listlessly, unwillingly
Alla svelta	Cursorily, hastily
Alla svogliata	Heedlessly, indifferently
All' ūltimo	At last
A un tratto	Suddenly, at once
A vicenda	In turn; mutually
Da capo	Over again
Da senno	In earnest
Di nascosto	Secretly
Di nuovo	Again
Del resto	For the rest, in other respects
Di sōlito	As a rule
Del tutto	Altogether
Forse	Perhaps
In complesso	Everything considered
Indarno	In vain
Infatti	In fact
In fine	In short
In fretta	In haste
In ogni caso	Anyway, in any case
In pūbblico	In public
In tanto	After all, meanwhile
In vano	In vain
Piano	Softly, gently, slowly
Per altro	In other respects, for that matter
Per dispetto	For spite
Senz' altro	Without delay; purely and simply
Senza dubbio	Without doubt
Sì e no	Approximately
Sotto sopra	Upside down, helter-skelter
Sul serio	Seriously, in good earnest
Suo malgrado	In spite of him
Bocconi	Flat on one's face
Carponi	On all fours
Ciondoloni	Dangling

In ginocchioni	On one's knees
Penzoloni	Hanging
Ruzzoloni	Head over heels
Tastoni	Gropingly, feeling one's way

b. Adverbs of Place.

Abbasso	Downstairs, down
Accanto	Next, next door
Al di dentro	Inside
Al di fuori	Outside
A dritto	Straight ahead
All' indietro	Backward
All' in giù	Downward
All' in su	Upward
Da ciascuna parte	On each side
Dappertutto	Everywhere
Davanti	Ahead, in front
Di contro } Di faccia }	Opposite
Di dentro	Inside
Difilato	Straight ahead without stopping
Diritto	Straight ahead
Di fuori	Outside
Di là	On that side, that way
Di qua	On this side, this way
Di qua e di là	On both sides
Di sopra	Upstairs, above
Di sotto	Below, down
Fin dove?	How far?
Fuori di porta	Outside the walls
Giù	Down, below
In giù	Downward
Innanzi	Ahead
In su	Upward
Intorno	Around
Per ogni dove	Everywhere
Qua e là	Here and there

Su	Up, above, upstairs
Su e giù	Up and down
Su per giù	Roughly, approximately

c. Adverbs of Time.

Alla fine	At last
A giorni	At times
Al giorno d'oggi	Nowadays
A momenti	In a moment, presently
Appena	No sooner, hardly
A tempo	On time
A volte	At times, sometimes
Da mane a sera	From morning till night
Da oggi in poi	Henceforth, from now on
Da qui innanzi	
D'ora innanzi	
Da qui ad un mese	A month from now
Da un momento all'altro	At any moment
Da un pezzo	For some time past
Dianzi	Before, a little while ago
Di buon'ora	Early
Di quando in quando	Now and then
Di rado	Seldom
Di recente	Recently
Delle volte	Sometimes
Fino a quando?	Until when?
Fin dal principio	From the first
Fra breve	In a little while
Fra giorni	In a few days
Fra quanto?	How soon?
In giornata	In the course of the day
In men che non si dice	In no time
In oggi	Nowadays
In principio	At first
In quel mentre, in questo mentre	In the meanwhile
In seguito	Afterwards, in the future
In un batter d'occhio	In a flash
Nel frattempo	Meanwhile

Øgni quanto?	How often?
Øgni tanto	Every so often
Ør ora	Just now
Per ora	For the present
Per tempo	Early
Più qua	Later
Poc' anzi	A little while ago
Prima o poi	Sooner or later
Quanto prima	As soon as possible
Su due piedi	Then and there, on the instant
Sull' ùltimo	At the last moment
Talvolta	Sometimes
Tempo fa	A while ago
Tempo indietro	Before this, in the past, some time ago
Una volta ogni tanto	Once every so often

220. The Verb *valere* 'be worth.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *valere, valendo, valgo, varrò, valsei, valuto or valso*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

valgo	valiamo, valghiamo
vali	valete
vale	vãlgono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

valga (vaglia)	valghiamo (vogliamo)
valga (vaglia)	valghiate (vagliate)
valga (vaglia)	vãlgano (vagliano)

VOCABULARY

il *bøia* executioner

Ciro Cyrus

la *fedeltà* fidelity

Francesco Francis

l' *ingegno* *m.* talent

il *marito* husband

il *mãrtire* martyr

la *mãschera* mask

il *møstro* monster

scellerato criminal, wicked

buttare throw away

giurare swear

impiccare hang

intravedere glimpse

salvare save

sbarazzare rid, disembarass

tradire betray

valersi di avail oneself of

abbasso down, downstairs

alla fine at last

all' improvviso suddenly, unexpectedly

a lutto in mourning	di nuovo again, once more
a momenti in a moment	di rado seldom
a quattr'occhi tête-à-tête	di recente recently
a tempo on time	fin dal principio from the beginning
bocconi flat on one's face	fin dove? how far?
carponi on all fours	ginocchioni on one's knees
da mane a sera from morning till night	infatti in fact
dappertutto everywhere	in ogni caso in any case
di nascosto secretly	quanto prima as soon as possible
	sul serio seriously

EXERCISE

I

CIRO MENOTTI

Ecco un' altra vittima illustre della tirannia straniera, un altro martire, tradito, imprigionato e impiccato da quel ridicolo mostro che fu Francesco IV, duca di Modena. La sua elevata posizione sociale, il suo ingegno, il suo cuore, l' essere marito e padre, nulla gli valse per salvarlo. Conoscendo quanto fosse ambizioso quel Duca scellerato, gli fece intravedere la possibilità, se si fosse messo alla testa del movimento rivoluzionario, di diventar lui il Re della nuova Italia. E il Duca si mise alla testa dei rivoluzionari modenesi e giurò fedeltà. Ma questo forse egli fece per conoscer meglio gli uomini dei quali avrebbe dovuto sbarazzarsi. Infatti, colto il momento opportuno, buttò via la maschera, li fece tutti arrestare, e nel medesimo tempo scrisse al Governatore austriaco di Reggio: *Mandatemi il boia.*

II

1. Duke Francis availed himself of the mask of fidelity, in order to rid himself of the revolutionists. 2. The wicked man sought secretly, from morning till night, to rid himself of them. 3. At last, suddenly, he had them taken, and had the executioner come

as soon as possible. 4. He had the martyrs of Italian independence hanged, and many Italian women dressed once more in mourning. 5. After the battle the soldiers were found not seldom on their knees, on all fours, or flat on their faces. 6. One easily sees that you have studied seriously. 7. Was Duke Francis of Modena born in 1779? Yes. 8. Here it is said that Prince Louis is a monster; what do they say of him up there where you are? 9. How far shall we follow this road before turning to the left? 10. In any case we must start early, because it has rained recently. 11. Are you too tired to accompany me? On the contrary, I should like to go. 12. *Ciro Menotti* died a martyr. Yes. 13. Do you like Mrs. C.? Not at all. She is not at all congenial. 14. Shall we take a walk in the public gardens? By all means!

LESSON XXXVII

PREPOSITIONS

221. The Simple Prepositions. *a*. The simple prepositions *a*, *con*, *da*, *di*, *in*, and *per* should as a rule be repeated before every noun or pronoun which they govern.

Ne ha dato *a* Giovanni e *a* Luigi
Parlarono *di* te e *di* me

He gave some to John and Louis
They spoke of you and me

b. The prepositions *contro*, *dentro*, *dopo*, *oltre*, *presso*, *senza*, *sopra*, *sotto*, *su*, *verso*, and sometimes *fra*, take *di* before a personal pronoun.

Non parta *senza di* me
Arrivai *dopo di* lui

Do not leave without me
I arrived after him

222. Compound Prepositions. The great majority of Italian prepositions are compound, being composed usually of an

adverb and a preposition, but sometimes of two prepositions together : **fuori di** 'outside,' **intorno a** 'around.'

Su per le vie Up and down the streets
Al di dentro Inside

a. The prepositions compounded with **a**, when governing a pronoun, drop **a**; the pronoun (cf. 136, **a**) becomes conjunctive in the dative case.

Mi vidi innanzi una sentinella (*not vidi innanzi a me*) I saw in front of me a sentinel
Gli andai incontro (*not incontro a lui*) I went to meet him
 Due battaglioni **gli** vengono sopra Two battalions came upon him
 Cadēvagli poco discosto Torquato Torquato fell not far from him
 Ci fa segno di andargli dietro He makes a sign to us to follow him

b. **Lungi**, **lontano**, **discosto**, meaning 'far,' which usually are compounded with **da**, take **di** before an adverb.

Lungi di qui Far from here
Lontano di là Far from there
 But
Lontano dal centro Far from the center

223. The Preposition with Adjectives. **a.** Many adjectives take **di** before a noun of material, characteristic, etc.

Una catinella piena **d'** acqua A basin full of water
 I monti neri **di** pini The mountains black with pines
 Il sentiero ingombro **di** sassi The path cumbered with stones

Others, which would not take 'of' in English, are

abbondante (di) abundant (in) **povero (di)** poor (in)
ammalato (di) ill (with) **ricco (di)** rich (in)
contento } (di) contented (with) **soddisfatto (di)** satisfied (with)
pago } **vestito (di)** clothed (in)

b. Many, such as *fedele* 'loyal,' *pericoloso* 'dangerous,' *pronto* 'ready,' *simile* 'similar,' *utile* 'useful,' take *a*, as their English equivalents 'to.'

c. A few, such as *alieno* 'foreign,' 'averse (to),' *diverso* 'different (from),' *indipendente* 'independent (of),' take *da*.

224. The Preposition with Verbs. *a.* For the use of prepositions before infinitives, cf. 174.

b. Many verbs which in English are transitive, in Italian require a preposition before their object, and the reverse is equally true. Those verbs which take *a* take the conjunctive in the dative; when the object is a thing, the pronoun is *ci*. *Ne* is used as the pronoun object of the verbs that take *di*.

Ubbidisce <i>al</i> padre	She obeys her father
Il principe successe <i>al</i> re	The prince succeeded the king
Giocare <i>alla</i> pallacorda	To play tennis
Se <i>ne</i> accorse subito	He perceived it immediately
<i>Ci</i> devo rinunciare	I must give it up
Cambierà <i>d'</i> opinione	He will change his mind
Domandi <i>a</i> Margherita	Ask Margaret
Lo cerco	I am looking <i>for</i> it
La guardano	They are looking <i>at</i> her
Ascoltano la musica	They are listening <i>to</i> the music
Non lo ammette	It does not admit <i>of</i> it
Ho sognato <i>te</i>	I dreamed <i>of</i> you

1. Sometimes the preposition is merely different.

Domandano <i>di</i> Lei	They are asking <i>for</i> you
Pensare <i>a</i> una cosa	To think <i>of</i> a thing
<i>Ci</i> penso	I am thinking <i>of</i> it
Ridere <i>di</i> una cosa	To laugh <i>at</i> a thing
<i>Ne</i> ridivano tanto	They laughed <i>at</i> it a great deal

225. Compound Nouns. English compound nouns are usually translated by means of a prepositional phrase.

a. If the modifying member of the compound be merely descriptive, the preposition is **di**, sometimes **a**.

biglietto di vīṣita	visiting-card
gallerīa di cuadri	picture-gallery
libro di scuōla	schoolbook
libro di tēsto	textbook
a pṛova di bōmba	bomb-proof
orolōgio a ṣveglia	alarm clock
schioppo a due canne	double-barreled gun

b. If it indicates means, the preposition is **a**.

barca a vēla	sailboat
mācchina a vapōre	steam-engine

c. If it indicates purpose, the preposition is **da**.

cani da caccia	hunting-dogs
tazza da caffè. (But 'tazza di caffè' is 'cup of coffee')	coffee-cup
mācchina da cucire	sewing-machine
carta da lēttēre	letter-paper
servizio da tè	tea-service

d. For the formation and pluralizing of Italian compound nouns, cf. 181.

226. List of Prepositions. **a.** English-Italian.

about, approximately	circa, pṛesso a pōco
about, around	intōrno a, dintōrno a, attōrno a, per
about, concerning	di
above	sopra
according to	secondo
across	a traverso
after	dopo ; <i>before an infinitive</i> dopo di
against	contra, contro
along	lungo
among	fra, tra
as far as	fino a, sino a

- as for *per*, in quanto a
 as to *in riguardo a*, *in rispetto a*
 at *a*
 at the rate of *a ragione di*
 because of *a causa di*, *a motivo di*, *per motivo di*, *a ragione di*
 before, in front of *davanti a*, *innanzi*
 before (*time*) *prima di*, *innanzi*
 behind *dietro*
 below, beneath *sotto*
 beside, besides, in addition to *oltre (a or di)*
 beside, next to *accanto a*
 between *fra*, *tra*
 beyond *oltre*, *al di là di*, *di là da*
 by (*agent*) *da*
 by (*instrument or means*) *di*
 by, beside *accanto a*
 by dint of *a forza di*
 by means of *per mezzo di*
 during *durante*
 except *eccetto*, *fuori di*, *tranne*
 for *per*
 for (*with measure of time*) *da*
 from *da*
 from (*used of abstract things*, 'from that time,' 'from the beginning')
fin da
 in *in*; *after a superlative di or fra*
 inside of *dentro di*
 instead of *invece di*
 in the midst of *in mezzo a*
 into *in*
 near *vicino a*, *presso a*
 of *di*
 on *su (sur)*, *sopra*
 on this side of *al di qua di*
 on the other side of *al di là di*
 opposite to *dirimpetto a*, *in faccia a*
 outside of *fuori di*
 over *sopra*

through **per, attraverso**
 to a; *before the name of a country in; before that of a person da, a*
 toward **verso**
 under **sotto**
 until **fino a, sino a**
 with **con**
 within, inside of **dentro (di or a)**
 within, in the course of (*time*) **fra**
 without **senza**
 without, outside of **fuori di**

b. Italian-English.

a, ad at, to
 a **benefizio di** for the benefit of
 a **causa di** because of
 accanto a } beside, next to
 accanto a }
 addosso a on, on top of, on the back of
 a **dispetto di** in spite of
 ad **onore di** in honor of
 ad **onta di** in spite of
 a **favore di** in favor of
 a **forza di** by dint of
 al **di là di** beyond
 al **di qua di** on this side of
 allato a by the side of
 all' **infuori di** outside of
 a **malgrado di** notwithstanding
 appetto a facing, opposite
 appiè **di** at the foot of
 a **pro di** to the advantage of
 a **ragione di** because of; at the rate of
 attorno a around, round about
 attraverso a across, through
 con with
 contra, **contro (a or di)** against
 da by, from
 davanti a before, in front of

- dentro a (*or di*) within, inside of
 di of
 dietro (a *or di*) behind
 di là da on the other side of
 dinanzi a in front of
 dintorno a around
 di qua da on this side of
 dirimpetto a opposite, facing
 discosto a away from
 dopo, dopo di after
 durante during
 eccetto except
 entro a within (*time*)
 fin da from (*time*)
 fino a until, up to
 fra between, among; within (*time*)
 fuori di outside of
 giusta according to, conformably to
 in in, into
 in cambio di in exchange for
 in capo a (*di*) at the end of, at the head of
 in cima a at the summit of
 incontro a against
 in faccia a opposite, facing
 in fondo a at the end of, at the back of, at the bottom of
 in luogo di instead of
 in mezzo a in the midst of
 innanzi a in front of
 in quanto a as to
 in riguardo a } with respect to
 in rispetto a }
 insieme a (*con*) together with
 intorno a around
 invece di instead of
 lontano da (*di*) far from
 lungi da (*di*) far from
 lungo along
 malgrado in spite of

mediante by means of	secondo according to
mercè thanks to	senza without
oltre a beyond	sino a up to
per through, for	sopra (a) above
per mezzo di by means of	sotto (a) below
per motivo di because of	su (sur) on
presso a near	tra between, among
prima di before (<i>time</i>)	tranne except
raşente a close to, grazing	verso towards
salvo except	vicino a near

227. Idiomatic Use of Prepositions. The correct use of prepositions is one of the most delicate and difficult things in the study of any foreign language. The uses of a given preposition overlap, and it is not easy to determine the limits of each. 'To' and 'from,' for example, may each be translated variously, according to the shade of meaning, by **a**, **di**, or **da**. No rules can be formulated in this matter, practice and observation being the only guides. A careful reading and rereading of the examples assembled below will, however, show which is the preposition to be used in a good many typical cases.

a. Phrases with **a**, meaning 'at,' 'by,' 'from,' 'in,' 'of,' 'on,' 'to,' 'with,' 'within.'

A bocca aperta	With open mouth
A bordo	On board
Al buio	In the dark
A capo chino	With bowed head
A che cosa pensa?	Of what are you thinking?
Al chiaro di luna	By moonlight
A contanti	In cash
A cõttimo	By the piece, piecework
A danaro sonante	In cash
Alla destra, alla sinistra	To the right, to the left
A due per due	Two by two

A due per volta	Two at a time
A giornata	By the day
Alla giornata, vivere	To live from day to day, from hand to mouth
All' ingrosso	At wholesale
A macchina	By machine
A mano	By hand
Al mare	By the sea
A mente	By heart
A migliaia	By thousands
A minuto	At retail
A modo suo	In one's own way
A nolo, prēndere <i>or</i> dare	To rent <i>or</i> let
A olio	In oils
A ora	By the hour
A orecchio	By ear
Alla pioggia	In the rain
A portata di mano	Within reach of one's hand
A posta	On purpose
A che pro?	To what end?
Al sole	In the sun
A volo	On the wing
A volta di corriere	By return mail
La morte lo rapiva alla famiglia	Death took him from his family
La riconosco alla voce, al color dei capelli	I recognize her by her voice, by the color of her hair
L'ho sentito dire a degli altri	I have heard it said by others
Ai tempi di cui parlo	At the time of which I am speaking
La minestra sembra buona all'odore	The soup seems good by the odor of it

b. Phrases with **da**, meaning 'as,' 'at,' 'at the house of,' 'by,' 'characteristic of,' 'for,' 'from,' 'like,' 'on,' 'such as to,' 'to,' or 'with.'

Da padre	Like a father
Dalla parte nostra	On our side
Lēttre da casa	Letters from home

Materiale da costruzione	Construction materials
Vini da pasto	Table wines
Ha una famiglia da mantenere	He has a family to maintain
Vede il bambino dai capelli ricciuti?	Do you see the child with curly hair?
Dimora da nostro cugino	He lives at our cousin's
Passi dalla posta	Stop at the post office
Non vuol essere da meno degli altri	He does not wish to be inferior to others
Si crede da più degli altri	He thinks himself superior to others
La chiesa ha tutto da guadagnare, nulla da perdere	The church has everything to gain and nothing to lose
Non dipende da lui	It does not depend on him
Fa da interprete	He acts as interpreter
Abbiamo sostenuto da soli una dura guerra	We have carried on by ourselves a hard war
Non è da dimenticare	It is not to be forgotten
È organizzato in modo da stimolare le energie individuali	It is organized in a manner to stimulate individual efforts
Non sembra cosa da vergognarsi	It does not seem to be a thing to be ashamed of
Lo guardano dall' alto in basso	They look down on him
Va da sé	It goes without saying
Non mi sento da tanto	I do not feel equal to so much
Non è da tutti	Not every one is capable of it
Dei francobolli da dieci centesimi	Some ten-centime postage stamps

c. Phrases with **di**, meaning 'at,' 'by,' 'from,' 'in,' 'of,' 'to,' or 'with.'

Di corsa	At a run, on the run
Di giorno, di notte	By day, by night
Di giorno in giorno	From day to day
D' estate	In summer
Di gennaio	In January
Fuori d' uso	Out of date
Più lungo di due metri	Longer by two meters
Prēndere di mira	To take aim at
Di seconda mano	At second hand

La strada di Firēnze	The road to Florence
Rideva di giōia	She laughed for joy
Fu punito di mōrte	He was punished with death
Che facesti delle fōrbici?	What did you do with the scissors?

d. Phrases with **in**, **per**, and **su**.

In capelli	Bare-headed
In casa	At home
In chiesa	To church
In mare	At sea
In punta di pièdi	On tiptoe
Andare in Francia	To go to France
Tenere in poco conto	To consider of small importance
Per mare, per terra	By land, by sea
Per la posta	By mail
Per la strada	In the street, on the way
Lo sceglie per amico	He chooses him as a friend
Sui libri, sui giornali	In books, in the newspapers
Trē mētri su sei	Three meters by six
Su misura	To order
Due su trē	Two out of three
La cāmera guarda sul davanti	The room is on the front

1. Notice that 'to' before the name of a person is **da** (or **a**); before that of a country, **in**; and before that of any other place, **a**.

Va **da** Marīa, **in** Italia, **alla** posta He goes **to** **Mary's**, to Italy, to the post-office

Va **a** Marīa He goes **to** **Mary**

2. 'From,' with a word referring to a place, is **di** when the limits of the place are more strictly conceived, otherwise **da**. If the article is present, **da** is required.

Esce di chiesa	He is coming out of church
Vengo da chiesa	I am coming from church
Viene di Firēnze	He comes from Florence (from within the very walls)
Viene da Firēnze	He comes from Florence, or its vicinity

Morì **di** fame, **dalla** fame He died **from** hunger
Viene **di** Germania *or* **da** Germania He comes from Germany

But

Viene **dall'** Alta Bretagna He comes from Upper Brittany
(because the modifying word requires the article, and the article requires **da**).

VOCABULARY

l' ambizione <i>f.</i> ambition	addosso a on the back of, on the top of
Aristōtile Aristotle	dentro di within, inside of
il duomo cathedral	dietro a behind
la gōndola gondola	di là da beyond, on the other side of
il lago lake	dinanzi a before, in front of
l' operaio <i>m.</i> workman	di qua da on this side of
la parte side, share	discosto a away from
il piattino da tazza saucer	fin da from (time)
il remo oar	fino a up to, until
la sarta dressmaker	in faccia a opposite
la scala a chiōcciola winding stair	in fondo a at the back of, at the bottom of, at the end of
la scala a piuqli ladder	in mezzo a in the middle of
lo spedale hospital	lontano da far from
il tè tea	
l' unità <i>f.</i> union, unity	
adriatico Adriatic	a capo chino with bowed head
drammatico dramatic	a contanti in cash
fino fine	a cōttimo by the piece
occidentale western, west	a giornata by the day
pieno full	a mano by hand
cadere, cadrò, caddi, caduto fall	al mare by the sea
rīdere, risi, riso laugh	di seconda mano at second hand
salire, salgo (salghiamo), salii <i>or</i>	in mare at sea
salsi, salito climb, go up	indarno in vain

EXERCISE

I

1. Bring me a teacup, child, and two saucers. 2. They both work: she has a sewing-machine and works at home, and he works by the day at the baker's. 3. The Spaniard was coming behind us, with his head bowed. 4. See how fine this lace is! It is made by hand. 5. They are all against me. 6. Where is the cathedral? We were near it just now. Now we are two miles away from it. 7. Are we far from the walls? No, the walls are not far from here. 8. They will not be able to do without us. 9. At first the Italians dreamed in vain of independence and unity. 10. You will arrive after us. 11. His theme was the dramatic unities of Aristotle. 12. Winding stairs are easier to climb than ladders. 13. Here there is nothing to sell. 14. Sailboats, steamboats and rowboats were following the gondolas. 15. Who are the gentleman with the white hair and the lady with the blue eyes? 16. The soldiers were falling on top of us. 17. On which side of the lake do you live? 18. We live on the other side of the lake. 19. I prefer to live on this side of it. 20. Are you acquainted with the hospital for children? Our house is opposite it. 21. How long shall you stay? From the first of April to the eleventh of May. 22. The dress-maker is in the middle of the city, at the end of Via Roma. 23. By dint of money one can do much.

II

1. They live outside the gates. I thought they lived inside. 2. As we were coming out of church, they passed us, coming from home. 3. We spent two months by the sea, near one of the Adriatic ports. 4. That is a thing to remember. 5. We were not able to have the criminal imprisoned. 6. I bought these books at second hand; I shall pay for them to-morrow in cash. 7. Wait for us inside the church. 8. Children obey their parents. 9. Come

to our house, all of you, at twenty minutes before five. 10. He spoke these terrible words before her and me. 11. Do not look at these pictures; they are ugly. 12. He will change his mind and renounce his ambitions. 13. Instead of sending it to us now, he will bring it to us when he comes to Florence. 14. Those workmen are working by the piece. 15. Look for us outside the cathedral, on the west side. 16. The lakes are full of water at this season. 17. The prisoner stood before him. 18. You cannot do without it. 19. They were laughing at us. 20. We were two weeks at sea. 21. I have received by mail some letters from home. 22. Some ladies are here who are asking for you. 23. You cannot give it up. 24. We always spend a month by the sea in summer.

DIALOGO

DALLA MODISTA

— Vuol accompagnarmi dalla modista?

— Volentieri. Dove sta?

— Vicino, a due passi. Nella prima via a destra, numero 20.

— Già vedo il suo cartello: *Sorelle Chiarini. Cappelli da Signore*. Entriamo.

— Buon giorno, Signore. Che cosa mi comandano?

— Io non voglio niente, ma questa signora desidera un cappello da viaggio. Non è pratica di Firenze e le ho detto che Lei la servirà bene.

— Grazie, Signora. Proverò di meritare la Sua raccomandazione.

— Ci faccia vedere dei figurini.

— Siamo a mezza stagione. Lo desidera di paglia o di feltro?

— Di feltro, di forma piccola.

— Le mostrerò prima dei fondini. Eccone uno. Proviamolo.

— Non mi piace. La tesa è troppo larga e il capino troppo tondo. Mi stringe alla fronte, mi darà mal di testa.

— Questo Le starebbe bene, mi pare.

— Mi sta bene, davvero. Solo sarebbe un po' sfacciato per il colore. Per il viaggio ci vuole qualcosa di più modesto.

— Ecco la stessa forma di un colore più scuro.

— Benissimo. E la guarnizione?

— Per guarnizione, Signora, io direi un fiocco di nastro di seta nera, ovvero una piccola fantasia. Con questa forma non sta bene la piuma.

— Preferisco il fiocco. Quando sarà finito?

— Per domani.

— Vabbene. Badi di non mancare, io parto alle sette della mattina seguente.

— Non abbia paura. L'avrà senza fallo. A rivederla, Signora.

LESSON XXXVIII

AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES

228. Augmentatives and Diminutives. Terminations modifying the meaning of nouns and adjectives are very common in Italian, and with nouns may take the place of the corresponding adjective at the will of the speaker, unless the idea of size is to be emphasized. These terminations are augmentative or diminutive, caressing or disparaging, most diminutives combining with the idea of small size that of affection or disparagement.

a. The most important augmentatives are *-one*, *-a*, *-otto*, and *-occio*.

1. *-One* means 'very large,' and it may be masculine even when added to a feminine noun; but it has a feminine form in adjectives,

abstract nouns, and those describing persons as to age or family relationship.

Una donna ; un donnone (<i>burl.</i>)	A woman; an enormous woman
Un uomo ; un omone	A man; a large man
Una strada ; uno stradone	A road; a highway
Una figliuola ; una figliuolona	A little daughter; a tall, or overgrown, little daughter
Una vecchia ; una vecchiona	An old woman; a very tall old woman

2. **-Otto, -occio**, mean 'rather large' with nouns, and with adjectives modify the meaning like 'rather.' With names of animals, **-otto** is a diminutive meaning the young of the species.

Una casa ; un casotto	A house; a somewhat large house
Grasso ; grassotto <i>or</i> grassoccio	Fat; plump
La tigre ; il tigrotto	The tiger; the tiger's cub

b. The most important diminutives are **-ino** (**-cino, -icino, -olino**), meaning diminutiveness, charm, and affection; **-etto** and **-ello** (**-cello, -erello, -icello**), implying compassion or indulgence in addition to the idea of small size; **-uccio, -uzzo, -uzzolo, -uolo** (**-olo**), which imply endearment when applied to persons and disparagement when applied to things; and **-accio, -astro, and -azzo**, which are terms of unqualified dislike and disparagement.

La mano ; la manina	The hand; the pretty little hand
La povera ; la poverina	The poor woman; the poor dear woman, the poor thing
La casa ; la casuccia	The house; the poor little house
La viola ; il violino	The viol; the violin
Il figlio ; il figliuolo	The son; the young son
Cantare ; cantarellare	To sing; to warble
Bello ; bellino	Beautiful; pretty
Caro ; carino	Dear; charming
Un mēdico ; un medicastro	A doctor; a poor, unskillful doctor

Il cavallo ; il cavallaccio	The horse ; the bad-tempered, wretched horse
L' āsino ; l' asinello	The donkey ; the small, or young, donkey

229. Rules of Formation. These terminations cannot be used indiscriminately, but must be chosen in accordance with precedent and euphony. The ear is a sufficient guide in this matter to the Italian, but the foreigner must use great discretion and will find it safest to confine himself to forms he has met with.

a. If the normal ending of a word chance to be one of these terminations, then not that one but some other must be chosen as diminutive or augmentative.

Il ruscello ; il ruscelletto	The brook ; the small brook
L' uccello ; l' uccellino	The bird ; the young bird
La cugina ; la cuginetta	The cousin ; the attractive little cousin

b. If the word end in **-one**, the terminations **-one**, **-ino**, and **-ello** become respectively **-cione**, **-cino**, and **-cello**.

Il bastone ; il bastoncione	The stick ; the great stick
Il padrone ; il padroncino	The master ; the young master
Il violone ; il violoncello	The bass viol ; the violoncello

c. These terminations may be combined.

Un pochino, un pochettino	A little bit
Un figliuolo ; un figliolino	A little son ; a dear little son

d. The augmentative or diminutive sometimes loses its character of termination, and the modification becomes a permanent new word.

L' acqua ; l' acquerello	Water ; the water-color
La suora ; la sorella	The nun ; the sister
Il frate ; il fratello	The friar ; the brother
Il cavallo ; il cavalletto	The horse ; the saw-horse or easel

VOCABULARY

il bastone	cane, stick	grasso	fat
il cane	dog	ignorante	ignorant
la facoltà	division of university	sapiente	wise, sapient
il salotto	sitting-room	annoverare	enumerate, count
la scala	stairs	porgere, porsi, porto	hold out
lo scalino	step of stair	presumere, presunsi, presunto	assume
Tommaso	Thomas	oramai	now, in view of this
l' università	f. university	in salvo	in safety

EXERCISE

I

1. In Italia lo studio della medicina dura sei anni; a New York, tre o, al più, quattro. 2. Quali sapientoni di medici devono uscire dalle università americane! 3. Ma in Italia i due primi anni della Facoltà medica sono esclusivamente dedicati allo studio delle scienze naturali. 4. Nelle università americane, invece, si presume che il giovane che vuole entrare in una Facoltà di medicina abbia già di queste materie quelle nozioni che oramai fanno quasi parte della cultura generale. 5. In Italia non trovate una cittaduzza di diecimila abitanti che non abbia l'onore di annoverare entro le sue mura qualche dozzina di avvocantucci e di medicastri. 6. La famiglia reale ha dovuto fuggire, per mettere in salvo i principini. 7. Un grand' artista fiorentino, il quale morì giovane, è conosciuto ai pōsteri sotto il nome di Masaccio, cioè, Cattivo Tommaso! 8. Non si può confrontare la mia casuccia con quel palazzone! 9. Come sta, amico mio? Benone! 10. I canini giuocano coi gattini. 11. Ho comprato qualche cosuccia per la bambina.

II

1. As one enters the hall, there is a stairway which leads upstairs to the drawing-room, with a sitting-room next it. 2. The steps of the stairs are rather high. 3. The young man has a cane, and

his little brother has a little cane. 4. Her father is fat, and she is already plump. 5. We shall take the big dog with us, and leave the puppies at home. 6. Unskillful poets are not to be praised. 7. The little peasant boy carries a great stick. 8. These horrid big books are heavy to carry. 9. She has small hands. 10. My little son, you will one day be a big man like me. 11. We live near the great gate. 12. The baby put out its little hands to us. 13. In the Italian universities are found many students.

DIALOGO

SI FANNO LE COMPRE

— Vuol venire con me fino al centro? Ho tante commissioni da fare.

— Volentieri.

— Strada facendo, ci fermeremo dal gioielliere, dove ho lasciato il mio orologio per farlo riparare. Non va bene. Un giorno va troppo avanti, un altro giorno troppo indietro. Non va mai giusto. In questo momento fa cinque minuti il giorno.

— Anch' io voglio andarci. Devo lasciare il mio fermaglio da raccomandare. Non si chiude bene, e la pietra non è incassata a dovere.

— Poi andremo dal merciaio, dove ho bisogno di comprare tante cosine. Prima vorrei un metro di seta uguale a questo campione. Poi occorre tutta la roba da cucire, per un astuccio da viaggio che voglio preparare per un' amica. Comprerò un paio di forbicini, degli aghi di diverse grossezze, dei rocchetti di cotone e di seta, un ditale, e degli spilli e dei ganci. È tanto comodo viaggiando di poter trovare tutto l' occorrente in caso di bisogno.

— Al ritorno passiamo dal cartolaio, per prendere della carta protocollo della quale mi servo per copiare.

— Io ho bisogno dell' inchiostro per la penna a serbatoio, della carta da lettere, e della cartasuga.

— La carta come la compra? Sciolta o in scatola?

— Sempre sciolta. Non mi piace quella in scatola; ce ne danno meno, e non è sempre di buon gusto. Mi occorre anche un pacchetto di buste assortite colla carta, e non ci sarà altro da fare.

LESSON XXXIX

CONJUNCTIONS AND INTERJECTIONS

230. Conjunctions. The conjunctions, like the prepositions, are frequently compound. The following lists are offered for ready reference in translation. The Italian-English list is much the longer, the English-Italian being confined to the more common conjunctions which the student will find useful. Those which require the subjunctive are indicated.

a. List of Conjunctions, English-Italian.

after **dopo che**

also **anche, pure**

although **benchè, sebbene** (*w. subj.*)

and **e**

as, since **poichè, siccome**

as (*after tanto*) **quanto**; (*after tale*) **quale**; (*after così*) **come**

as if **come se, quasi, quasi che** (*w. subj.*)

as fast as **via via che**

as long as **tanto che, fintantochè**

as well as **come anco**

because **perchè, perciocchè**

before **avanti che, prima che** (*w. subj.*)

both . . . and **e . . . e**

but **ma**; but if **che se**

but rather, but indeed **bensi**

either . . . or **o . . . o**

even if **anche se; ancorchè, quando anche** (*w. subj.*)

except that **se non chę, tranne chę** (*w. subj.*)
 for **chę, poichę**
 granting that **dato chę, sęmpre chę** (*w. subj.*)
 however, nevertheless **perđ, pure, tuttavia**
 however (*before adj. or adv.*) **per quanto, quantunque** (*w. subj.*)
 if **se**
 if only **solo chę, purchę** (*w. subj.*)
 in case **caso mai, nel caso chę** (*w. subj.*)
 in order that **acciocchę, affinchę, perchę** (*w. subj.*)
 in spite of the fact that **malgrado chę** (*w. subj.*)
 much less **non chę** (*w. subj.*)
 neither . . . nor **nę . . . nę**
 nevertheless **perđ, tuttavia, nondimęno, ciđ non ostante**
 nor . . . either **nemmeno, neppure**
 nor even **neanche, neppure**
 not to say . . . but even **non chę . . . ma**
 notwithstanding that **nonostante chę, malgrado chę** (*w. subj.*)
 on condition that **a patto chę, a condizione chę** (*w. subj.*)
 or **o**
 or else **oppure, ossia** (*equivalence*), **ovvero** (*difference*)
 provided that **purchę** (*w. subj.*)
 rather than **piuttđsto chę**
 since (*causal*) **poichę, siccome, giacchę**
 since (*temporal*) **dacchę**
 so, so then **đunque**
 so that, in order that **perchę, affinchę, acciocchę** (*w. subj.*)
 so that (*result*) **di modo chę, sicchę**
 supposing that **posto chę, supposto chę** (*w. subj.*)
 than **chę, chę non, di quel chę** (*cf. 115, b, c, d*)
 that **chę**
 that, in order that **perchę** (*w. subj.*)
 that is **ciđ**
 the more as, the more that **tanto piđ chę**
 then, accordingly **đunque**
 therefore **perciđ, perđ, đunque, adunque**
 though *see* although
 too **anche, pure**
 unless **sęnza chę, a meno chę non** (*w. subj.*)

until **finchè non**
 when **quando**
 whence **donde**
 where **dove, là dove, ove**
 whereas **considerando che**
 wherefore **onde (w. subj.), per lo che**
 wherever **dovunque (w. subj.)**
 whether **se, sia, sia che**
 while **mentre, mentre che**
 yet **nondimeno, tuttavia, però, pure, nulladimeno**

b. List of Conjunctions, Italian-English.

acciò, acciocchè (w. subj.) so that, in order that
a condizione che (w. subj.) on condition that
adunque then, so then
affinchè (w. subj.) in order that
a mano a mano che proportionately as, as fast as
a meno che non (w. subj.) unless
anche also
anche se even if
ancora yet, still, again
ancorchè (w. subj.) even if, although
anzi che rather than
a patto che (w. subj.) on condition that
avanti che (w. subj.) before
avvegna che (w. subj.) although
benchè (w. subj.) although
bensi but rather, nay indeed
caso, caso mai (w. subj.) in case
che that
che, che non than
chè for
cioè that is
ciò non ostante notwithstanding
come as, as it were
come anco as well as
come se (w. subj.) as if
conciossiachè although

considerando che whereas
con questo che (*w. subj.*) notwithstanding that
così as (*after come*)
dacchè since (*temporal*)
dato che (*w. subj.*) granting that
di modo che so that (*result*)
donde whence
dopo che after
dovunque (*w. subj.*) wherever
dunque then, so then
e and
e . . . e both . . . and
eccetto che (*w. subj.*) unless
finchè as long as
finchè non until
fiutantochè as long as
fuorchè (*w. subj.*) except that
giacchè since (*causal*)
in guisa che so as to
là dove where
laonde wherefore
ma but
malgrado che (*w. subj.*) notwithstanding that
mentre, mentre che while
nè nor
nè . . . nè neither . . . nor
nel caso che (*w. subj.*) in case
nemmeno nor, nor . . . either
neppure nor, nor . . . either
non che (*w. subj.*) much less
non che . . . ma not to say . . . but even
nondimèno, non perciò, nulladimèno nevertheless
non ostante che (*w. subj.*) notwithstanding that
non solo . . . ma not only . . . but
o or
o . . . o either . . . or
onde (*w. subj.*) wherefore, because of which, so as to
oppure, ossia, ovvero or else

- perchè because; (*w. subj.*) in order that
perciò therefore
perciocchè because
per lo chè wherefore, because of which
però however
perocchè because
per quanto (*w. subj.*) however (*before adj.*)
piuttosto chè rather than
poichè since (*causal*)
pòscia chè after
pòsto chè (*w. subj.*) supposing that
prima chè (*w. subj.*) before
purchè (*w. subj.*) provided that
pure however, also
quale as (*after tale*)
qualora (*w. subj.*) whenever, as often as
quando when
quando anche (*w. subj.*) even if
quanto as (*after tanto*)
quantunque (*w. subj.*) whenever
quasi, quasi chè (*w. subj.*) as if
se if
sebbene (*w. subj.*) although
secondochè according as
semprechè (*w. subj.*) granting that
se non chè except that
senza chè (*w. subj.*) unless
se pure (*w. subj.*) if only
sia, sia chè whether
sicchè so that (*result*)
siccome as, since
solo chè (*w. subj.*) if only
supposto chè (*w. subj.*) supposing that
tanto chè as long as
tanto più chè the more that
tranne chè (*w. subj.*) except that
tuttavìa however, anyway
via via chè as fast as

1. Certain conjunctions, as **anche se, di modo che**, etc., which are usually followed by the indicative, are sometimes followed by the subjunctive.

2. Questions and exclamations are introduced sometimes, for greater vivacity, by **o** or **che**, used pleonastically.

Dimmi, Santino, che ti piace più la frutta fresca o quella secca?	Tell me, Santino, do you like fresh fruit better, or dried?
O provatevi anche voi! È tanto facile	Try it yourself! It is very easy
O credete chi ci fosse?	Now who do you think was there?

3. A clause is introduced sometimes by **sì che**, as a strengthening or contrasting form.

E sì che di amministrazioni libere agli uomini di stato italiani non mancavano esempi!	And yet Italian statesmen did not lack for examples of liberal administration!
Se, per esempio, il giovane leg- gesse un' orazione di Cicerone, alcune odi di Orazio, un libro di Virgilio . . . allora sì che egli avrebbe un' idea, tutt' altro che completa, ma almeno rispettabile, della letteratura classica	If, for example, the youth should read a speech of Cicero, a few odes of Horace, a book of Vir- gil . . . then he would indeed have an idea, far from complete, but at least tolerable, of classic literature

4. The conjunction **che** is often used alone in familiar speech to mean 'so that,' 'such that.'

Cantavano ch' era un piacere	They sang so that it was a delight (to listen)
Parlava italiano ch' era un orrore	He spoke Italian horribly

231. Interjections. The following are the more frequent interjections in Italian:

a. Expressing joy, admiration, enthusiasm, and the like:

Bene!	Well! Good!
Bravo! Brava!	Well done! Good for him (or her)!

Oh giõia!	What joy! How delightful!
Viva! Evviva!	Hurrah!
Beato te!	Happy you!

b. Grief, pain, compassion, anger, and the like :

Ahi! Ohi! Deh! Ahimè! Ohimè!	Alas!
Guai!	Woe! Beware!
Peccato! Che peccato!	What a pity! What a shame!
Põvero a me!	Poor me
Oh, poverino!	Oh, the poor thing!
Pietà!	Mercy!
Dio ci aiuti!	Heaven help us!
Oibò! Vergogna!	Shame!
Maledetto! Diãvolo!	Zounds! The deuce!

c. Surprise :

Diãmine! Per bacco!	Is it possible! Of course!
Oh bella! Curiõso!	How strange!
Mah! Ma chę!	But —! How absurd!
Çome mai!	How in the world? How can it possibly be?

d. Encouragement :

Pazięza!	Have patience! Resignation!
Speriamo!	Let us hope so!
Coraggio! Ānimo!	Courage!
Orsù!	Come now!
Su!	Here! Come!

e. Miscellaneous :

Ecco!	There! Exactly!
Via!	Come, come! Oh, come now!
Ben venuto! Ben venuta!	Welcome!
Largo!	Make way!
Magari!	Rather! Would to God!
Zitto!	Hush!
Chi lo sa!	Who knows!
Piano!	Softly! Gently!

Basta !	Enough !
Al ladro !	Stop thief !
All' armi !	To arms !
Abbasso la tirānnide !	Down with tyranny !
Viva l' Italia !	Long live Italy !

VOCABULARY

l' <i>ālbero</i> <i>m.</i> tree, mast	a <i>meno</i> <i>che</i> unless
la <i>breccia</i> breach	a <i>patto</i> <i>che</i> on condition that
la <i>cima</i> summit	a <i>vicēnda</i> in turn ; mutually
la <i>ferita</i> wound	<i>caſo</i> <i>mai</i> in case
la <i>finzione</i> pretense	<i>dacchē</i> since (<i>time</i>)
Livorno Leghorn	<i>in cima a</i> on the top of
il <i>marinaio</i> sailor	<i>malgrado</i> <i>che</i> notwithstanding that
la <i>pōlvēre</i> powder	<i>neppure</i> not even
il <i>rischio</i> risk	<i>nondimēno</i> nevertheless
il <i>sepolceto</i> cemetery	<i>piuttosto</i> <i>che</i> rather than
il <i>ſogno</i> dream	<i>poichē</i> since (<i>cause</i>)
lo <i>strapazzo</i> abuse, neglect	<i>prima</i> <i>che</i> before
<i>avverare</i> fulfill	<i>purchē</i> provided that
<i>deplorare</i> regret	<i>siccome</i> as
<i>gridare</i> shout	<i>tranne</i> <i>che</i> except that
<i>redimere, redēnsi, redento</i> redeem	<i>irredento</i> unredeemed
<i>saltare in aria</i> be blown up	

EXERCISE

I

ULTIMI ANNI DELLA GUERRA

Nel 1866, alla battaglia navale di Lissa, Alfredo Cappellini livornese, un erce da paragonarsi ai più grandi dell' antichità, piuttosto che veder cadere nelle mani dei nemici la sua nave, 'Palestro', dette fuoco alle polveri e saltò in aria con tutti i suoi marinai, i quali morirono gridando dalle cime degli alberi: *Viva l'Italia!*

A Villa Gloria cade Enrico Cairoli, e vi resta malamente ferito Giovanni Cairoli, il quale morì poi, nel 1869. Nomi di una famiglia

sacra alla patria, di una famiglia che per questa patria dette la vita di quattro sopra cinque che erano i suoi figli generosi. Ernesto muore combattendo a Varese; Luigi muore a Napoli per gli strapazzi della guerra del 1860; Benedetto solo, carico di ferite, sopravvive dopo tanti rischi a conforto della madre. Onore alla memoria di Adelaide Cairoli, di questa fortissima donna, che dorme ora nel sepolcreto di Gropello, in mezzo a quei figli, che, educati da lei, seppero dare tanta gloria al loro nome e all' Italia.

Oggi, al fine, dopo tante fatiche, tanti sacrifici, e tanti martirî, eccoci arrivati alla nostra capitale, ecco finalmente avverato il sogno di tanti secoli! Ci saremmo dovuti entrare senza le armi, ma le armi ci vollero. Il 20 settembre, 1870, i cannoni dell' esercito italiano tuonavano dinanzi alle mura di Porta Pia. Breve fu la finzione di resistenza da parte dei soldati che la difendevano, e una larga breccia aprì il passo nella città eterna al trionfo dell' Italia redenta.

Viva Roma capitale d' Italia! Ci siamo e ci resteremo!

II

1. The sailors, on top of the masts, were awaiting death. 2. Alfred Cappellini of Leghorn preferred to set fire to the powder and be blown up, rather than let his ship be taken. 3. Since I have been in Italy, the great war has begun. 4. Since they are to arrive so soon, let us not go away before they come. 5. Of the sailors of the ship ' Palestro ' not one was left [remained] alive. 6. They were all blown up. 7. Benedetto Cairoli saw his four brothers die in the war. 8. Only he survived them. 9. Unless many men know how to die for their country, Italy can never be united. 10. The Italian soldiers may say: Italy's dream of so many centuries could not have been fulfilled without us. 11. Nevertheless, it is to be regretted that arms were necessary. 12. Enrico was glad to die fighting, provided that Italy might be free and united. 13. The soldiers opened several breaches in the walls of the city. 14. Few

cities have survived longer than [more than] Rome. 15. She has survived in spite of governments having been changed and wars having been fought [in spite of (the fact) that, notwithstanding that, governments have been, etc.]. 16. Italian soldiers and sailors were glad to fight to capture Rome, on condition that their sons should know how to defend it. 17. For many years this country which you see was called by the Italians "Unredeemed Italy." 18. Here we are arrived in that part of Italy of which we have so often thought. 19. The physicians ought to have visited the soldiers in the hospital before their wounds became so dangerous. 20. Although they were covered with wounds, the soldiers opened the way into the Eternal City, crying, "Long live Italy!"

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS (CF. 96, 120, 130)

accēndere, <i>light, kindle</i>	acceſi	acceſo
acclūdere, <i>inclose</i>	accluſi	accluſo
accōrgersi, <i>be aware</i>	mi accōrſi	accōrtōſi
addurre, <i>produce, convey</i>	adduco, adducendo	addōtto
	adduſſi, addurrō	
affiggere, <i>afflict</i>	affiſſi	afflitto
ālgere, <i>be cold</i>	alſi	<i>Defective. Rare</i>
allūdere, <i>allude</i>	alluſi	alluſo
andare, <i>go</i>	<i>Ind. pres. vō or vado, vai, va, andiamo, andate, vanno. Fut. anderō, andrō. Past fut. anderēi or andrēi. Subj. vada etc., andiamo, andiate, vādano. Imp. va', andate</i>	
annēttre, <i>combine</i>	<i>Past abs. annettei or annēſſi, annettē or annēſſe, etc. Past part. annēſſo</i>	
apparire, <i>appear</i>	<i>Ind. pres. apparisco or appaio, apparisci or appari, apparisce or appare; (appariamo), apparite, appariscono or appāiono. Past abs. apparii, apparvi, apparſi, etc. Subj. apparisca or appaia. Past part. apparito or apparso</i>	
appartenere, <i>belong</i>	<i>See tenere</i>	
appēndere, <i>hang</i>	appēſi	appēſo
applaudire (applaudere, <i>poetical</i>), <i>applaud</i>	applaudo, applaudisco	
aprire, <i>open</i>	<i>Pres. ind. apro. Past abs. apēſi or aprii. Past part. aperto</i>	
ārdere, <i>burn</i>	arſi	arſo
ardire, <i>be bold</i>	<i>Defective in parts which are identical with ardere</i>	
arrēndere, <i>comply</i>	<i>See rendere</i>	
arrōgere, <i>add</i>	arrōſi	arrōſo or arrōto. <i>Defective. Rare</i>
ascōndere, <i>hide</i>	<i>See nascondere</i>	
aspērgere, <i>scatter, sprinkle</i>	aspeſi	aspeſo

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

compire <i>or</i> cōmpiere, <i>fulfill</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> compisco <i>or</i> cōmpio, compisci <i>or</i> cōmpi, <i>etc. Imp.</i> compisci <i>or</i> cōmpi. <i>Subj.</i> compisca <i>or</i> cōmpia <i>etc.</i> ; <i>past</i> compissi <i>or</i> compiessi <i>etc.</i> <i>Pres. part.</i> compiendo; <i>past</i> compito <i>or</i> compiuto		
comprimere, <i>compress</i> concedere, <i>concede</i>	compreſsi concedei, concedetti <i>or</i> concessi, conceduto <i>or</i> concesso		
concepire, <i>conceive</i>	(concepe, concepa, concepto, <i>poetic forms</i>)		
concludere, <i>conclude</i>	<i>See</i> accludere		
condurre, <i>conduct</i>	<i>See</i> addurre		
connēttere, <i>connect</i>	<i>See</i> annēttere		
conōscere, <i>be acquainted</i>	conōbbi	conosciuto	
conquidere, <i>conquer</i>	conquisi	conquiso	<i>Rare</i>
consistere, <i>consist</i>	<i>See</i> assistere		
consumare, consūmere, <i>consume, finish</i>	<i>Past abs.</i> consumai <i>or</i> consunsi, consumò <i>or</i> con- sunse, consumārono <i>or</i> consūsero. <i>Past part.</i> consumato <i>or</i> consunto		
contēssere, <i>entwine</i>	<i>Part.</i> contēsto		
contūdere, <i>bruise</i>	contuſi	contuſo	
convertire, <i>convert</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> converto <i>or</i> convertisco. <i>Past abs.</i> con- vertii <i>or</i> converſi. <i>Past part.</i> convertito, converſo		
corrēggere, <i>correct</i>	<i>See</i> reggere		
cōrrere, <i>run</i>	cōrsi	cōorso. <i>Like</i> correre <i>are</i> accorrere, decorrere, percorrere, <i>etc.</i>	
cospērgere, <i>sprinkle</i>	<i>See</i> aspergere		
costrīngere, <i>compel</i>	<i>See</i> stringere		
costruire, <i>construct</i>	costruui <i>or</i> costrussi	costruito <i>or</i> costrutto	
crēscere, <i>grow</i>	crebbi	cresciuto	
cucire, <i>sew</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> cucio, cūciono. <i>Subj.</i> cucia <i>etc.</i>		
cuq̄cere, <i>cook</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> cuq̄cio, cuq̄ci, cuq̄ce, cuq̄ciono. <i>Past abs.</i> cōssi. <i>Fut.</i> cocerò. <i>Imp.</i> cuq̄ci. <i>Subj.</i> cuq̄cia <i>Past part.</i> cōtto		
dare, <i>give</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> dō, dai, dà, diamo, date, danno. <i>Past</i> <i>descr.</i> davo, davi, <i>etc.</i> <i>Past abs.</i> detti <i>or</i> diēdi, deſti, deſte <i>or</i> diēde, demmo, deſte, deſterro <i>or</i> diēdero. <i>Fut.</i> darò. <i>Imp.</i> da', date. <i>Pres. subj.</i> dia <i>etc.</i> , diamo, diate, diano; <i>past</i> deſſi. <i>Pres.</i> <i>part.</i> dando; <i>past</i> dato		
decidere, <i>decide</i>	deciſi	deciſo	

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

delūdere, <i>delude</i>	<i>See</i> alludere	
deprīmere, <i>depress</i>	<i>See</i> comprimere	
desūmere, <i>infer</i>	<i>See</i> assumere	
difēndere, <i>defend</i>	difēsi	difeso
dipēndere, <i>depend</i>	dipēsi	dipeso
dipīngere, <i>paint</i>	dipinsi	dipinto
dire, (<i>dīcere</i>), <i>say</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> dico, dici <i>or</i> di', dice, diciamo, dite, dicono. <i>Past descr.</i> dicevo <i>etc.</i> <i>Past abs.</i> dissi. <i>Fut.</i> dirò. <i>Imp.</i> di', dite. <i>Subj. pres.</i> dica <i>etc.</i> ; <i>past</i> dicessi <i>etc.</i> <i>Part. pres.</i> dicendo, dicente; <i>past detto.</i> <i>Compounds of dire have dici in 2 sg. imp.</i>	
dirīgere, <i>direct</i>	dirēssi	dirētto
discōrrere, <i>converse</i>	<i>See</i> correre	
discūtere, <i>discuss</i>	discussi	discusso
dissōlvere, <i>dissolve</i>	dissolvēi <i>or</i> dissōlsi	dissoluto
dissuadere, <i>dissuade</i>	<i>See</i> persuadere	
distīnguere, <i>distinguish</i>	distinsi	distinto
divertire, <i>divert</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> diverto <i>etc.</i> ; "turn aside," regular	
dividere, <i>divide</i>	diviși	divișo
dolere, <i>grieve, pain</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> dolgo, duqli, duqle, dolghiamo <i>or</i> dogliamo, dolēte, dōlgono. <i>Past abs.</i> dolsi. <i>Fut.</i> dorro. <i>Subj.</i> dolga. <i>Past part.</i> doluto	
dormire, <i>sleep</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> dormo. <i>Subj.</i> dorma. <i>Imp.</i> dormi. <i>Part. pres.</i> dormente <i>or</i> dormiente	
dovere, <i>owe</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> devo <i>or</i> debbo (<i>poet.</i> deggio); devi <i>or</i> dei; deve, debbe (<i>rare</i>), <i>or</i> de; dobbiamo; dovete; devono <i>or</i> debbono (<i>poet.</i> deggiono), <i>etc.</i> <i>Fut.</i> dovrò. <i>Subj.</i> deya <i>or</i> debba	
elūdere, <i>elide</i>	eliși <i>or</i> elidēi	elișo
elūdere, <i>elude</i>	<i>See</i> alludere	
emērgere, <i>emerge</i>	emērsi	emērso
empire <i>or</i> ĩmpiere, <i>fill</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> ĩmpio, ĩmpi, <i>etc.</i> <i>Past abs.</i> ĩmpii, ĩpiēi, ĩmpiētti; ĩmpisti, ĩmpiēsti, <i>etc.</i> <i>Fut.</i> ĩmpirò. <i>Imp.</i> ĩmpi, ĩmpite. <i>Subj.</i> ĩmpia <i>etc.</i> ; <i>past</i> ĩmpissi, ĩmpiēssi, <i>etc.</i> <i>Part. pres.</i> ĩmpiendo; <i>past</i> ĩmpito <i>or</i> ĩmpiuto.	
ērgere, <i>erect</i>	ērsi	(<i>adj.</i> ērto). <i>Rare in prose</i>
erīgere, <i>erect</i>	<i>See</i> dirīgere	

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

esclūdere, <i>exclude</i>	See accludere	
eşigere, <i>exact</i>	eşigei	eşatto
eşimere, <i>exempt</i>	eşimeî (Past abs. and past part. from eşentare.)	
eşistere, <i>exist</i>	See assistere	
espëllere, <i>expel</i>	espulsi	espulso
esplōdere, <i>explode</i>	esplōşi	esplōşo
esprimere, <i>express</i>	See comprimere	
ēsšere, <i>be</i>	See 96	
estinguere, <i>extinguish</i>	See distinguere	
evādere, <i>escape</i>	See invadere	
fare, (fācere), <i>do, make</i>	Ind. pres. fə or faccio, fai, fa (poet. face), facciamo, fate, fanno. Past descr. facevo etc. Past abs. feçi. Fut. farò. Imp. fa', fate. Subj. faccia etc. Part. pres. facente, facendo; past fatto	
fedire (defective and poetical for ferire), <i>strike</i>	Ind. pres. fiędo, fiędi, fięde, fiędono. Subj. fięda, fiędano	
fēndere, <i>split</i>	fendei or fęssi	fenduto or fęsso
fērvere, <i>glow</i>	Defective. Lacks compound tenses and past part.	
figgere, <i>fix</i>	fissi	fisso or fitto
fingere, <i>pretend</i>	finsi	finto
flēttere, <i>bend</i>		flesso. Defective. Poetical
fōndere, <i>melt</i>	fuşi	fuşo
frāngere, <i>break</i>	fransi	franto
friggere, <i>fry</i>	frissi	fritto
fuggire, <i>flee</i>	Ind. pres. fuggo, fuggi, fugge, etc. Imp. fuggi. Subj. fugga etc.	
genufłēttere, <i>kneel</i>	genufłęssi	genufłęsso
giacere, <i>lie</i>	Ind. pres. giaccio, giaci, giace, giacciamo or giacciamo, giacete, giācciono. Past abs. giacqui. Subj. giaccia etc.	Rare
giocare, <i>play</i>	Ind. pres. giuoco, giuochi, etc. See rotare.	
gire, <i>turn</i>	Ind. pres. and Imp. 2 pl. gite. Past descr. givo etc. Past abs. gisti, gimmo, girono. Fut. girò (rare). Past part. gito	Defective
giüngere, <i>arrive</i>	giunsi	giunto
godere, <i>enjoy</i>	Fut. goderò or godrò	
illūdere, <i>illude</i>	See alludere	
immērgere, <i>immerse</i>	See emergere	

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

imprimere, <i>print</i>	<i>See</i> comprimere	
incidere, <i>engrave</i>	incişi	incişo
includere, <i>include</i>	<i>See</i> accludere	
incorrere, <i>incur</i>	<i>See</i> correre	
incutere, <i>instil</i>	incuţei or incussi	incusso
indulgere	indulsi	indulto <i>Poetical. Rare</i>
indurre, <i>induce</i>	<i>See</i> addurre	
infocare, <i>inflamm</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> infuço, infuچی, etc. <i>See</i> rotare.	
inghiottire, <i>swallow</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> inghiottisco or inghiotto. <i>Subj.</i> inghiottisca or inghiotta etc. <i>Imp.</i> inghiottisci or inghiotti	
insistere, <i>insist</i>	<i>See</i> assistere	
intessere, <i>interweave</i>		intessuto or intesto
intridere, <i>knead</i>	intrişi	intrişo
intrudere, <i>intrude</i>	intruşi	intruşo
invadere, <i>invade</i>	invaşi	invaşo
ire, <i>go</i>	<i>Pres. ind. ite. Past descr.</i> ivo, ivi, etc. <i>Past abs.</i> isti, iste, irono. <i>Past part.</i> ito. <i>Poet. Defective</i>	
istruire, <i>instruct</i>	<i>See</i> costruire	
lędere, <i>offend</i>	leşi (<i>rare</i>)	leşo
lęggere, <i>read</i>	leşsi	leşto
licere or lęcere, <i>allow</i>	<i>Past part.</i> lęcito or lícito <i>Impersonal. Defective</i>	
lucere, <i>shine</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> luci, luce, lūcono. <i>Past descr.</i> lucęvo, lucęvano. <i>Subj. pres.</i> luca, lūcano; <i>past</i> lucessi etc. <i>Pres. part.</i> lucęndo (<i>adj.</i> luçente). <i>Defective</i>	
ludere, <i>play</i>	luşi	luşo <i>Rare</i>
maledire, <i>curse</i>	<i>See</i> benedire	
mantere, <i>maintain</i>	<i>See</i> tenere	
mentire, <i>lie, deceive</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> męnto, mentisco. <i>Subj.</i> męnta, mentisca. <i>Imp.</i> męnti etc.	
męrgere, <i>plunge</i>	męrsi	męrso
męscere, <i>mix</i>		misto or mesciuto
męttre, <i>put</i>	mişi or męssi	messo
mqlcere, <i>soothe</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> mqlci, mqlce. <i>Past descr.</i> molçevo etc. <i>Imp.</i> mqlci. <i>Subj. past</i> molçessi etc. <i>Pres. part.</i> molçęndo <i>Defective. Poetical</i>	
mqrdere, <i>bite</i>	mqrsi	mqrso

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

morire, <i>die</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> muōio, muōri, muōre, moriamo, morite, muōiono. <i>Fut.</i> morrò, morirò. <i>Imp.</i> muōri. <i>Subj.</i> muōia, mōra (<i>poet.</i>), moriamo, moriate <i>or</i> moiate, muōiano, mōrano (<i>poet.</i>). <i>Part. pres.</i> morēnte, moriēnte; <i>past</i> mōrto	
mūngere, <i>milk</i>	munsi	munto
muōvere, <i>move</i>	mōssi	mōsso
nāscere, <i>be born</i>	nacqui	nato
nascōndere, <i>hide</i>	nascōsi	nascōsto <i>or</i> nascōso
neglīgere (<i>cf.</i> 5, c), <i>neglect</i>	neglēssi	neglētto
nuōcere, <i>harm</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> nuōco <i>or</i> nōccio, nuōcono <i>or</i> nōcciono, <i>etc.</i> <i>Past abs.</i> nōcqui. <i>Past part.</i> nociuto	
nutrire, <i>nourish</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> nutro, nutrisco. <i>Subj.</i> nutra, nutrisca	
offēdere, <i>offend</i>	offēsi	offēso
offrire <i>or</i> offerire, <i>offer</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> offro, offerisco. <i>Past abs.</i> offerēsi <i>or</i> offrii. <i>Subj.</i> offra, offerisca. <i>Past part.</i> offerōto	
opprimere, <i>oppress</i>	<i>See</i> comprimere	
ottenere, <i>obtain</i>	<i>See</i> tenere	
parere, <i>appear</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> paio, pari, pare, paiamo, parēte, pāiono. <i>Past abs.</i> parvi <i>or</i> parsi. <i>Fut.</i> parrò. <i>Imp.</i> lacking. <i>Subj.</i> paia <i>etc.</i> , pāiano. <i>Past part.</i> parso <i>or</i> paruto	
partire, <i>leave, go away</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> parto; "share," partisco	
patire, <i>suffer</i>	<i>Rare forms:</i> pato, pati, pate, pātono; <i>p. part.</i> passo.	
pentirsi, <i>repent</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> mi pēnto <i>etc.</i> <i>Imp.</i> pēntiti. <i>Subj.</i> si pēnta <i>etc.</i>	
percipere, <i>perceive</i>	<i>Past part.</i> percētto	<i>Defective. Rare</i>
percuōtere, <i>strike</i>	percōssi	percōsso
	<i>The diphthong is preserved in the ind. pres. whenever the tonic accent falls upon the o.</i>	
pērdere, <i>lose</i>	pērsi, perdei, <i>or</i> perdētti; pērso <i>or</i> perduto. <i>The compounds disperdere and sperdere have only the irregular forms.</i>	
permēttre, <i>permit</i>	<i>See</i> mettere	
persistere, <i>persist</i>	<i>See</i> assistere	
persuadere, <i>persuade</i>	persuași	persuașo
pervertire, <i>pervert</i>	<i>See</i> avvertire	

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

piacere, <i>please</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> piaccio, piaci, piace, piacciamo, piacete, piäcciono. <i>Past abs.</i> piacqui. <i>Subj.</i> piaccia; piacciamo, piacciate, piäcciano. <i>Past part.</i> piaciuto
piāngere, <i>weep</i>	piansi pianto
pīngere, <i>push</i>	<i>See</i> dipingere <i>Rare in prose</i>
piq̄vere (<i>impersonal</i>), <i>rain</i>	piqvve piovuto
plāudere, <i>applaud</i>	<i>See</i> applaudire <i>Poetical</i>
pq̄rgere, <i>stretch forth</i>	pq̄rsi pqrto
porre (pōnere), <i>place</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> pongo, poni, pone, poniamo or ponghiamo, ponete, pōngono. <i>Past abs.</i> posi. <i>Fut.</i> porrò. <i>Imp.</i> poni. <i>Subj.</i> ponga; poniamo or ponghiamo, poniate, pōngano. <i>Part. pres.</i> ponendo; <i>past</i> posto
possedere, <i>possess</i>	<i>See</i> sedere
potere, <i>be able</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> posso, puoi, può, possiamo, potete, pōsono (pōnno, <i>poet.</i>). <i>Fut.</i> potrò. <i>Imp.</i> wanting. <i>Subj.</i> possa; possiamo, possiate, pōssano. <i>Past part.</i> potuto
precēdere, <i>precede</i>	precessi or precedetti preceduto
prediligere, <i>prefer</i>	predilēssi predilētto
prelūdere, <i>prelude</i>	<i>See</i> alludere
prēmere, <i>crush</i>	pressi, premei, premetti
prēndere, <i>take</i>	preși preso
	Comprendere, sorprendere, imprendere, <i>are conjugated like</i> prendere
presūmere, <i>assume</i>	presunsi presunto
produrre, <i>produce</i>	<i>See</i> addurre
profferire, <i>proffer</i>	<i>See</i> offerire
promēttēre, <i>promise</i>	<i>See</i> mettere
protēggere, <i>protect</i>	protēssi protetto
pūngere, <i>prick</i>	punsi punto
rādere, <i>shave</i>	rasi raso
recidere, <i>sever</i>	<i>See</i> decidere
redimere, <i>redeem</i>	redēnsi redento
redire or riēdere, <i>return</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> riēdo, riēdi, riēde; riēdono. <i>Past descr.</i> redivo. <i>Past abs.</i> redirono. <i>Subj.</i> (<i>rare</i>) riedesse and riedessero <i>Defective. Poetical</i>
rēggere <i>rule</i>	rēssi rētto
	<i>Compounds conjugated like</i> reggere

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

rēndere, <i>render</i>	rēsi, rēdei or rēdētti; rēso or rēduto. Arrēndere, arreso	
reprīmere, <i>repress</i>	<i>See</i> comprimere	
resistere, <i>resist</i>	<i>See</i> assistere	
respingere, <i>repulse</i>	<i>See</i> spingere	
richiēdere, <i>demand</i>	<i>See</i> chiedere	
rīdere, <i>laugh</i>	risi	riso
ridurre, <i>reduce</i>	<i>See</i> addurre	
riflēttere, <i>reflect</i>	riflessi	riflesso
	<i>In sense of "consider" regular</i>	
rifulgere, <i>shine</i>	rifulsi	<i>Part. wanting</i>
rilūcere, <i>shine</i>	rilussi	<i>Part. wanting</i>
rimanere, <i>remain</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> rimango, rimani, rimane, rimaniamo or rimanghiamo, rimanete, rimāngono. <i>Past abs.</i> rimasi. <i>Fut.</i> rimarrò. <i>Imp.</i> rimani. <i>Subj.</i> rimanga. <i>Past part.</i> rimasto or rimaso	
ripōnere, <i>replace</i>	<i>See</i> porre. <i>More usual form,</i> riporre	
risolare, <i>re-sole</i>	risuolo, risuoli, etc.; <i>diphthong occurs wherever o is accented</i>	
risōlvere, <i>resolve</i>	<i>See</i> assolvere	
rispōndere, <i>reply</i>	risposi	risposto
riuscire, <i>succeed</i>	<i>See</i> uscire	
rōdere, <i>gnaw</i>	rōsi	rōso
rōmpere, <i>break</i>	ruppi	rōtto
rotare, <i>turn, whirl</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> ruoto, ruoti, etc.; <i>diphthong occurs wherever o is accented</i>	
salire, <i>go up</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> salgo, sali, sale, salghiamo or sagliamo, salite, sālgono. <i>Past abs.</i> salii or salsi. <i>Imp.</i> sali. <i>Subj.</i> salga, salghiamo, sālgano, etc. <i>Past part.</i> salito	
sapere, <i>know</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> so, sai, sa, sappiamo, sapete, sanno. <i>Past abs.</i> seppi. <i>Imp.</i> sappi, sappiate. <i>Subj.</i> sappia. <i>Fut.</i> saprò. <i>Part. pres.</i> sapiente; <i>past</i> saputo	
scēgliere (scērrere), <i>choose</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> scēlgo, scēgli, scēglie, sceghiamo or scelghiamo, scegliete, scēlgono. <i>Past abs.</i> scēlsi. <i>Subj.</i> scēlga etc. <i>Past part.</i> scēlto	
scēndere, <i>descend</i>	scēsi	scēso
scērnere, <i>discern</i>	scērsi or scernei	<i>Past part. wanting</i>

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

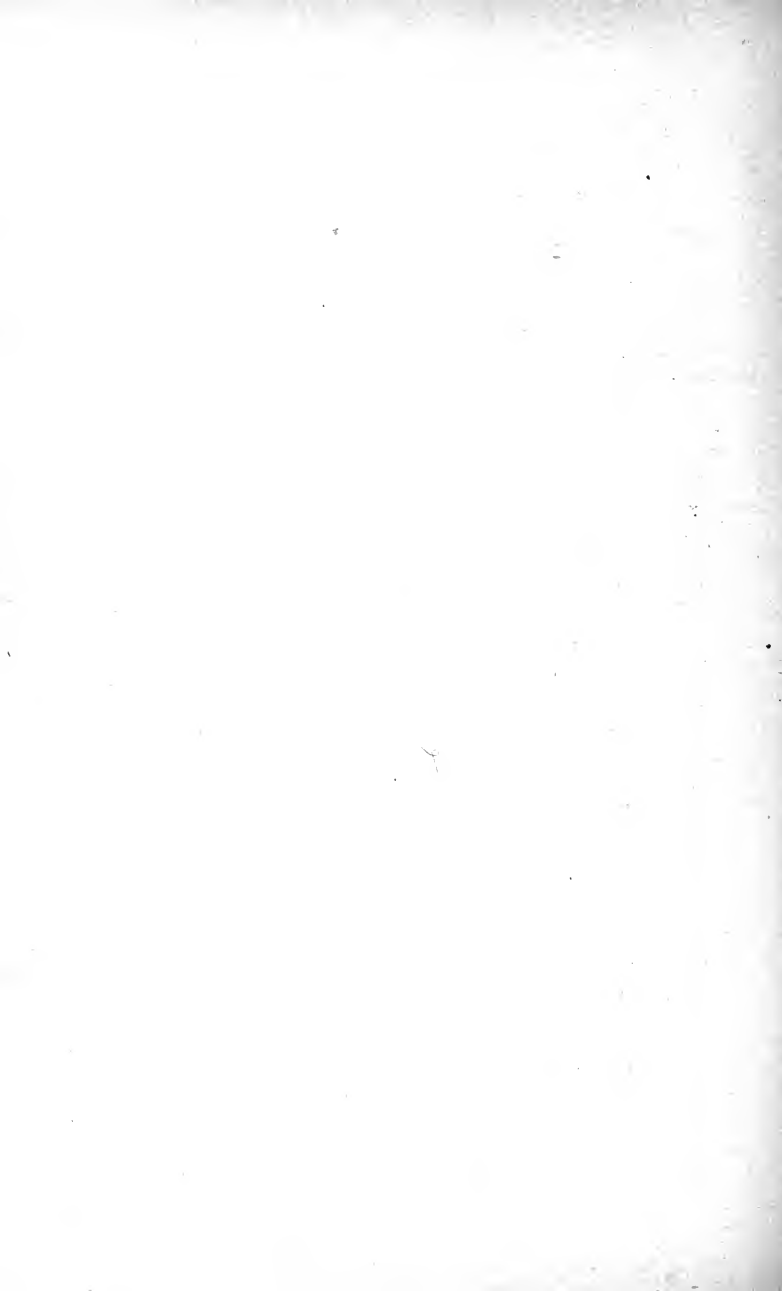
scindere, <i>sever</i>	scissi	scisso	
	Prescindere <i>has</i> prescindetti <i>also</i>		
sciogliere or sciorre, <i>loosen</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> sciolgo, sciogli, scioglie, sciogliamo, sciogliete, scioglono. <i>Past abs.</i> sciolsi. <i>Fut.</i> scioglierò or sciorrò. <i>Imp.</i> sciogli. <i>Subj.</i> sciogla. <i>Past part.</i> sciolto		
scolpire, <i>carve</i>	scolpii or poet. sculsi	scolpito or poet. sculto	
sconnettere, <i>disconnect</i>	<i>See</i> anettere		
scoprire, <i>discover</i>	scopersi	scoperto	<i>So</i> coprire
scorgere, <i>perceive</i>	scorsi	scorto	
scrivere, <i>write</i>	scrissi	scritto	
scuotere, <i>shake</i>	scossi	scosso	
	<i>Diphthong</i> <i>uo</i> <i>preserved only where the accent falls</i> <i>on it</i>		
şdrucire, <i>rip</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> şdrucio or şdrucisco. <i>Subj.</i> şdrucia or şdrucisca		
sedere, <i>sit</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> seggio or siędo, siędi, sięde, sediamo, sedete, seggono or siędono. <i>Past abs.</i> sedęi. <i>Imp.</i> siędi. <i>Subj.</i> seggia or sięda, seggano or siędano. <i>Past part.</i> seduto		
sedurre, <i>seduce</i>	<i>See</i> addurre		
seguire, <i>follow</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> seگو, segui, etc. <i>Subj.</i> seگua etc. <i>Imp.</i> seگui. <i>Consequire in sense of "obtain," regular.</i> <i>Esequire regular</i>		
sentire, <i>feel, smell</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> seنتo, seنتi, etc. <i>Subj.</i> seنتa etc. <i>Imp.</i> seنتi		
seppellire, <i>inter</i>		sepolto or seppellito	
servire, <i>serve</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> seervo, seervi. <i>Subj.</i> seerva. <i>Imp.</i> seervi		
sodisfare, <i>satisfy</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> sodisfo or sodisfaccio, sodisfi, sodisfa, sodisfacciamo, sodisfate, sodisfano. <i>Subj.</i> so- disfi or sodisfaccia etc., sodisfacciamo, sodisfac- ciate, sodisfino or sodisfacciano. <i>Imp.</i> sodisfa, sodisfate. <i>See</i> fare		
soffolcere, <i>support</i>	soffolse	soffolto <i>Defective. Rare</i>	
soffrire, <i>suffer</i>	<i>See</i> offrire		
solere (<i>defective</i>), <i>be wont</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> sqglio, suqli, suqle, sqgliamo, solęte, sqgliono. <i>Subj.</i> sqglia etc. <i>Past abs., fut., past</i> <i>fut., imp., wanting; supplied by esser solito.</i> <i>Past part.</i> sqlito		
solvere, <i>undo</i>	solvei (solvetti)	soluto	<i>Poetical</i>

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

tēndere, <i>extend</i> tenere, <i>hold</i>	teŋsi <i>Ind. pres.</i> teŋgo, tiēni, tiēne, teniamo <i>or</i> tenghiamo, tenete, tēngono. <i>Past abs.</i> tēnni. <i>Fut.</i> terrò. <i>Imp.</i> tiēni. <i>Subj.</i> teŋga, teniamo <i>or</i> tenghiamo, <i>etc.</i> <i>Past part.</i> tenuto	teŋso	
tērgere, <i>wipe</i> tīngere, <i>tint</i>	tērsi tinsi	tērsio tinto	<i>Rare</i>
tōgliere <i>or</i> tōrre, <i>take</i> <i>away</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> tōlgo, tōgli, tōglie, togliamo, togliete, tōlgono. <i>Past abs.</i> tōlsi. <i>Fut.</i> torrò <i>or</i> toglierò. <i>Imp.</i> tōgli, tō'. <i>Subj.</i> tōlga <i>etc.</i> <i>Past part.</i> tōlto		
tonare, <i>thunder</i> tōrcere, <i>twist</i> tossire, <i>cough</i>	<i>Pres.</i> tuōno. <i>Diphthong occurs on the accent.</i> tōrsi <i>Ind. pres.</i> tōsso. <i>Subj.</i> tōssa. <i>Imp.</i> tōssi. (<i>Rarely</i> tossisco <i>etc.</i>)	tōrto	
tradurre, <i>translate</i> trarre (trāere), <i>drag</i>	<i>See addurre</i> <i>Ind. pres.</i> traggo, trai, trae, tragghiamo, traete, trāg- gono. <i>Past abs.</i> trassi, traesti, trasse, traemmo, traeste, trāssero. <i>Fut.</i> trarrò. <i>Imp.</i> trai. <i>Subj.</i> tragga <i>etc.</i> , tragghiamo, trāggano. <i>Part. pres.</i> traendo; <i>past</i> tratto. <i>The compounds</i> attrarre, contrarre, distrarre, ritrarre, <i>etc.</i> , <i>like</i> trarre		
uccidere, <i>kill</i> udire, <i>hear</i>	uccisi <i>Ind. pres.</i> ūdo, ūdi, ūde, udiamo, udite, ūdono. <i>Subj.</i> ūda; udiamo, udiate, ūdano. <i>Imp.</i> ūdi, udite. <i>Fut.</i> udirò <i>or</i> udrò. <i>Past abs.</i> udii. <i>Past part.</i> udito	ucciso	
ūngere, <i>anoint</i> ūrgerere, <i>urge</i>	unsi <i>Forms in use: Ind. pres.</i> urge, ūrgono. <i>Past descr.</i> urģevo, urģevano. <i>Subj. pres.</i> urga, ūrgano; <i>past</i> urģesse, urģessero. <i>Part. pres.</i> urģente, urģendo. <i>Fut.</i> urģerà, urģeranno <i>Defective</i>	unto	
uscire (<i>rarely</i> escire), <i>go</i> <i>out</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> esco, esci, esce, usciamo, uscite, ēscono. <i>Subj.</i> esca; usciamo, usciate, ēscano. <i>Imp.</i> esci, uscite. <i>Past abs.</i> uscii. <i>Past part.</i> uscito		
valere, <i>be worth</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> valgo, vali, vale, vogliamo <i>or</i> valghiamo, valete, vālgono. <i>Past abs.</i> valsi. <i>Fut.</i> varrò. <i>Imp.</i> vali. <i>Subj.</i> valga <i>or</i> vaglia, valghiamo <i>or</i> vaglia- mo, valghiate, vālgano <i>or</i> vāgliano. <i>Past part.</i> valso <i>or</i> valuto		

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

vedere, <i>see</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> vëdo or vëggo, vëdi, vëde, vediamo, vedete, vëdono or vëggono (<i>poet.</i> vëggio, vëggiono). <i>Past abs.</i> vidi. <i>Fut.</i> vedrò. <i>Imp.</i> vëdi or vë', vedete. <i>Subj.</i> vëda or vëgga, <i>poet.</i> vëggia; vediamo, vediate, vëdano or vëggano, <i>poet.</i> vëggiano. <i>Part. pres.</i> vedente or veggente; <i>past visto or veduto.</i> Prevedere and provvedere have futures prevederò and provvederò. <i>Other compounds of vedere, like vedere</i>	
venire, <i>come</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> vëngo, viëni, viëne, veniamo, venite, vëngono. <i>Past abs.</i> vënni. <i>Fut.</i> verrò. <i>Imp.</i> viëni, venite. <i>Subj.</i> vënga, <i>poet.</i> vëgna. <i>Part. pres.</i> veniente or vengente; <i>past venuto.</i> <i>Compounds of venire conjugated like venire</i>	
vestire, <i>dress</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> vësto, vësti, vëste, etc. <i>Past part.</i> vestito, <i>poet.</i> vestuto	
vilipëndere	See appendere	
vincere, <i>conquer</i>	vinsi	vinto
vivere, <i>live</i>	<i>Past abs.</i> vissi. <i>Fut.</i> vivrò. <i>Past part.</i> vissuto (<i>rarely vivuto</i>)	
volere, <i>wish, will</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> vòglio or vò', vuòi, vuòle, vogliamo, volete, vòglio. <i>Past abs.</i> vòlli. <i>Fut.</i> vorrò. <i>Imp.</i> vògli, vogliate. <i>Subj.</i> vòglia etc., vogliamo, vogliate, vògliano	
vòlgere, <i>turn</i>	vòlsi	vòlto
vòlvere, <i>turn</i>	vòlsi	vòlto <i>Rare</i>
	Devolvere has a <i>past part.</i> devoluto	
votare, <i>empty</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> vuòto, vuòti, etc., <i>diphthong occurring whenever the accent falls on o.</i>	



ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- a, ad (39), at, to**
abbandonare abandon
abbasso below; downstairs
abbiamo *1 pl. pres. ind. of avere*
abitante *m.* inhabitant
abitare dwell, reside
ābito *m.* coat
abituarsi (a) accustom oneself
 (to)
accadere happen
accanto (a) next, next door (to)
accēndere light, kindle
accettare accept
acciaio *m.* steel
accidente *m.* accident
accomodarsi make oneself comfort-
 able, sit down
accompagnare accompany; match
accordarsi agree
accordo *m.* agreement
accōrgersi di notice, become aware
 of
accrēscere increase
acqua *f.* water
acquistare acquire
acre sharp, bitter
adatto adapted, suitable
addosso (a) on top, on the back
 (of)
adiātico *adj.* Adriatic
adulto adult, mature
affare *m.* affair; *pl.* business
affermare affirm, declare
affettuoso affectionate, cordial
affisso *m.* placard, notice
affollato crowded, thronged
agguantare seize upon
agire act
agitatore *m.* agitator
agli, ai, 75
ago *m.* needle; hand (of clock)
Agostino Augustine
agosto *m.* August
l'Aia the Hague
aiutare help
al, allo, 75; alle sei at six o'clock
albergo *m.* hotel
ālbero *m.* tree; mast
alcuno some, some one
allegro joyful
allōdola *f.* lark
allōra then, at that time
almeno at least
alterare alter
altezza *f.* height; highness
alto high
altrettanto as much again
altro other; ∞! of course!
altrui of others
alzarsi rise, get up
amare love
ambedue both
ambizione *f.* ambition
ambizioso ambitious
l'Amērica *f.* America
americano American

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- amica** (*pl.* -che) *f.* friend
amico (*pl.* -ci) *m.* friend
Amleto Hamlet
ammalato ill
amministrativo administrative
ammirare admire
amore *m.* love
anche also
ancora yet, still, again
andare (149) go; **andarsene** (127)
 go away
andō 3 *sg. p. abs. of andare*
anello *m.* ring
angelo *m.* angel
angolo *m.* corner; **far ~ con** be at
 the corner of
angusto narrow
annaffiare water
annaffiatōio *m.* watering-pot
anno *m.* year; **buon ~** Happy New
 Year
annoverare enumerate
antemeridiano of the morning
antichità *f.* antiquity
anticipatamente beforehand, in ad-
 vance
antico ancient
antimilitarista *m.* anti-militarist
antologia *f.* anthology
ape *f.* bee
aperto open
apparecchiare set table
appartamento *m.* apartment
appartenere belong
appassire wither
appena hardly; no sooner
applicare apply
appollaiarsi roost
approvare approve
appuntare pin
aprile *m.* April
aprire open
arancio *m.* orange-tree
architetto *m.* architect
ardere burn
ardito bold
ardore *m.* ardor
argento *m.* silver
aria *f.* air
Aristotile Aristotle
armi *f. pl.* arms
arrestare arrest
arrivare arrive
arrivo *m.* arrival
arte *f.* art
artista *m.* artist
ascoltare listen
aspettare wait, await
aspettativo *m.* expectancy
assai very; much
assortito to match, like
assurdo absurd
astuccio *m.* sewing-case
attendere await
attento attentive; **stare ~** pay at-
 tention
attenzione *f.* attention; **fare ~** pay
 attention
attillato close fitting; well dressed
attimo *m.* instant
attrarre draw, attract
augurare wish, wish well
austriaco Austrian
automobile *c.* automobile
autore *m.* author
autunno *m.* autumn
avanti before, ahead; **~ che conj.**
 v. subj. before
avaro *m.* miser
avere (120) have; **~ da** have to; **aver**

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- caldo, freddo**, be hot, cold; **aver fretta, fùria**, be in a hurry; **avērsela a male** take ill, be offended
avrò *r sg. fut. ind. of avere*
avvenire (138) happen
avventarsi a rush upon
avverare aver, confirm
avvertire advise, warn
avvezzare accustom
avviarsi take one's way
avvicinarsi a approach
avvisarsi bethink oneself
avviso *m.* placard
avvocato *m.* lawyer
azzurro blue
- babbo** *m.* papa
baciare kiss
bācio *m.* kiss
badare take care
bagagliaio *m.* baggage-room
bagāglio *m.* baggage, trunk
bagnato wet
bagno *m.* bath
balenare lighten
bambino, -a, child
banda *f.* band
bandiera *f.* flag
barattare exchange
barca *f.* boat
basso low
bastare suffice, be enough
bastone *m.* cane
battāglia *f.* battle
bāttere beat
baule *m.* trunk; **fare il ~** pack one's trunk
bāvero *m.* coat-collar
bēbē *m.* baby
bēl for bello
- Bēlga** (*pl. -gi, -ghe*) Belgian
il Bēlgio Belgium
bellezza *f.* beauty
bēllico pertaining to war
bellicoso warlike
bellino pretty
bēllo fine, beautiful; **bēll' e fatto** ready-made
benchè *conj. w. subj.* although
bēne, bēn, well
benefizio *m.* benefit
benissimo, benone, very well indeed
benzina *f.* gasolene
bēre drink
bianco white
biasmare blame
bicchiere *m.* drinking-glass
bigio gray
biglietto *m.* ticket; **~ d'andata e ritorno** round-trip ticket
bilāncio *m.* balance, account
bilione *m.* trillion (U.S.), billion (Eng.)
bimbo, -a, baby
biognare *impers.* need
biogno *m.* need
bocconi on one's face
bōia *m.* executioner
bolletta *f.* check, receipt
bollire boil
Borbone Bourbon
borsa *f.* purse, bag
bosco *m.* wood
bottega *f.* shop
bottiglia *f.* bottle
bōve *m.* ox
braccio *m.* arm
brano *m.* shred, fragment
bravo brave; clever
breccia *f.* breach
brēve short

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- britännico** *Britannic*
bruciare *burn*
bruscamente *abruptly*
brutto *ugly*
büio *m. dark*; *al* ∼ *in the dark*
buono, buon, good; **buon giorno** *good morning*; **buona sera** *good afternoon, good evening*
burro *m. butter*
büssola *f. compass, bearings*
busta *f. envelope*
buttare *throw*; ∼ *via* *throw away*
- cacciare** *hunt, drive out*
cadere *fall*
caduco *weak*
caffè *m. coffee*; *café*
caldo *warm, hot*; **fa** ∼ *it is warm weather*
calmo *calm*
calore *m. heat*
calzino *m. sock*
calzolaio *m. shoemaker*
calzoni *m. pl. trousers*
cambiare *change* [room
cāmera *f. chamber*; ∼ *da letto* *bed-*
cameriere *m. waiter*
camminare *walk*
campagna *f. country*
campione *m. sample*
cane *m. dog*
cannone *m. cannon*
cantare *sing*
canzone *f. song*
capello *m. hair*
capino *m. crown of hat*
capire *understand*
capitale *f. capital*
capitare *chance to be, happen in*
capitolo *m. chapter*
- capo** *m. head*; *a* ∼ *chino* *with bowed head*
caporale *m. corporal*
cappello *m. hat*; ∼ *sodo* *derby hat*;
 ∼ *a cencio* *soft hat*
carattere *m. character, disposition*
carbonaro *m. charcoal-burner*
cārcere *m. prison*
cardo *m. thistle*
carezza *f. caress*
cārica *f. load*; *office*
caricare *load*; *wind up*
cārico *loaded*; *wound up*
carino *charming, pretty*
Carlo *Charles*
carne *f. meat*
caro *dear*
carponi *on all fours*
carrozza *f. carriage*
carta *f. paper*; ∼ *protocollo* *foolscap*
cartasuga *f. blotting-paper*
cartellino *m. sheet, label*
cartello *m. shop-sign*
cartolaio *m. stationer*
cartolina postale *post card*
casa *f. house*; *a* ∼ *homeward, home*; *in* ∼ *at home*; *stare in* ∼ *stay in*; *star di* ∼ *reside*
le Cascine "The Dairies," a park in Florence
caşo *m. case*; *in ogni* ∼ *in any case*;
 ∼ *mai* *in case*
castello *m. castle*
catena *f. chain*
cattivo *bad*
cavaliere *m. knight, man on horse-back*
cavallo *m. horse*; *andare a* ∼ *ride horseback*
cavare *take out*

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- cēdere yield
 cēlebre celebrated
 celeste light blue
 cencio *m.* rag; cappello a ∞ soft hat
 cenno *m.* signal, nod
 centesimo *m.* centime
 centimetro *m.* centimeter
 centinaio *m.* collective hundred
 cento hundred, a hundred
 centrale central
 centro *m.* center; al ∞ down town
 cercare look for; ∞ di (*w. inf.*) try
 cervello *m.* brain
 Cēsare Caesar
 cessare cease
 che which, that
 chi who, whom
 chiacchierare chat
 chiamare call; chiamarsi be called,
 be named
 Chiara Clara
 chiaro clear, light (color)
 chicca *f.* sweetmeat
 chieša *f.* church
 chilo *m.* kilogram
 chino bent; a capo ∞ with bowed
 head
 chiōcciola *f.* snail; scala a ∞ wind-
 ing stair
 chirurgo *m.* surgeon
 chiūdere shut
 ci, ce, *pron.* us; *adv.* there, at it, to
 it; c'è, ci sono, there is, there are
 ciarpetta *f.* necktie, scarf
 ciascuno each one
 cieco blind
 cilindro *m.* cylinder; cappello a ∞
 tall hat
 cima *f.* summit; in ∞ a on top of
 cinquanta fifty
 cinque five
 cioccolata *f.* chocolate
 circa about, approximately
 Ciro Cyrus
 città *f.* city
 cittadino *m.* citizen
 ciuco *m.* donkey
 civetta *f.* coquette
 civile civilized; civic; polite
 civiltà *f.* civilization
 classe *f.* class
 clāssico classic
 cogli, cōi, 75
 cōgliere gather, pluck
 cognata *f.* sister-in-law
 cognato *m.* brother-in-law
 cōl, cōllo, cōlla, 75
 colazione *f.* luncheon; far ∞ take
 luncheon
 collana *f.* necklace
 cōllera *f.* anger
 collina *f.* hill
 cōlmo *m.* summit
 colorato colored; tan
 colore *m.* color
 cōlpa *f.* blame, fault
 coltello *m.* knife
 comandare command
 comando *m.* command
 combāttere fight
 cōme as, like
 cominciare begin
 commissiōne *f.* errand
 commosso moved
 commovēnte moving
 cōmodo convenient, comfortable;
 far ∞ come handy; star ∞ be
 comfortable
 compagno, -a, companion
 comparire appear

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

compire fulfill, complete	convenire (138) be suitable, be fitting
compleanno <i>m.</i> birthday	conversazione <i>f.</i> conversation
complimento <i>m.</i> compliment; far complimenti stand on ceremony	copertone <i>m.</i> blanket
compra <i>f.</i> purchase	copiare copy
comprare buy	coppia <i>f.</i> couple
comunicante connecting, communicating	coprire cover
comunicare communicate	coraggio <i>m.</i> courage
con with	cornetta <i>f.</i> horn
condannare condemn	corrèggere correct
condurre conduct	còrrere run
confine <i>m.</i> boundary	corrispondere correspond
conforto <i>m.</i> comfort	corsa <i>f.</i> course, run
confrontare compare	cortese kind
congiurare conspire	corto short
conoscenza <i>f.</i> acquaintance	cosa <i>f.</i> thing
conoscere know, be acquainted with	coscienza <i>f.</i> consciousness
conquistatore <i>m.</i> conqueror	così thus, so
considerare consider	costa <i>f.</i> coast
considerevole considerable	costaggiù down there
consigliere <i>m.</i> adviser, counselor	costare cost
consiglio <i>m.</i> advice	cotone <i>m.</i> cotton
consistere consist	còttimo <i>m.</i> contract; a ~ by the piece
cōnsole <i>m.</i> consul	cravatta <i>f.</i> necktie, cravat
consumato used up	crèdere believe
contadino, -a, peasant	crèscere grow
contante <i>m.</i> counting, cash; a contanti in cash	cristiano Christian
conte <i>m.</i> count	Cristòforo Colombo Christopher Columbus
contentarsi (di) content oneself (with)	crociata <i>f.</i> crusade
contento contented	cucchiaio <i>m.</i> spoon
contessa <i>f.</i> countess	cucina <i>f.</i> kitchen; cookery
continuare continue	cucire sew
conto <i>m.</i> bill; tornar ~ be of advantage; non mērita il ~ it is not worth while	cugino, -a, cousin
contrario contrary	cui to whom, of whom, to which, of which
contro against	cultura <i>f.</i> culture
	cuocere cook
	cuoio <i>m.</i> leather

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- cuore *m.* heart
 da by, from
 dacchè since (*temporal*)
 dagli, dai, dal, dallo, dalla, 75
 danno *3 pl.* of dare
 danno *m.* damage, injury
 dappertutto everywhere
 dare (131) give; ~ su face on; ~
 il buon viaggio wish (one) a pleas-
 ant journey
 davanti a in front of
 davvero indeed
 dēcimo tenth
 decina *f.* (*collective*) ten
 dedicare dedicate
 degenerare degenerate
 degli, dei, del, dello, della, 75
 denaro *m.* money
 dente *m.* tooth
 dentro (*di*) within
 deplorare regret, lament
 deprimere depress
 deputato *m.* deputy, representative
 desiderare desire
 desiderio *m.* desire
 deşinare dine
 deştro right
 determinare determine
 detto *p. p.* of dire
 deşvi, deşve, 2-3 *sg. pres. ind.* of dovere
 di of; di là da beyond; di qua da
 on this side of
 di *m.* day
 dia *sg. pres. subj.* of dare
 diālogo *m.* dialogue
 dica *sg. pres. subj.* of dire
 dice says
 dicembre *m.* December
 dichiarare declare
 diciannove nineteen
 diciassette seventeen
 diciotto eighteen
 dicono *3 pl. pres. ind.* of dire
 dieci ten
 dietro a behind
 difendere defend
 difesa *f.* defense
 difetto *m.* fault, defect
 difficile difficult
 diffondere scatter
 difilato straight ahead
 dighiacciare thaw
 dimenticare forget
 diminuire diminish
 dimorare dwell, reside
 dimostrare show
 dinanzi a in front of
 dinastia *f.* dynasty
 dio *m.* god
 dire (175) say
 direzione *f.* direction
 dirigere direct
 discosto (a) distant (from)
 discreto modest, discreet
 discutere discuss
 disfatta *f.* defeat
 disgrāzia *f.* misfortune
 disgraziatamente unfortunately
 dispaccio *m.* telegram
 disperato desperate
 dispiacente sorry
 dispiacere displease
 disse *3 sg. p. abs.* of dire
 distendere spread
 ditale *m.* thimble
 dito *m.* finger
 diventare become
 diverso different
 divertirsi amuse oneself
 dividere divide

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

<p>dò 1 <i>sg. pres. ind. of dare</i></p> <p>dobbiamo 1 <i>pl. pres. ind. of dovere</i></p> <p>dōdici twelve</p> <p>dolce <i>m.</i> sweetmeat, dessert; <i>adj.</i> sweet</p> <p>dolere (172) grieve; <i>w. dat.</i> ache</p> <p>dolorosamente sorrowfully, painfully</p> <p>domandare ask; ∞ di ask for (a person)</p> <p>domani to-morrow</p> <p>domēnica <i>f.</i> Sunday</p> <p>domēstico <i>m.</i> servant; <i>adj.</i> domestic</p> <p>donna <i>f.</i> woman; woman-servant</p> <p>dopo <i>prep.</i> after; ∞ che <i>conj.</i> after</p> <p>doppio double</p> <p>dormire sleep</p> <p>dorso <i>m.</i> back</p> <p>dotare endow</p> <p>dottto learned</p> <p>dove where</p> <p>dovere <i>v.</i> (188) owe; <i>m.</i> duty</p> <p>dovesse 3 <i>sg. p. subj. of dovere</i></p> <p>dovunque <i>conj. w. subj.</i> wherever</p> <p>dozzina <i>f.</i> dozen</p> <p>drammatico dramatic</p> <p>dubitare doubt</p> <p>duca <i>m.</i> duke</p> <p>ducato <i>m.</i> duchy</p> <p>due two; Due Sicilie <i>f. pl.</i> Kingdom of the Two Sicilies</p> <p>dunque then, accordingly</p> <p>duodēcimo twelfth</p> <p>duomo <i>m.</i> cathedral</p> <p>durare last</p> <p>è, ed (39), and</p> <p>è is</p> <p>eccitamento <i>m.</i> excitement</p>	<p>ecco here is, there is, behold</p> <p>eco <i>c.</i> echo</p> <p>educato polite</p> <p>effettuare effect</p> <p>egli, ei, he</p> <p>ēgolino they (<i>m.</i>)</p> <p>elegante elegant</p> <p>elevato elevated</p> <p>elēggere elect</p> <p>ella she</p> <p>ēlleno they (<i>f.</i>)</p> <p>elogio <i>m.</i> praise, eulogy</p> <p>emozione <i>f.</i> emotion</p> <p>energīa <i>f.</i> energy</p> <p>Enrico Henry</p> <p>entrambi both</p> <p>entrare enter</p> <p>entusiasmo <i>m.</i> enthusiasm</p> <p>era <i>f.</i> era</p> <p>eredità <i>f.</i> heredity</p> <p>erōe <i>m.</i> hero</p> <p>eroicamente heroically</p> <p>esclusivamente exclusively</p> <p>eșēmpio <i>m.</i> example</p> <p>eșērcito <i>m.</i> army</p> <p>eșiliare exile</p> <p>eșitare hesitate</p> <p>esperto skillful, expert</p> <p>esporre (196) expose</p> <p>espressione <i>f.</i> expression</p> <p>esprime 3 <i>sg. pres. ind. of esprimere</i></p> <p>esprimere express</p> <p>ēssere (96) be</p> <p>esso, -a, he, him, she, her, it</p> <p>estate <i>f.</i> summer</p> <p>età <i>f.</i> age; in ∞ di at the age of</p> <p>eterno eternal</p> <p>etrusco Etruscan</p> <p>evenienza <i>f.</i> event, occurrence</p> <p>evitare avoid</p>
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- fa** 3 *sg. pres. ind. of fare*
fa' 2 *sg. imper. of fare*
facchino *m.* porter
faccia *f.* face; in ∼ a opposite
faccio 1 *sg. pres. ind. of fare*
faceva 3 *sg. past descr. of fare*
facile easy
facoltà *f.* college (of university)
falco *m.* falcon, hawk
fallire fail
fallo *m.* miss, failure, error; *senza*
 ∼ without fail
fame *f.* hunger; *aver* ∼ be hungry
famiglia *f.* family
famoso famous
fango *m.* mud
fantasia *f.* ornament
fare (163) make, do; *far caldo* be
 hot weather; *far freddo* be cold
 weather; *far colazione* take break-
 fast; *far passare, far entrare*, show
 in; *far tardi* be late
fatale fatal
fatica *f.* fatigue, effort
faticoso wearisome
fatto *m.* fact, deed; *p. p. of fare*
favore *m.* favor; *per* ∼ please
favorire favor, favor with
fazzoletto *m.* handkerchief
febbraio *m.* February
fecero 3 *pl. p. abs. of fare*
fedè *f.* faith
fedeltà *f.* fidelity
felice happy
feltro *m.* felt
ferire wound, strike
ferita *f.* wound
fermaglio *m.* brooch
fermarsì stop
fermo firm, still
ferro *m.* iron
ferroviario railway (*adj.*)
fervere burn, be fervent
fiesta *f.* holiday
fiacco weak
fico *m.* fig
figlia *f.* daughter
figlio *m.* son
figurare figure
figurarsi imagine
figurino *m.* pattern; manikin
Filippo Philip
filosofico philosophical
finalmente finally
finchè as long as; ∼ non until
fine *f.* end; *m.* aim; *alla* ∼ at last
finestra *f.* window
finire finish
fino fine
fino a up to, as far as; **fin da** from
 (*time*); **fin dove** how far
finzione *f.* fiction, pretense
fiocco *m.* bow
fiore *m.* flower
fiorentino Florentine
fiore bloom
fiorito in bloom
Firenze Florence
fischio *m.* whistle
fiume *m.* river
foderà *f.* lining
foglia *f.* leaf
fondino *m.* shape, foundation
fondo *m.* back, bottom, end; in ∼ a
 at the back *etc.* of
forbici *f. pl.* scissors
forchetta *f.* fork
forestiere foreigner
forma *f.* form, last
formicolare swarm

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

fornaio <i>m.</i> baker	generale <i>adj.</i> general; <i>m.</i> general
fornire furnish	generalmente usually, generally
forse perhaps	gēnere <i>m.</i> sort, kind
forte strong	gēnero <i>m.</i> son-in-law
fortuna <i>f.</i> fortune, good luck	generoso generous
forza <i>f.</i> force; a ~ di by dint of	genitori <i>m. pl.</i> parents
forzato forced	gennaio <i>m.</i> January
fotografia <i>f.</i> photograph	gente <i>f.</i> folk, people
fra among, between	gentile kind, agreeable
francese French	ghiacciare freeze
Francesco Francis	ghiaccio <i>m.</i> ice
la Francia France	già already; once, formerly
francobollo <i>m.</i> postage-stamp	giacchetta <i>f.</i> jacket
frate <i>m.</i> friar, brother	il Giappone Japan
fratello <i>m.</i> brother	giardino <i>m.</i> garden
freddo cold; fa ~ it is cold	ginocchio <i>m.</i> knee
freno <i>m.</i> brake	ginocchi on one's knees
freSCO cool	giocare (110, d) play
fretta <i>f.</i> haste; aver ~ be in haste	gioia <i>f.</i> joy
frettoloso hurried [resist]	gioielliere <i>m.</i> jeweler
fronte <i>f.</i> front; forehead; far ~ a	gioiello <i>m.</i> jewel
frugale frugal	Giorgio George
frutto <i>m.</i> fruit	giornale <i>m.</i> newspaper
fu the late, deceased	giornata <i>f.</i> day, period of a day;
fucilazione <i>f.</i> execution, shooting	a ~ by the day
fuggire flee	giorno <i>m.</i> day; di ~ by day
fūlmine <i>m.</i> thunderbolt	giōvane young
fumo <i>m.</i> smoke	giovanetto, -a, young person
fungo <i>m.</i> mushroom	Giovanni, Giovannino, John
fuoco <i>m.</i> fire	giovare be of use
fuori outside; ~ di porta outside	giovedì <i>m.</i> Thursday
the city; andar ~ go out	gioventù <i>f.</i> youth
galantuomo <i>m.</i> honorable man	girare turn
gallina <i>f.</i> hen	giratina <i>f.</i> short walk
ganci <i>m. pl.</i> hooks (and eyes)	giro <i>m.</i> tour, circular journey
garōfano <i>m.</i> carnation	giù down
gattino <i>m.</i> kitten	giubba <i>f.</i> dress-coat
gelare freeze	giudizioso sensible, judicious
gelato <i>m.</i> ice-cream	giugno <i>m.</i> June
	Giulio Julius

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- giungere** arrive
giurare swear
Giuseppe Joseph
giusto just, right
gli to him; the (*m. pl.*, 71, b, c)
gloria *f.* glory
gnocco *m.* dumpling
gomito *m.* elbow
gondola *f.* gondola
gota *f.* cheek
governatore *m.* governor
governo *m.* government
grammatica *f.* grammar
grande large, great
granducato *m.* grand duchy
grasso fat
grave heavy
grazie *f. pl.* thanks
grazioso pretty, charming, graceful
greco Greek
gridare cry, shout
grigio gray
grossezza size, magnitude
grosso big
gru *f.* crane
gruppo *m.* group
guadagnare earn
guancia *f.* cheek
guantaio *m.* glover
guanto *m.* glove
guardare look, look at
guardia *f.* conductor, guard
guarire recover, be cured
guarnizione *f.* trimming
guerra *f.* war
guida *f.* guide
gusto *m.* taste

idea *f.* idea
ieri yesterday

ignorante ignorant
il, i, the (*m. sg. and pl.*)
illustre illustrious
imbandire serve (a meal)
immediatamente immediately
imparare learn
impari odd, uneven
impedire prevent, hinder
imperatore *m.* emperor
impermeabile *m.* rain-coat
impero *m.* empire
impervio impervious
impiccare hang (a man)
impiegato *m.* employee
imporre (196) impose
importare import
impossibile impossible
impostare post, mail
imprigionare imprison
improvviso unforeseen; all' ~ unexpectedly
imprudente imprudent
in in, into
incassare set
incasso *m.* receipts
inchiostro *m.* ink
incominciare commence
incontrare meet
indarno in vain
indietro back, backward
indipendenza *f.* independence
individuo individual
indomani *m.* (the) next day
indovinare guess
industria *f.* industry
inesauribile inexhaustible
infatti in fact
infelice unhappy
inferiore inferior, lower
inferno *m.* Inferno, hell

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

<p>infimo lowest inganno <i>m.</i> deceit ingegnere <i>m.</i> engineer ingegno <i>m.</i> talent, genius l'Inghilterra <i>f.</i> England inglese English Inglese <i>m.</i> Englishman ingrato ungrateful innalzare raise insegna <i>f.</i> shop sign insegnare teach insieme together insigne remarkable insudiciare soil intero whole, entire intelligente intelligent intendere understand interrotto interrupted intitolare entitle intravedere glimpse invecchiare grow old invece instead; on the contrary inverno <i>m.</i> winter invviare send io I isola <i>f.</i> island istituire establish istitutore, -trice, instructor, teacher istituzione <i>f.</i> institution l'Italia <i>f.</i> Italy italiano Italian</p>	<p>lana <i>f.</i> wool lanciare throw lapis <i>m.</i> pencil larghezza <i>f.</i> width largo wide lasciare leave, allow latino Latin latta <i>f.</i> tin latte <i>m.</i> milk lavamano <i>m.</i> washstand lavarsi bathe, wash lavorare work lavoro <i>m.</i> task le to her; the (<i>f. pl.</i>) legge <i>f.</i> law leggendo reading leggere read leggiere light; light-colored legno <i>m.</i> wood; carriage lei her; you, <i>sg.</i> (65, a) lettera <i>f.</i> letter letteratura <i>f.</i> literature letto <i>p. p.</i> of leggere letto <i>m.</i> bed levare lift; levarsi rise; take off lezione <i>f.</i> lesson li them (<i>m.</i>) lì there liberazione <i>f.</i> liberation libero free libertà <i>f.</i> liberty libraio <i>m.</i> bookseller libro <i>m.</i> book licenza <i>f.</i> leave lieto gay, cheerful limone <i>m.</i> lemon lingua <i>f.</i> language; tongue lira <i>f.</i> lira, twenty cents liscio smooth, plain lite <i>f.</i> lawsuit</p>
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- livornese** Leghornese
Livorno Leghorn
lo him; the (*m. sg.*, 71, *b*)
lodare praise
il Lombardo-Vēneto Lombardo-Venetia
Lōndra London
lontano (da) distant (from)
loro their, them; you, *pl.* (65, *a*)
lotta *f.* struggle
lotto *m.* lottery
lūglio *m.* July
lui him
Luigi Louis
lume *m.* light, lamp
lunedì *m.* Monday
lunghezza *f.* length
lungi far
lungo long
luogo *m.* place
lusso *m.* luxury
lustrare polish, black
lustrascarpe *m.* bootblack
lutto *m.* mourning; *a* ∞ in mourning

ma but
mācchia *f.* stain; thicket; brambles
mācchina *f.* machine; ∞ *da scrivere* typewriter
madre *f.* mother
maestà *f.* majesty
maestro, -a, teacher
māggio *m.* May
maggiore greater; elder
mai ever; non . . . ∞ never
malamente badly
malanno *m.* misfortune
malattia *f.* illness
male badly; far ∞ a hurt; non c' è ∞ pretty well; ∞ *di testa* headache

malgrado *m.* displeasure; ∞ *che conj. w. subj.* notwithstanding that
mamma, mamma, *f.* mamma
māmmola *f.* violet
mancanza *f.* lack; *sentire la* ∞ *di* miss
mancare fail, be lacking
māncia *f.* fee, tip
mandare send
mane *f.* morning (*poet.*); *da* ∞ *a sera* from morning till night
mangiare eat
mānica *f.* sleeve
mānico *m.* handle
maniera *f.* manner
mano *f.* hand; *a* ∞ by hand; *di seconda* ∞ at second hand; *dar la* ∞ *a* shake hands with
māntice *m.* bellows; automobile-top
mārcia *f.* march
marciapiēde *m.* sidewalk
mare *m.* sea; *al* ∞ by the sea; *in* ∞ at sea
marina *f.* navy
marinaio *m.* sailor
marito *m.* husband
martedì *m.* Tuesday
martirio *m.* martyrdom
marzo *m.* March
māschera *f.* mask
maschio male
māssimo greatest
matēria *f.* subject, matter, material
mattina *f.* morning
mazzolino *m.* bouquet
medēsimo same, self
medicina *f.* medicine
mēdico *m.* physician
mēglio better (*adv.*)
mēla *f.* apple
memōria *f.* memory

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- mēno** less (*adv.*); fare a ~ di do without; a ~ chē *conj. w. subj.* unless
- mēnte** *f.* mind; a ~ by heart
- mentire** lie
- mēntre** while
- merciaio** *m.* dry-goods merchant
- mercoledì** *m.* Wednesday
- meridionale** southern
- meritare** deserve
- mēse** *m.* month
- mēssa** *f.* Mass
- mestiēre** *m.* trade, craft
- metà** *f.* half
- metallo** *m.* metal
- mētro** *m.* meter
- metrōpoli** *f.* metropolis
- mēttēre** put, put on; mēttērsi a be- gin; mēttērsi a sedēre sit down
- mēzzanotte** *f.* midnight
- mēzzo** *m.* half; middle; in ~ a in the middle of
- mēzzogiorno** *m.* mid-day; south
- mī, mē, me**
- mīglio** (*pl.* miglia) *m.* mile
- migliore** better (*adj.*)
- Milano** Milan
- miliōne** *m.* million
- militare** military
- militariſmo** *m.* militarism
- militarista** *m.* militarist
- mille** thousand, a thousand
- mināccia** *f.* threat
- minacciare** threaten
- miniēra** *f.* mine
- mīnimo** least
- ministro** *m.* member of Cabinet
- minore** less; younger
- minuto** *m.* minute
- mio** my
- mīsero** miserable, wretched
- miſura** *f.* measure; su ~ to order
- mite** gentle
- Mōdena** a city in northern Italy
- modenēse** of Modena
- moderno** modern
- modēsto** modest
- modista** *f.* milliner
- mōglie** (*pl.* mogli) *f.* wife
- mōlla** *f.* spring, mainspring
- mōlle** *f. pl.* tongs
- moltitūdine** *f.* multitude
- mōlto, -i**, much, many
- momento** *m.* moment; a momenti in a minute
- mōnaco** *m.* monk
- monarca** *m.* monarch
- monārchico** monarchical
- mōndo** *m.* world
- monello** *m.* rascal
- monēta** *f.* coin, piece of money
- montagna** *f.* mountain
- montare** mount, climb
- montone** *m.* sheep
- morire** (156) die
- mormorare** murmur
- morte** *f.* death
- mōrto** dead
- mostrare** show
- mōstro** *m.* monster
- mōto** *m.* motion
- movimēto** *m.* movement
- muggire** low
- mughetto** *m.* lily-of-the-valley
- muōvere** (110, *d*, 1) move
- muricciuolo** *m.* low wall
- muro** *m.* wall
- muſeo** *m.* museum
- mutare** change; ~ di pensiero change one's mind

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- Nāpoli** Naples
nāscere be born
nascōndere hide
nascōsto hidden; **di** ∞ secretly
nastro, nastrino, m. ribbon
Natale m. Christmas; **buōn** ∞
 Merry Christmas
natura f. nature
naturale natural
navale naval
nazionale national
nazionalità f. nationality
nazione f. nation
ne adv. thence; *pron.* of it, of them
nè conj. neither, nor; ∞ . . . ∞ neither
 . . . nor
nēbbia f. fog
necessārio necessary
negōzio m. shop
nel, nello, nella, negli, nei, 75
nemico m. enemy
nemmēno not even
neppure nor . . . either; not even
nero black
nessuno no one
neve f. snow
nevicare snow
nido m. nest
niēte nothing; you're welcome
nipōte, nipotino, m. nephew
nitrire neigh
nō no
nōbile noble
nōce f. walnut
nōi we, us
nōia f. annoyance; **dar** ∞ a annoy
noiōso annoying
nōme m. name
nōn not, no
nondimēno nevertheless
nōnno m. grandfather, grandparent
nōno ninth
nonostante chē conj. w. subj. not-
 withstanding that
nōstro our, ours
notizie f. pl. news
nōtte f. night; **di** ∞ by night
novanta ninety
nōve nine
novembre m. November
novità f. novelty, notion
nozione f. notion, idea
nōzze f. pl. wedding
nulla nothing
nuōra f. daughter-in-law
nuōvo new; **di** ∞ again
nutrire nourish

o, ođ (39), or; o . . . o either . . . or
o or o now, well now
occasione f. occasion, opportunity
ōcchio m. eye; **a quattr'ōcchi** tête-à-
 tête; **dar nēll'** ∞ be conspicuous
occidentale western
occōrrere impers. need; **occorrente**
 requisite, wanted
occupare occupy
offrire offer
oggí to-day
ogni every
ognuno every one
olmo m. elm
ombrello m. umbrella
ōnda f. wave
onomāstico m. saint's-day
onore m. honor
ōpera f. work
operaio m. workman
ōra now; **ōr** ∞ just now; **ōr sōno** ago
oramāi, ormāi, henceforth

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- ordinamento** *m.* arrangement
ordinare order
ordine *m.* order
orecchino *m.* earring [deaf ear
orecchio *m.* ear; ∞ *da mercante*
organizzazione *f.* organization
orlo *m.* edge
oro *m.* gold
orologio *m.* watch
orrore *m.* horror
osare dare
oscuro obscure
osservare observe
osso *m.* bone
ottanta eighty
ottavo eighth
ottimo best
otto eight
ottobre *m.* October
ove where
ovvero or else
- pacco** *m.* parcel
pace *f.* peace
padre *m.* father
padrone *m.* landlord
paeşaggio *m.* landscape
paese *m.* country; village
pagare pay, pay for
pagina *f.* page
paglia *f.* straw; *muovere* ∞ stir
paio *m.* (*pl.* *paia*) pair
palazzo *m.* palace
palla *f.* ball
panchetto *m.* footstool
pane *m.* bread
paniere *m.* basket
panna *f.* whipped cream
panorama *m.* view
Päolo Paul
- paradişo** *m.* paradise
paragonare compare
pareggiare equal
parente *m.* relative
parere (161) appear
pari even
Parigi Paris
parlare speak
pärroco *m.* parish priest
parte *f.* part, side, share
partire depart
parvenire (138) arrive
Pasqua *f.* Easter
passare pass
passeggiare walk
passaggiata *f.* walk; *fare una* ∞
 take a walk
passaggio *m.* walk
passo *m.* step; passage
pasta *f.* cake
patire suffer
pätria *f.* country, fatherland
patrimönio *m.* patrimony
patriöta *m.* patriot
patto *m.* bargain; a ∞ *che conj. w.*
 subj. on condition that
päura *f.* fear; *aver* ∞ *di* be afraid of
paziienza *f.* patience
pazzo mad
peccato *m.* sin; what a pity
peggio worse (*adv.*)
peggiöre worse (*adj.*)
pei, pel, 75
pele *f.* skin
pellegrino *m.* pilgrim
penna *f.* pen; ∞ a *serbatoio* fountain
 pen
pensare think, reflect; ∞ a think of
pensiero *m.* thought; *dar* ∞ a worry
 (*tr.*); *stare in* ∞ worry (*intr.*)

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- pensione** *f.* board; boarding-house; boarding-school
pentirsi repent
per for; **per uno** apiece
pera *f.* pear
perchè why; because; so that
perciò therefore
perdere lose
peregrinare wander, go on pilgrimage
pericolo *m.* danger
pericoloso dangerous
permesso *m.* permission, permit me
permettere permit
pero *m.* pear-tree
però however
perseguitare persecute
persona *f.* person
pesante heavy
pesco *m.* peach-tree
pessimo worst
Petrarca Petrarch
petto *m.* breast
pezzo *m.* piece
piacere a (185) please; **per** ~ please; **far** ~ **a** do a favor for
piaggia *f.* slope
piangere weep
pianista *m.* pianist
piano *m.* plain; *adv.* softly, gently
pianta *f.* plant
piattino (m.) da tazza saucer
piatto *m.* plate, dish; course
piazza *f.* square, open place
piccino tiny
piccolo small
piède *m.* foot; **a pièdi** on foot
pièga *f.* plait
il Piemonte Piedmont
piemontese Piedmontese
pieno full
pietra *f.* stone
prendere take
piovere rain
pittore *m.* painter, artist
più more
piuma *f.* plume
piuolo *m.* rung; **scala a piugli** ladder
piuttosto rather
pneumatico *m.* tire
poco *adv.* little, a little; *pl.* **pochi** *adj.* few, a few; **a** ~ **a** ~ little by little
poeta *m.* poet
poetare poetize
poi then
poichè since (*causal*)
politica *f.* politics
politico *adj.* political; *m.* statesman
polvere *f.* powder
pomeridiano of the afternoon
pompare pump
ponte *m.* bridge
pontificio papal, pontifical
popolo *m.* people
porgere stretch out
porre (196) put
porta *f.* door, gate
portare carry
portata *f.* reach, ability; **a** ~ **di** **mano** within reach of one's hand
porto *m.* harbor
posata *f.* place at table, cover
posizione *f.* position, location
possibile possible
possibilità *f.* possibility
posso *1 sg. pres. ind. of potere*
posta *f.* post, mail; **a** ~ on purpose
postale postal; **cartolina** ~ post card
postino *m.* postman
posto *m.* place, room

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- potere (168)** can, be able; non ~ a meno di cannot help
potrēbbero 3 *pl. past fut. of potere*
pōvero poor
povertà *f.* poverty
pranzare dine
pranzo *m.* dinner
pratica *f.* practice
pratico practical; ~ di familiar with
prato *m.* meadow
preferire prefer
pregare ask, pray
pregio *m.* value
prego don't mention it
prēndere take; prēndersela take offense
preoccuparsi di be concerned with
preparare prepare
prezentare present
presidente *m.* president
prestare lend
presto quickly, soon
presumere assume
prevalere (220) prevail
prezioso precious
prezzo *m.* price
prigione *f.* prison
prima before, earlier; quanto ~ as soon as possible; ~ che *conj. w. subj.* before; ~ di *prep.* before
primavera *f.* spring
primitivo primitive
primo first
principale principal
principe *m.* prince
principessa *f.* princess
principiare begin
principio *m.* beginning; fin dal ~ from the first
problema *m.* problem
produzione *f.* production
professore *m.* professor
profondamente profoundly
proibire prevent, forbid
promettere promise
pronto ready; all aboard
proprietà *f.* property
prōprio own; exactly
prova *f.* trial; fitting
provare try, try on
prudente prudent
pulire clean
punire punish
puntare aim
punto *m.* point
purchè *conj. w. subj.* provided that
pure however; pray
purgatōrio *m.* purgatory

qua here
quaderno *m.* note-book
quadrettino *m.* check
quadro *m.* picture
qualche (*sg. only*) some
quale, -i, such as
qualora whenever
qualunque whatever
quando when
quanto how much; in ~ a as for, regarding; per ~ however
quaranta forty
quarto *m.* quarter, fourth
quattōrdici fourteen
quattro four
quello that; quel che that which, what
quercia *f.* oak
questo this; quest' altro next, coming

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- quiete** *f.* quiet
quindici fifteen
quinto fifth
- raccomandare** mend; recommend;
raccomandarsi warn, urge
raccomandazione *f.* warning, recom-
 mendation
raccontare narrate
rado rare; *di* ∞ seldom
raffreddore *m.* cold; **prendere un** ∞
 catch cold
ragazza *f.* girl
ragazzo *m.* boy
ragione *f.* reason; **avere** ∞ be right
rallentare slacken speed
rame *m.* copper, brass
rappresentare represent
re *m.* king
reale royal
recare bring, take; **recarsi** take one's
 way
recente recent; *di* ∞ recently
recluta *f.* recruit
redimere redeem
redingote (*Fr.*) *f.* frock-coat
reggere rule
Reggio a city in northern Italy
regina *f.* queen
regnante *m.* ruler
regno *m.* kingdom
relativo relating
remo *m.* oar; **barca a** ∞ row-boat
Reno Rhine
repubblicano republican
resistenza *f.* resistance
restare remain
resto *m.* rest; change (money)
rete *f.* net
retta *f.* heed; **dar** ∞ give heed
- riabbracciare** embrace again
riaprire reopen
riavere recover, get back
ricco rich
ricevere receive
richiedere demand
ricontare count over
ricordarsi di remember
ridare give again, give back
ridere laugh
ridicolo ridiculous
rifare remake, rebuild
rifiutare refuse
rigato striped
rigoroso rigorous
rimanere (129) remain
rimedio *m.* remedy; **non c'è** ∞ there
 is no help for it
rimproverare reprove
rimprovero *m.* reproof
rincrescere *impers.* pain, cause sor-
 row; **mi rincresce** I'm sorry
rinomato famous
rinunziare a renounce
riparare take refuge
ripetere repeat
risata *f.* laugh, laughter
rischio *m.* risk
riso *m.* laugh
risorgimento *m.* resurrection
risparmiare save, spare
rispettabile respectable
rispondere respond
risultato *m.* result
ritornare return
ritratto *m.* portrait
riunire assemble
riuscire (204) succeed
rivedere see again; **a rivederla**
 au revoir

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- rivoltare** turn back
rivoluzionário revolutionary
rǒba (*collective*) *f.* things
rocchetto *m.* spool
Roma Rome
romanzo *m.* novel
rǒmpere break
rǒsa *f.* rose
rosso red
rǒta *f.* wheel
rotare (110, *d*) turn
rovescio *m.* reverse side; a ~ up-
 side down; piǒvere a ~ rain in
 torrents
rǒzzo rough
rumoroso noisy
- sābato** *m.* Saturday
sacco *m.* bag
sacrificio *m.* sacrifice
sacro sacred
sala *f.* hall; ~ da pranzo dining-room
salire go up
salita *f.* rise, slope
salone *m.* parlor
salotto *m.* sitting-room
saltare in aria be blown up
salutare salute
salute *f.* health, safety, salvation
saluto *m.* greeting
salvare save
salvezza *f.* safety
salvo safe; in ~ in safety
sangue *m.* blood
santo *m.* saint; *adj.* holy
santo, san, Saint
sapere (132) learn, know, know
 how; ~ di smack of
sapiēte wise
saracino Saracen
- sarta** *f.* dressmaker
sarto *m.* tailor
sāvio wise
la Savgia Savoy
şbadigliare yawn
şbagliare make a mistake
şbarazzare rid
şbarcare land
şbarco *m.* disembarkation
şbāttere rout
scaffale *m.* shelf
scala *f.* stair; ~ a chiǒcciola winding
 stair; ~ a piuǒli ladder
scalino *m.* step of stair
scarafāggio *m.* beetle
scārico run down; free, unburdened
scarpa *f.* shoe
scātola *f.* box
scēgliere (211) choose
scellerato criminal
scēndere descend
schianto *m.* crash
schippo *m.* gun
sciēnza *f.* science
scintilla *f.* spark
sciolto loose
sciǒpero *m.* strike
sciupare spoil
scǒglio *m.* reef
scolare *m.* pupil
scolāstico scholastic
scollato low-necked
scommessa *f.* wager
scompartimento *m.* compartment
scǒpo *m.* purpose
scoppiare burst
scoprire discover
scorso last, past
scozzese Scotch; checked, plaid
scricchiolare creak

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- scrittore** *m.* writer
scrivere write
scudo *m.* shield
scuola *f.* school
scuotere (110, *d*, 1) shake
scuro dark
scusa *f.* excuse
se if
se 3 *sg.* and *pl.* *disj. refl.*
sebbene *conj. w. subj.* although
secolo *m.* century
secondo second; *prep.* according to
sedere sit
sedici sixteen
seggiola *f.* chair
segno *m.* sign
segreto *m.* secret
seguire follow
seguire follow
sei six
seicento six hundred
selva *f.* forest
selvaggio wild, savage
sembrare seem
semplice simple
sempre always
senatore *m.* senator
Senna *f.* Seine
sentimento *m.* sentiment
sentinella *f.* sentinel
sentire feel
senza without
sepolceto *m.* cemetery
sera *f.* evening; *buona* \sim good afternoon, good evening
serbatoio *m.* reservoir; *penna a* \sim fountain pen
serenamente serenely
serio serious; *sul* \sim seriously
serrare lock
servire serve; \sim di serve as; *servirsi* di make use of
servizio, servizino, *m.* service
sessanta sixty
sesto sixth
seta *f.* silk
sete *f.* thirst; *aver* \sim be thirsty
settanta seventy
sette seven
settembre *m.* September
settimana *f.* week
settimo seventh
sfacciato bold
sgonfio empty, flat, deflated
sgridare scold
si 3 *sg.* and *pl.* *refl. pron.*
si yes; so
sia *sg. subj. of* $\text{\textcircled{e}}$ ssere
siamo 1 *pl. pres. ind. of* $\text{\textcircled{e}}$ ssere
siccome as, since
la Sicilia Sicily
sicuro sure
signora *f.* lady, married woman, Mrs.
signore *m.* gentleman, sir, Mr.
signorina *f.* young lady, unmarried woman, Miss
silenzio *m.* silence
simbolo *m.* symbol
simpatico nice, sympathetic, congenial
sincerità *f.* sincerity
sincero sincere
singulto *m.* sob
sinistro left
slittare slide
smarrirsi lose one's way
sociale social
socialista *m.* socialist
sodisfatto satisfied

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- sodo** hard, solid · **cappello** ∼ Derby hat
soffrire suffer
soggetto *adj.* subject; *m.* subject
soggezione *f.* subjection; timidity, embarrassment; **aver** ∼ be timid, nervous
soglia *f.* threshold
sognare dream
sogno *m.* dream
soldato *m.* soldier
sole *m.* sun
soleenne solemn
sólito: **per il** ∼ usually; **come al** ∼ as usual
solitudine *f.* solitude
solo single, only (*adj.*)
soltanto only (*adv.*)
somma *f.* sum
sommo highest, supreme
sonare (110, *d*) ring, play
sonnecchiare nap
sonno *m.* sleep; **aver** ∼ be sleepy
soprābito *m.* overcoat
soprattutto above all
sopravvivere survive
sorbire sip
sorella *f.* sister
sorellina *f.* little sister
sorpresa *f.* surprise
sorte *f.* kind; lot
sortire go out
sostegno *m.* support
sottana *f.* petticoat, skirt
sotterrāneo underground
sotto under
la Spagna Spain
spagnuolo Spanish
spalla *f.* shoulder
sparare fire
spārgere scatter
sparire disappear
spasso *m.* walk; **andare a** ∼ go to walk
spaventare frighten
spāzzola *f.* brush
speciale special
spēcie *f.* kind, sort; **far** ∼ a surprise
speculatore *m.* speculator
spedale *m.* hospital
spedire send
speditamente fluently
sperare hope
spesa *f.* expense
spesso often
spettācolo *m.* spectacle
spezzare destroy, tear to pieces
spia *f.* spy
spicciarsi hasten
spiegare unfold
spīrito *m.* spirit
spōrgersi lean out
sportello *m.* ticket window, car window
sta' 2 *sg. imper. of stare*
stagione *f.* season; **mezza** ∼ between seasons
stamane this morning
stampa *f.* press
stancarsi become tired
stanco tired
stanotte to-night; last night
stanza *f.* room
stare (166) be, stay; ∼ di casa reside
starnutire sneeze
starò 1 *sg. fut. ind. of stare*
stasera this evening; this afternoon
stato *m.* state

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- statuto** *m.* constitution
staziōne *f.* station
Stēfano Stephen
sterzare turn (a vehicle)
stēsso same, self; *io* ∼ I myself
stimare consider
stivale *m.* boot
stōffa *f.* goods
stōria *f.* history, story
strada *f.* road; ∼ *sotterrānea* under-ground railway
strage *f.* butchery
straniēre *m.* foreigner, alien
straordinārio extraordinary
strapazzo *m.* abuse
strēpito *m.* noise
strētto narrow; *p. p.* of *stringere*
stringa *f.* shoe-lace
stringere squeeze, press
strumento *m.* instrument
studiare study
stūdio *m.* study
studiōso studious
stupefatto amazed
su, sur (39), on; above
sūbito immediately
sublime sublime
succēdere a succeed (*tr.*)
succhiare suck
sugli, sui, sul, sullo, sulla, 75
suo his, her
suōcero *m.* father-in-law
suolo *m.* soil
superiōre upper, superior
superiorità *f.* superiority
supplizio *m.* execution, torture
suprēmo supreme
svēgliare waken
svventura *f.* misfortune
svizzero Swiss
- svogliato** unenthusiastic, unwilling
svoltare swerve

tacco *m.* heel of shoe
tacere (185; 1 *pl. ind. pres. taciamo*)
 be silent
tagliare cut
tale such; *un* ∼ such a
Tamigi Thames
tanto, -i, so much, so many
tardi late; *far* ∼ be late
tasca *f.* pocket
tassa *f.* tax
tāvola *f.* table
tazza *f.* cup
tē *m.* tea
teatro *m.* theater
tedesco German
tēla *f.* linen
telefonare telephone
tēma *m.* theme
tēma *f.* fear
temere fear
tēmpo *m.* time, weather; *a* ∼ on time; *per* ∼ early; *col* ∼ in time, in the course of time; *fa bel* ∼ it is fine weather
tenere hold
terminare terminate
termosifone *m.* hot-water furnace
tērra *f.* earth
terrazza *f.* balcony
terribile terrible
territōrio *m.* territory
tērzo third
tēsa *f.* hat-brim
tēsta *f.* head
Tēvere *m.* Tiber
ti, tē, thee
tiēne 3 *sg. ind. pres. of tenere*

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- tingere** tinge; **tingersi** be colored
típico typical
tirannía *f.* tyranny
tiranno *m.* tyrant
tirare pull; ∞ **vęnto** blow; ∞ **via**
 continue
toccare touch; ∞ **a** concern, be the
 turn of
toçco *m.* stroke of bell; **al** ∞ at one
 P.M.
Tommaso Thomas
tonare (110, *d*) thunder
tono *m.* tone, tint
tornaçonto *m.* advantage
tornare return; ∞ **çonto** (**a**) come
 out right, be of advantage (to)
torre *f.* tower
torrente *m.* torrent
torito *m.* wrong; **aver** ∞ be wrong
la Toscana Tuscany
tossire cough
tovaglia *f.* tablecloth
tra between, among
tradimento *m.* betrayal, treachery
tradire betray
traditore, -tora *or* **-trice**, traitor,
 traitress
tranne except; ∞ **che** *conj. w. subj.*
 except that
trattare treat; **trattarsi di** be a
 question of
tratto *m.* trait; **a un** ∞ suddenly,
 all at once
traversare cross
travestire disguise
tre three
tredicęesimo thirteenth
trędici thirteen
tremare tremble
tremęndo tremendous
- treęno** *m.* train
treęta thirty
tricolore tri-colored
trionfo *m.* triumph
triplice triple
triplo triple
tristęzza *f.* sadness
troppo too, too much
trovare find
truppe *f. pl.* troops
tu thou
tuo thy
tuono *m.* thunder
Turco Turk
tutto all
- ubbidire a** obey
ubriaco drunk
uccello *m.* bird
udire (192) hear
ufficiale *m.* officer
uguale equal, exactly like
ultimo last
umano human
un a, one
undęesimo eleventh
undici eleven
unico only, unique
unità *f.* union
unito united
università *f.* university
uno (59, *d*), **un**, **una**, a, one
uomo *m.* (*pl.* **uomini**) man
uopo *m.* need; **ę d' ∞**, **fa d' ∞**, it is
 necessary
uovo *m.* (*pl.* **uova**) egg
urlo *m.* howl
urtare hurl
uscio *m.* exit, doorway
uscire (204) go out

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- uscita** *f.* exit
uva *f.* grape

va goes; **vabbene** very well
vacanza *f.* vacation
vacca *f.* cow
valere (220) be worth; **valersi** di
 avail oneself of
valigia *f.* valise
valle *f.* valley
vampiro *m.* vampire
vanno 3 *pl. ind. pres. of andare*
vasto vast
vecchio old
vedere sees
vedere see; **non** \sim l'ora di not be
 able to wait to, long to
vedetta *f.* sentinel
vela *f.* sail; **far** \sim set sail
vendemmia *f.* vintage
vendere sell
vendita *f.* sale
venerdì *m.* Friday
Venezia Venice
veneziano Venetian
venire (138) come
ventaglio *m.* fan
venti twenty
vento *m.* wind; **tirar** \sim blow
veramente truly
verde green
vergogna *f.* shame
vergognarsi be ashamed
verità *f.* truth
vero true
verso towards
vestiario *m.* wardrobe; **roba da** \sim
 clothing
vestirsi dress oneself
vestito, vestitino, m. dress

vettura *f.* carriage
vi, ve, *adv.* = *ci*; *pron.* you (*dat.*
and acc.)
via *adv.* off, away; **e via** dicendo et
 cetera
via *f.* street
viaggiare travel
viaggiatore *m.* traveler
viaggio *m.* journey; **buon** \sim a pleas-
 ant journey to you
vicenda *f.* turn; **a** \sim in turn
vicino *m.* neighbor; \sim a *prep.* near
viene 2 *sg. pres. ind. of venire*
vile cowardly
villa *f.* country-place
vincere conquer, win
vinto *p.p. of vincere*
virtù *f.* virtue, power
visita *f.* visit; **fare una** \sim a call
 upon
visitare visit
viso *m.* face
vista *f.* view; **far** \sim di make a pre-
 tense of
visto *p.p. of vedere*
vita *f.* life
vite *f.* grape-vine
vittima *f.* victim
vittoria *f.* victory
Vittorio Emanuele Victor Emman-
 uel
vittorioso victorious
vivacità *f.* vivacity
vivere live, be alive
vivo alive
vogliamo 1 *pl. pres. ind. of volere*
voglio 1 *sg. pres. ind. of volere*
voi you
volante *m.* steering-wheel
volentieri gladly, willingly

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

volere (133) wish, will; ∞ bene a
love

volontà *f.* will

volta *f.* time, a time; una ∞ once

voltarsi turn (*intr.*)

volutò desired, willed; *p.p.* of **vo-
lere**

Vossignoria *f.* Your Lordship
vostro your

vuole 3 *sg. pres. ind.* of **volere**

zia *f.* aunt

zio *m.* uncle

zitto hush

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- a, an, un, uno, una**
able capace; **be** ∞ potere
aboard a bordo; **all** ∞ pronti
about *prep.* intorno a, dintorno a;
adv. circa; **be** ∞ to star per
absurd assurdo
abuse strapazzo *m.*
accept accettare
accompany accompagnare
according to secondo
account bilancio *m.*
accustom avvezzare, abituare
ache dolore
acquaintance conoscenza *f.*
acquainted with: **be** ∞ conōscere
acquire acquistare
act agire
Adriatic *adj.* adriatico
advantage vantaggio, tornaconto *m.*;
be of ∞ to tornar conto a
advice consiglio *m.*
adviser consigliere *m.*
affair affare *m.*
affectionate affezionato
afraid: **be** ∞ (of) aver paura (di)
after *prep.* dopo; *conj.* dopo che
afternoon dopopranzo *m.*; *adj.* po-
 meridiano; **good** ∞ buona sera
afterward dopo
again di nuovo
against contro, contra
age età *f.*; **at the** ∞ of in età di
ago fa, or sono
agree accordarsi
ahead avanti; **straight** ∞ diritto
aim puntare
air aria *f.*
alive vivo
all tutto; **above** ∞ soprattutto
already già
also anche
alter alterare
always sempre
amazed stupefatto
ambition ambizione *f.*
America l' Amērica *f.*
American americano
among tra, fra
amuse divertire; ∞ oneself divertirsi
ancient antico, -chi
and e, ed
anger cōllera *f.*
annoy dar noia a
annoyance noia *f.*
anthology antologia *f.*
any *adj.* alcuno; *pron.* ne
anything qualunque cosa, ogni cosa
apartment appartamento *m.*
apiece per uno
appear comparire
apple pomo *m.*; mēla *f.*
approach avvicinarsi a
April aprile *m.*
Aristotle Aristotile
arm braccio *m.*
arms armi *f. pl.*

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- army** eșĕrcito *m.*
arrangement ordinamento *m.*
arrive arrivare, giungere, parvenire
art arte *f.*
artist artista *c.*
as siccome; ∞ for in quanto a
ashamed: be ∞ vergognarsi
ask (for) domandare (di)
assemble riunirsi
assume presumere
at a, ad
attention: pay ∞ stare attento
attentive attento
attract attrarre
August agosto *m.*
Augustine Agostino
aunt zia *f.*
Austrian austriaco
author autore, scrittore *m.*
automobile automobile *c.*
autumn autunno *m.*
avail oneself (of) valersi (di)
avoid evitare
await attendere, aspettare
away via

baby bimbo, -a
back dōsso *m.*; **at the** ∞ **of** in fondo a; **on the** ∞ **of** addōsso a
bad cattivo; too ∞! peccato!
badly male
bag sacco *m.*, borsa *f.*
baggage bagaglio *m.*; ∞ **room** bagagliaio, depōsito *m.*
baker fornaio *m.*
balcony terrazza *f.*
ball palla *f.*
band banda *f.*
basket paniĕre *m.*
bath bagno *m.*

battle battaglia *f.*
be ĕssere
beach spiaggia *f.*
bearings *see* compass
beat bātere
beautiful bello
beauty bellezza *f.*
because perchĕ
become diventare, divenire
bed letto *m.*
bed-room cāmera (*f.*) da letto
bee ape *f.*
beetle scarafaggio *m.*
before (time) *adv.* prima; *prep.* prima di; *conj.* prima chĕ
before (place) *prep.* innanzi a, dinanzi a, davanti a; *adv.* avanti, innanzi
begin cominciare, principiare
beginning principio *m.*
behind *adv.* indietro, diĕtro; *prep.* diĕtro a
Belgian belga
Belgium il Bĕlgio
believe crĕdere
belong appartenĕre
below *prep.* sōtto; *adv.* abbasso
benefit beneficio *m.*
best *adj.* il migliore; *adv.* il meglio; do one's ∞ fare di tutto, fare il possibile
betray tradire
better *adj.* migliore; *adv.* meglio
between fra
beyond *prep.* al di là di, di là da, oltre
big grōsso
bill conto *m.*
bird uccĕllo *m.*
birthday giorno natale, compleanno *m.*

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- black** nēro
blame çolpa *f.*; *v.* biasmare, dare addosso a
blind ciēco
blood sangue *m.*
bloom fiorire; in ∞ fiorito
blotter cartasuga, cartasugante *f.*
blow tirar vento; ∞ up saltare in aria
blue azzurro, celēste
board, boarding-house, boarding-school, pensione *f.*
boat barca *f.*
boil bollire
bold ardito
book libro *m.*
bookseller libraio *m.*
boot stivale *m.*; ∞ black lustrascarpe *m.*
born nato; be ∞ nāscere
both tutt' e due, entrambi
bottom fōndo *m.*; at the ∞ of in fōndo a
boundary confine *m.*
bouquet mazzolino *m.*
Bourbon Borbone *m.*
box scātola *f.*
boy ragazzo *m.*
brain cervello *m.*
breach breccia *f.*
bread pane *m.*
break rōmpere
breast pētto *m.*
bridge pōnte *m.*
brim (hat-) tēsa *f.*
bring portare
Britannic britānnico
brother fratello *m.*
brother-in-law cognato *m.*
brush spāzzola *f.*
bunch mazzolino *m.*
burn ārdere, bruciare
but ma
butchery strage *f.*
butter burro *m.*
buy comprare
by da; (beside) accanto a
café caffè *m.*
cake pasta *f.*
call chiamare; ∞ on far vīṣita a; be called chiamarsi
can, be able, potēre
cane bastone *m.*
cannon cannone *m.*
caress carezza *f.*
carnation garōfano *m.*
carriage carrōzza, vettura *f.*, legno *m.*
carry portare
case caso *m.*; in any ∞ in ogni caso
cash: in ∞ a contanti
castle castello *m.*
cathedral duqmo *m.*, cattedrale *f.*
cease cessare [cimitero *m.*
cemetery sepolceto, campo santo,
central centrale
century sēcolo *m.*
ceremony: stand on ∞ far complimenti
chair sēggiola *f.*
change mutare, cambiare; ∞ one's mind mutar di pensiero; *n.* (money) reſto *m.*
chapter capitolo *m.*
charcoal-burner carbonaro *m.*
Charles Carlo
chase cacciare
chat chiacchierare
cheek guāncia *f.*
child fanciullo, -a, bambino, -a
chocolate cioccolata *f.*

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- choose** scēgliere
Christian cristiano
Christmas Natale *m.*; **Merry** ∼
 Buon Natale
Christopher Cristōforo
church chieṣa *f.*
citizen cittadino *m.*
city città *f.*
civilization civiltà *f.*
civilized civile
clap (one's hands) bāttere (le mani)
Clara Chiara
class classe *f.*
classic clāssico
close chiūdere
coast cōsta *f.*
coffee caffè *m.*
coin monēta *f.*
cold frēddo; **be** ∼ aver frēddo; **it**
 is ∼ fa frēddo; **catch** ∼ prēndere
 un raffreddore
collar collare *m.*; **coat** ∼ bāvero *m.*
college (of University) facoltà *f.*
color colōre *m.*; **be colored** tingersi
Columbus Colōmbo
come venire
comfortable cōmodo; **make oneself**
 ∼ accomodarsi
command comandare, ordinare
commence cominciare
communicate comunicare
companion compagno, -a
compartment scompartimento *m.*
compass būssole *f.*
complain lagnarsi
compliment complimentō *m.*
condition condiziōne *f.*; **on** ∼ **that**
 a patto che (*v. subj.*)
conduct condurre
conductor guārdia *f.*
congenial simpātico
connecting comunicante
conqueror conquistatore *m.*
consciousness coscienza *f.*
consist (of) consistere (in)
constitution statuto *m.*
consul cōnsole *m.*
continue continuare
contrary contrario; **on the** ∼ in-
 vece
convenient cōmodo
conversation conversaziōne *f.*
cook cuōco *m.*; *v.* cuōcere, fare la
 cucina
cookery cucina *f.*
copper rame *m.*
corner āngolo *m.*; **be at the** ∼ of
 far āngolo cōn
corporal caporale *m.*
correct corrīgere
correspond corrispōndere
cost costare
cotton cotone *m.*
cough tossire
count cōnte *m.*; *v.* contare
countess contessa *f.*
country (rural) campagna *f.*; (*polit.*)
 paēse *m.*; (*fatherland*) pātria *f.*
couple cōppia *f.*
courage coraggio *m.*
course cōrsa *f.*; **of** ∼ naturalmente
cousin cugino, -a
cover coprire
cow vacca *f.*
cowardly vile
crane gru *c.*
criminal scellerato
crusade crociata *f.*
cry grido *m.*; *v.* gridare
cup tazza *f.*

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- cut** tagliare
Cyrus Ciro

daily quotidiano
dairy cascina *f.*
damage danno *m.*; *v.* dannare
danger pericolo *m.*
dangerous pericoloso
dark buio *m.*; *adj.* scuro
daughter figlia *f.*
daughter-in-law nuora *f.*
dawn alba *f.*
day giorno *m.*; period of a ∞ giornata *f.*; ∞ by ∞ giorno a giorno; by the ∞ a giornata; by ∞ di giorno
daybreak: at ∞ sul far del giorno
dead morto
dear caro
death morte *f.*
deceit inganno *m.*
December dicembre *m.*
declare dichiarare
defeat sconfitta *f.*
defend difendere
defense difesa *f.*
degenerate degenerare
demand richiudere
depart partire
depress deprimere
descend scendere
desire desiderio *m.*; *v.* desiderare
desired voluto
dessert dolce *m.*
dialogue diàlogo *m.*
die morire
difficult difficile
dine deşinare, pranzare
dining-room sala *f.* da pranzo
dint: by ∞ of a forza di

direct dirigere
direction direzione
disagreeable sgradēvole
disappear sparire
discover scoprire
disembarkation sbarco *m.*
disguise travestire
dish piatto *m.*
displease dispiacere a
distant lontano, discosto
disturb disturbare
divide dividere
do fare; *aux.* 62, b, 1; how do you ∞ ? come sta?
dog cane *m.*
domestic domēstico
done fatto
door porta *f.*
double doppio
doubt dūbbio *m.*; *v.* dubitare
down giù; ∞ there laggiù, costaggiù; ∞ town al centro; ∞ stairs abbasso
dozen dozzina *f.*
dramatic drammatico
dream sogno *m.*; *v.* sognare
dress vestito *m.*; ∞ oneself vestirsi
dressmaker sarta *f.*
drive condurre; ∞ out cacciare
drunk ubriaco [ducato *m.*]
duchy ducato *m.*; grand ∞ grande
duke duca *m.*
dumpling gnocco *m.*
duty dovere *m.*
dwell abitare, dimorare

each ciascuno
ear orecchio *m.*
early per tempo
earth terra *f.*
east levante *m.*

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- Easter** Pasqua *f.*
eastern orientale
easy facile
echo ȅco *c.*
effect effettuare
egg uȅvo *m.*
eight otto
eighteen diciotto
eighteenth dȅcimo ottavo
eighth ottavo
eighty ottanta
elbow gȅmito *m.*
elder maggiore
elect elȅggere
elegant elegante
eleven ūndici
eleventh undiciȅsimo
elm ȅlmo *m.*
embrace abbracciare
emperor imperatore *m.*
empire impero *m.*
end fine *f.*; at the ∞ of in fondo a
endow dotare
enemy nemico *m.*
England l' Inghilterra *f.*
English inglȅse
enough assai, bastante; be ∞ bastare
enter entrare
entrance entrata *f.*
enumerate annoverare
envelope busta *f.*
equal uguale
era ȅra *f.*
establish stabilire, istituire
etcetera ȅ cosȅ in sȅguito, ȅ via
 dicendo
Etruscan etrusco
even *adj.* pari; *adv.* pure; not ∞
 neppure
evening sȅra *f.*; good ∞ buona sȅra
- ever** mai
every ogni
everybody ognuno, tutti
everything tutto
everywhere dappertutto
evil male *m.*
except tranne
excursion gita *f.*
excuse scusare
execution supplizio *m.*
executioner boia *m.*
exercise-book quaderno *m.*
exile esilio *m.*; *v.* esiliare
exit uscita *f.*
expense spesa *f.*
expose esporre
express esprimere
- face** faccia *f.*; *v.* far fronte a; on
 one's ∞ bocconi
fact: in ∞ infatti
fail fallire [tempo
fair bello; it is ∞ weather fa bel
faith fede *f.*
falcon falco *m.*
fall cadere; ∞ upon avventarsi su
family famiglia *f.*
famous famoso, rinomato
fan ventaglio *m.*
fat grasso
father padre *m.*
father-in-law suȅcero *m.*
fatigue fatica *f.*
fault colpa *f.*
favor favore *m.*; *v.* favorire
fear paura *f.*, timore *m.*; *v.* aver
 paura, temere
February febbraio *m.*
feel sentire
felt feltro *m.*

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- festival** festa *f.*
few pochi, -e
fidelity fedeltà *f.*
fifteen quindici
fifteenth quindicēsimο
fifth quinto
fifty cinquanta
fig fico *m.*
fight combāttere
figure figurare
finally finalmente
find trovare
fine bello; fino
finger dito *m.*
finish finire, terminare
fire fuoco *m.*; *v.* sparare; **set on** ∞
 dar fuoco a
first primo
fitting prova *f.*
five cinque
flag bandiera *f.*
flee fuggire
Florence Firenze
Florentine fiorentino
flower fiore *m.*
fluently speditamente
fog nebbia *f.*
folk gente *f.*
follow seguire, seguitare
foot piede *m.*; **on** ∞ a piedi
footstool panchetto *m.*
for per; (*time*) da; **as** ∞ in quanto a
force forza *f.*
forced forzato
foreign straniere *m.*
foreigner forestiere, straniere *m.*
forest foresta *f.*
forget dimenticare
fork forchetta *f.*
forty quaranta
four quattro; **on all** ∞s carponi
fourteen quattōrdici
fourteenth dēcimoquarto
fourth quarto
franc lira *f.*
France la Frāncia
Francis Francesco
free libero
freeze gelare
French francese
Frenchman Francēse *m.*
friar frate *m.*
Friday venerdì *m.*
friend amico, -a
from da; (*time*) fin da
front fronte *f.*; **in** ∞ of davanti a
frugal frugale
fruit frutto *m.*
fulfill avverare
full pieno
garden giardino *m.*
gather cōgliere
general *adj.* generale; *n.* generale *m.*
generally generalmente
genius genio *m.*
gentle mite
gentleman signore *m.*
George Giorgio
German tedesco
Germany l'Alemagna, la Germania *f.*
get ottenere; ∞ back riavere; ∞ up
 levarsi
girl ragazza *f.*; **little** ∞ bambina *f.*
give dare; ∞ up rinunciare a
glad contento, felice
glass bicchiere *m.*; (*ware*) vetro *m.*
glimpse intravedere
glory gloria *f.*
glove guanto *m.*

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- glover** guantaio *m.*
go andare; ∞ out andar fuori; ∞ up salire; ∞ in entrare; ∞ away partire; ∞ down scendere
god dio *m.*
God Iddio *m.*
gold oro *m.*
gondola gondola *f.*
gone partito
good buono; ∞ morning buon giorno
good-by (*polite*) a rivederla, (*fam.*) addio
goodness bontà *f.*
goods stoffa *f.*; dry ∞ merceria *f.*
govern governare
government governo *m.*
grammar grammatica *f.*
grandfather nonno *m.*
grandmother nonna *f.*
grape uva *f.*
grape-vine vite *f.*
gray grigio
great grande
Greek greco
green verde
greet salutare
greeting saluto *m.*
ground suolo *m.*
group gruppo *m.*
grow crescere
guard guardia *f.*
guess indovinare; ∞ right darci dentro
guide guida *f.*
gun schioppo *m.*
- Hague**: The ∞ l'Aia
hair capello *m.*
half *adj.* mezzo; *n.* metà *f.*
hall sala *f.*
- hand** mano *f.*; within reach of one's ∞ a portata di mano; by ∞ a mano; at second ∞ di seconda mano
handkerchief fazzoletto *m.*
handsome bello
handy: come ∞ far comodo
hang impiccare
happen accadere, succedere
happy felice; ∞ New Year buon fine e principio d'anno
hard duro, difficile
hardly appena
hasten spicciarsi
hat cappello *m.*
have avere; ∞ to avere da
hawk falco *m.*
he egli, esso
head testa *f.*, capo *m.*; with bowed ∞ a capo chino
health salute *f.*
hear sentire, udire
heart cuore *m.*; by ∞ a mente; take it to ∞ prendersela
heart-broken afflitto
heat calore *m.*
heavy pesante
heed dar retta *a*
heel (*of shoe*) tacco *m.*; (*of foot*) calcagno *m.*
help aiuto *m.*; *v.* aiutare; not be able to ∞ non poter a meno di
hen gallina *f.*
henceforth di qui innanzi, oramai
Henry Enrico
her *pron.* la, le; *poss.* il suo *etc.*
here qui, qua; ∞ is, ∞ are, ecco, c'è, ci sono
heritage retaggio *m.*
hero eroe *m.*
heroic eroico

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- herself** lei stessa; (*refl.*) si
hesitate esitare
high alto
highness altezza *f.*
him gli, lui, lo
himself lui stesso; (*refl.*) si
his il suo, la sua, *etc.*
history storia *f.*
hold tenere
holiday festa *f.*
home: at ∞ da noi; in casa
homeward a casa
honor onorare
hook gancio *m.*
hope speranza *f.*; *v.* sperare
horse cavallo *m.*
horseback: ride ∞ andar a cavallo
hospital ospedale *m.*
hostile inimico
hot caldo; it is ∞ fa caldo
hotel albergo *m.*
hour ora *f.*
house casa *f.*; at the ∞ of da
how come; ∞ do you do? come sta?
 ∞ much, ∞ many, quanto, -i
however *conj.* però, pure; *adv.* per
 quanto
human umano
hundred cento
hunger fame *f.*
hungry: be ∞ aver fame
hunt cacciare
hurl lanciare
hurry fretta *f.*; *v.* spicciarsi; be in
 a ∞ aver fretta, aver fùria
husband marito *m.*
- I** io
ice ghiaccio *m.*
ice-cream gelato *m.*
- if** se
ignorant ignorante
ill ammalato; fall ∞ ammalare
imagine immaginare, figurarsi
immediately subito
impervious impervio
important: be ∞ importare
impose imporre
imprudent imprudente
in in; (*time*) fra
increase accrescere
indeed davvero
independence indipendenza *f.*
inexhaustible inesauribile
inferior inferiore
ingrate ingrato *m.*
ink inchiostro *m.*
inside (of) dentro (a)
instead (of) invece (di)
instrument strumento *m.*
intelligent intelligente
into in
introduce presentare
iron ferro *m.*
island isola *f.*
it esso, lo
Italian italiano
Italy l' Italia *f.*
- jacket** giacchetta *f.*
January gennaio *m.*
Japan il Giappone
jewel gioiello *m.*
John Giovanni
Joseph Giuseppe
journey viaggio *m.*
joy gioia *f.*
joyful allegro
Julius Cæsar Giulio Cèzare
July luglio *m.*

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- June** giugno *m.*
just giusto; ∞ now or ora

kilogram chilogramma *m.*
kind gēnere *m.*, spēcie, sōrte *f.*; *adj.*
 buōno, cortēse
king rē *m.*
kingdom rēgno *m.*
kiss bācio *m.*
kitchen cucina *f.*
knee ginōcchio *m.*; on one's ∞s gi-
 nocchiōni
knife coltello *m.*
know sapere, conōscere

label cartellino *m.*
laborious laboriōso
lacking: be ∞ mancare
ladder scala a piuqli
lady signōra *f.*; young ∞ signorina *f.*
lake lago *m.*
lamp lume *m.*
land sbarcare
language lingua *f.*
large grande
lark allōdola *f.*
last fōrma *f.*; *v.* durare; *adj.* ūlti-
 mo, (*past*) scōrso; at ∞ alla fine
late tardi; the ∞ il fu; be ∞ far tardi
laugh riso *m.*; *v.* ridere
law legge *f.*
lawsuit lite *f.*
lawyer avvocato *m.*
lay posare; ∞ the cloth mēttre la
 tovaglia
layman laico *m.*
leaf fōglia *f.*
lean out spōrgersi
learn imparare; ∞ of sapere
learned dōtto

least mīnimo; at ∞ almenō
leather cuōio *m.*
leave *tr.* lasciare; *intr.* partire; *n.*
 licēza *f.*
left sinistro
Leghorn Livōrno
lemon limōne *m.*
length lunghezzeza *f.*
less meno
lessen diminuire
lesson lezione *f.*
let (*allow*) lasciare; *cf.* § 92, a
letter lēttēra *f.*
liberty libertā *f.*
lie giacere; mentire
life vita *f.*
light luce *f.*; *v.* accēndere; *adj.*
 chiaro, leggiēro
lighten balenare, lampeggiare
like sīmile; should ∞ vorrēi *etc.*
lily-of-the-valley mughetto *m.*
linen lino *m.*; tela *f.*
lining fōdera *f.*
lip labbro *m.*
lira *f.* lira (twenty cents)
listen (to) ascoltare
literature letteratura *f.*
little pōco; ∞ by ∞ pōco a pōco;
adj. pīccolo
live vivere; (*dwell*) abitare, dimo-
 rare, star di casa
load cārica *f.*; *v.* caricare
loaded cārico
lock serratura *f.*; *v.* serrare
London Lōndra
long lungo; ∞ to non veder l'ōra
 di; as ∞ as tanto chē, fin chē
look, look at, guardare; ∞ for cer-
 care
lordship: your ∞ Vossignorīa *f.*

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- lose** pērdere
lot sōrte *f.*
Louis Luigi
love amōre *m.*; *v.* amare
low *adj.* basso; *v.* muggire
lower inferiōre
luck: good ∼ fortuna *f.*
luckily mēno male
luggage bagāglio *m.*
luncheon colaziōne *f.*; take ∼ far colaziōne

Madam Signōra *f.*
mail pōsta *f.*; *v.* impostare
mainspring mōlla *f.*
majesty maestà *f.*
majority maggior parte *f.*
make fare
mamma mamma, mamma *f.*
man uōmo *m.*; honorable ∼ galantuōmo *m.*
manner maniēra *f.*
many mōlti
march marcia *f.*
March marzo *m.*
married woman signōra *f.*
martyr mārtere *m.*
mask māschera *f.*
mass mēssa *f.*
mast ālbero *m.*
match fiammifero *m.*; *v.* accompagnare
matter matēria *f.*; *v.* importare
may, can, potēre
May maggio *m.*
me mi, mē
meadow prato *m.*
meat carne *f.*
meet incontrare; conōscere
memory memōria *f.*

merchant mercante *m.*
metal metallo *m.*
metropolis metrōpoli *f.*
middle mēzzo *m.*; in the ∼ of in mēzzo a
midnight mēzzanotte *f.*
might potēri *etc.*; *or subj.*
mild mite
military militare
milk latte *m.*
milliner modista *f.*
mind mēte *f.*
mine miniēra *f.*; il mio *etc.*
minute minuto *m.*
miser avaro *m.*
misfortune sventura, disgrazia *f.*
miss sentire la mancanza di
Miss Signorina *f.*
mistake sbaglio *m.*; *v.* sbagliare
modern modēno
moment mōmento *m.*; in a ∼ a mōmenti
monarch monarca *m.*
monarchist monārchico *m.*
Monday lunedì *m.*
money denaro *m.*
monk mōnaco *m.*
monster mōstro *m.*
month mēse *m.*
moon luna *f.*
more più
morning mattina *f.*; good ∼ buōn giōrno; say good ∼ dare il buōn giōrno
most il più
mother madre *f.*
mother-in-law suōcera *f.*
mount salire, montare
mountain montagna *f.*
mourning lutto *m.*; in ∼ a lutto
move muōvere

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- movement** mōto *m.*
Mr. Signōre *m.*
Mrs. Signōra *f.*
much mōlto; *as* ∞ more altrettanto
mud fango *m.*
murmur mormorare
mushroom fungo *m.*
my il mio, la mia, *etc.*
myself io stesso; *refl.* mi
- name** nōme *m.*
nap sonnacchiare
Naples Nāpoli
narrow strēto
nation naziōne *f.*
navy marina *f.*
near vicino (*a*)
necessary necessārio; *be* ∞ bișo-
gnare, occōrrere
neck cōllo *m.*
necklace collana *f.*
necktie cravatta, ciarpetta *f.*
need bișogno *m.*; *v.* aver bișogno di
neigh nitrire
neighbor vicino *m.*
neither nè; ∞ . . . nor nè . . . nè
nephew nipote *m.*
nest nido *m.*
never nōn . . . mai
nevertheless tuttavīa
new nuovo; **New Year's** capo d'an-
no; **Happy New Year** buōn capo
d'anno; **to wish a happy new year**
augurare il buōn anno
news notīzie *f. pl.*
newspaper giornale *m.*
next (*near*) accanto a; (*coming*)
prōssimo, quest' altro; ∞ door
accanto
nice simpātico
- niece** nipote *f.*
night notte *f.*
nine nove
nineteen diciannove
nineteenth dēcimo nōno
ninety novanta
ninth nōno
no nō; ∞ one nessuno; (*not any*)
nōn (*preceding vb.*)
noise rumōre, strēpito *m.*
none nessuno
noon mezzogiorno *m.*
nor nè
north tramontana *f.*, nōrte *m.*
northern settentrionale
not nōn
nothing niēte, nulla
notice avvișo *m.*; *v.* accōrgersi (*di*)
notwithstanding (*that*) nōn ob-
stante (*che*) (*conj. w. subj.*)
novel romanzo *m.*
November novēmbre *m.*
now ora, adēssō
nowadays al giorno di oggi, oggidì
number nūmero *m.*
nut noce *f.*
- oak** quercia *f.*
oar remo *m.*
observe osservare
obstinate s̄vogliato
occur aver luōgo
occurrence eveniēza *f.*
o'clock: **at six** ∞ alle sei
October ottōbre *m.*
of di
off lungi, via [sela a male
offend offēndere; *be* offended avē-
offer offrire
officer ufficiale *m.*

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- often** spesso
old vecchio; **grow** ∞ invecchiare
on su, sur
once una volta; **at** ∞ subito
one un, uno, -a
only *adj.* solo, unico; *adv.* soltanto;
 but, only (*v. acc.*), non . . . che
open *adj.* aperto; *v.* aprire
opportunity occasione *f.*
opposite in faccia a, dirimpetto a
or o, od
orange arancia *f.*
orange-tree arancio *m.*
order ordine *m.*; *v.* ordinare; **to** ∞
 su misura
other altro
ought dovrei *etc.*
our il nostro, la nostra, *etc.*
ourselves noi stessi; (*refl.*) ci
out fuori; **go** ∞ andar fuori
outside (of) all' infuori (di)
over su, sopra
overcoat soprabito *m.*
owe dovere
own *adj.* proprio; *v.* possedere

package pacco *m.*
page pagina *f.*
pain dolore *m.*; *v.* dolere
pair paio (*pl.* paia) *m.*
palace palazzo *m.*
papa babbo *m.*
paper carta *f.*; **news** ∞ giornale *m.*
parents genitori *m. pl.*
Paris Parigi
parish-priest parroco *m.*
parlor salotto *m.*
part parte *f.*
pass passare
passenger passeggero, viaggiatore *m.*

patience pazienza *f.*
patriot patriota *m.*
pattern figurino *m.*
Paul Paolo
pay, ∞ **for**, pagare
peace pace *f.*
peach pesca *f.*
pear pera *f.*
peasant contadino, -a [serbatoio
pen penna *f.*; **fountain** ∞ penna a
pencil lapis *m.*
people popolo *m.*; gente *f.*
perceive accorgersi (di)
perhaps forse
permit permettere
persecute perseguire
person persona *f.*
Petrarch Petrarca
Philip Filippo
philosophical filosofico
photograph fotografia *f.*
physician medico *m.*
pianist pianista *c.*
picture quadro *m.*
piece pezzo *m.*; (*money*) moneta *f.*;
 tear to ∞ far a brani; **by the** ∞ a
 cittimo
Piedmont il Piemonte
Piedmontese piemontese
pilgrim pellegrino *m.*
pilgrimage: **go on** ∞ peregrinare
pin spillo *m.*; *v.* appuntare
pity pietà *f.*; **what a** ∞ peccato!
place luogo, posto *m.*; (*at table*)
 posata *f.*; *v.* porre
plant pianta *f.*
plate piatto *m.*
play giocare; (*an instrument*) sonare
please per piacere, per favore;
 v. piacere a

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- pleasure** piacere *m.*; do a ∞ to far piacere a
pleat piega *f.*
pocket tasca *f.*
poet poeta *m.*
point punta *f.*
polish lustrare
polite educato
political politico
politician politico *m.*
politics politica *f.*
poor povero
port porto *m.*
porter facchino *m.*
portrait ritratto *m.*
possess possedere; ∞ oneself of agguantare
post posta *f.*; *v.* impostare
postage-stamp francobollo *m.*
postal postale
post-card cartolina (*f.*) postale
postman postino *m.*
poverty povertà *f.*
powder polvere *f.*
power potere *m.*
practice pratica *f.*
praise lodare
pray *v.* pregare; *adv.* pure
precious prezioso
prefer preferire
prepare preparare
president presidente *m.*
press stampa *f.*
pretense finzione *f.*; make ∞ of far vista di
pretty carino, grazioso
prevail prevalere
prevent impedire
primitive primitivo
prince principe *m.*
princess principessa *f.*
prison prigione *f.*, carcere *m.*
problem problema *m.*
professor professore *m.*
promise promessa *f.*
property proprietà *f.*
proprietor padrone *m.*
provided that purchè (*v. subj.*)
prudent prudente
punish punire
pupil scolare *m.*
purchase compra *f.*
purpose scopo *m.*; on ∞ a posta
purr far le fusa
purse borsa *f.*
put, put on, mēttre

queen regina *f.*
question domanda *f.*; be a ∞ of trattarsi di
quiet quieto, tranquillo

rain pioggia *f.*; *v.* piövere
raincoat impermeabile *m.*
raise levare, alzare, innalzare
rather piuttosto
read leggere
ready pronto; ∞-made bell' e fatto
really veramente
reason ragione *f.*
rebuild rifare
receipts incasso *m.*
receive ricevere
recently di recente
recommend raccomandare
recover *tr.* riavere; *intr.* guarire
recruit recluta *f.*
red rosso
redeem redimere
reef scoglio *m.*

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- refuge** rifugio *m.*; **take** ∞ rifugiarsi
refuse rifiutare
regard (*greeting of remembrance*)
 saluto *m.*
regret deplorare, rincrescere *a.*, dis-
 piacere *a.*; **I** ∞ mi rincresco
relative parente *m.*; *adj.* relativo
remain rimanere
remainder resto *m.*
remake rifare
remember ricordarsi *di*
renounce rinunciare *a.*
repeat ripetere
repent pentirsi
reply risposta *f.*; *v.* rispondere
reproof rimprovero *m.*
reprove rimproverare
republic repubblica *f.*
republican repubblicano
respectable rispettabile
rest resto, riposo *m.*; *v.* riposarsi
result risultato *m.*
resurrection risorgimento *m.*
return ritorno *m.*; *v.* tornare, ritor-
 nare
Rhine Reno *m.*
ribbon nastro *m.*
rich ricco *m.*
rid oneself sbarrazzarsi
right destro; **be** ∞ aver ragione
rigorous rigoroso
ring anello *m.*; *v.* sonare
rise levarsi, alzarsi
risk rischio *m.*
river fiume *m.*
road strada *f.*
Roman romano
Rome Roma
room stanza *f.*; posto *m.*
roost appollaiarsi
rose rosa *f.*
rough rozzo
row-boat barca (*f.*) a remi
rule regola *f.*; *v.* reggere
ruler regnante *m.*
run corsa *f.*; *v.* correre; ∞ down
adj. scârico
sad triste
sadness tristezza *f.*
safe sicuro
safety sicurezza, salvezza *f.*; in ∞
 in salvo
sail vela *f.*; **set** ∞ far vela
sailor marinaio *m.*
saint santo *m.*
Saint san, santo
saintly santo
saint's-day onomastico *m.*
sale vendita *f.*
same stesso
sample campione *m.*
Saturday sâbato *m.*
saucer piattino (*m.*) da tazza
savage selvaggio *adj.*
save *v.* salvare, (*money*) risparmiare;
prep. tranne
Savoy la Savoia *f.*
say dire
says dice
scatter spargere, diffondere
school scuola *f.*
scissors fôrbi *f. pl.*
scold sgridare
score ventina *f.*
scout vedetta *f.*
scrap brano *m.*
sea mare *m.*; **at** ∞ in mare; **by the** ∞
 al mare
season stagione *f.*

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- second** secondo
secret segreto *m.*
secretly di nascosto
see vedere
seem sembrare
seen visto
Seine Senna *f.*
seldom di rado
self *see* myself, himself, etc.
sell vendere
send mandare, inviare, spedire
sentinel sentinella, vedetta *f.*
September settembre *m.*
seriously sul serio
servant servo, -a
serve servire; (*meal*) imbandire
service servizio *m.*
set table apparecchiare
seven sette
seventeen diciassette
seventeenth decimo settimo
seventh settimo
seventy settanta
several parecchi
sew cucire
shake scuotere; ∞ hands with dar
 la mano a
shall I (*in questions*) devo
shame vergogna *f.*
share parte *f.*
she ella, essa, lei
sheep pecora *f.*
sheet lenzuolo; (*of paper*) foglio *m.*
shelf scaffale *m.*
shield scudo *m.*
shoe scarpa *f.*
shoemaker calzolaio *m.*
shoot tirare
shop bottega *f.*
short corto, breve
should *past fut. or subj.*
shoulder spalla *f.*
shout grido *m.*; *v.* gridare
show mostrare, dimostrare; ∞ in
 far passare
Sicily la Sicilia
side parte *f.*; on this ∞ of al di qua
 di; on that ∞ of al di là di
sign affisso, cartello *m.*; segno *m.*
signal cenno *m.*
silence silenzio *m.*
silk seta *f.*
silver argento *m.*
simple semplice
since (*time*) dacchè; (*cause*) poichè
sincere sincero
sing cantare
sip sorbire
sir Signore *m.*
sister sorella *f.*
sister-in-law cognata *f.*
sit sedere; ∞ down accomodarsi
six sei
sixteen sedici
sixteenth decimo sesto
sixth sesto
sixty sessanta
skirt sottana *f.*
sleep sonno *m.*; *v.* dormire
sleepy: be ∞ aver sonno
sleeve manica *f.*
small piccolo
smoke fumo *m.*; *v.* fumare
sneeze starnutire
snow neve *f.*; *v.* nevicare
so così; ∞ much, ∞ many, tanto,
 tanti; ∞ that perchè (*w. subj.*)
sob singulto *m.*
socialist socialista *m.*
sock calzino *m.*

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- soft** dolce
softly piano
soil suolo *m.*
soldier soldato *m.*
solitude solitudine *f.*
some *adj.* qualche; *pron.* ne
son figlio *m.*
son-in-law gēnero *m.*
song canzone *f.*
soon presto, tosto; **as** ∼ **as** tosto che;
as ∼ **as** possible quanto prima; **no**
 ∼ **er** . . . **than** appena . . . che
sorrow dolore *m.*
sorrowful afflitto, doloroso
sorry dispiacente; **be** ∼ dispiacere
 a; **I am** ∼ mi dispiace
south mezzogiorno
southern meridionale
Spaniard Spagnuolo *m.*
Spanish spagnuolo
spark scintilla *f.*
speak parlare
spectacle spettācolo *m.*
spectacles occhiali *m. pl.*
speculator speculatore *m.*
spend (*time*) passare; (*money*)
 spēndere
spirit spīrito *m.*
spool rocchetto *m.*
spoon cucchiaino *m.*
spot mächia *f.*
spread distēndere
spring (*season*) primavēra *f.*; (*motive*
power) mōlla *f.*
spy spia *f.*
stain mächia *f.*
stair scala *f.*; **winding** ∼ scala a
 chiōcciola
state stato *m.*; *v.* dichiarare
statesman politico *m.*
station stazione *f.*
stay restare, rimanere
steel acciaio *m.*
step passo *m.*
Stephen Stēfano
still ancora, tuttavia
stone pietra *f.*
stop fermarsi
story stōria *f.*; (*of a house*) piano
straight dritto; ∼ **ahead** difilato
strange strano
stranger straniere *m.*
straw paglia *f.*
street via *f.*
stretch out pōrgere
strike sciōpero *m.*; *v.* colpire
struggle lōtta *f.*
study stūdio *m.*; *v.* studiare
succeed riuscire; *tr.* succēdere a
suck succhiare
suddenly improvvisamente, a un
 tratto
suffer soffrire, patire
suffice bastare
suitable addatto; **be** ∼ convenire
sum sōmma *f.*
summer estate *f.*
summit cōlmo *m.*
sun sōle *m.*
Sunday domēnica *f.*
superior superiore
support sostēgno *m.*
supreme suprēmo
sure sicuro
surgeon chirurgo *m.*
surprise sorpēsa *f.*; *v.* sorprēndere
swarm sciame *m.*; *v.* formicolare
swear giurare
sweet dolce
sweetmeat dolce *m.*; chicca *f.*

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- Swiss** svizzero
table tavola *f.*; **set the** ~ apparecchiare; ~**cloth** tovaglia *f.*
tailor sarto *m.*
take prēndere, pigliare; ~ **off** levarsi; ~ **away** tōgliere; ~ **one's way** avviarsi; ~ **out** cavare
talent ingegno *m.*
tall alto
task lavoro *m.*
tax tassa *f.*
tea tè *m.*
teach insegnare
teacher maestro, -a; istitutore, -trice
telegram telegramma, dispaccio *m.*
telephone telefonare
tell dire; raccontare
ten dieci
tenth dēcimo
terrible terribile
territory territōrio *m.*
tête à tête a quattr'occhi
Thames Tamigi *m.*
than di, che, di quel che
thanks grāzie *f. pl.*
that *dem. pron.* quello; *rel. pron.* che; *conj.* che
thaw şgelare, dighiacciare
the il, la; *pl.* i, gli, le
theater teatro *m.*
thee ti, te
their il loro, la loro, *etc.*
them li, le, loro
theme tema *m.*
themselves loro stessi; *refl.* si
then allora, dunque
thence indi, ne
there là, là; ~ **is**, ~ **are**, c'è, ci sono, (*dem.*) ecco
therefore dunque
they essi, esse
thicket mēcchia *f.*
thimble ditale *m.*
thing cōsa *f.*
things rōba *f. collective*
think pensare, (*believe*) crēdere
third tērzo
thirst sete *f.*
thirsty: **be** ~ **aver** sete
thirteen trēdici
thirteenth dēcimo tērzo
thirty trēnta
this questo
thither lì, là
Thomas Tommaso
thou tu
though benchè, sebbene
thought pensiero *m.*
thousand mille
threat minaccia *f.*
threaten minacciare
three trē
threshold soglia *f.*
throw gettare, buttare; ~ **away** buttar via
thunder tuono *m.*; *v.* tonare
thunderbolt fūlmine *m.*
Thursday giovedì *m.*
thus così
thy il tuo, la tua, *etc.*
thysself tu stesso; *refl.* ti
Tiber Tēvere *m.*
ticket biglietto *m.*; **round-trip** ~ biglietto d'andata e ritorno; **first-class** ~ biglietto di prima classe
ticket-window sportello *m.*
tight stretto
time tempo *m.*; (*a time*) volta *f.*; **on** ~ a tempo; **short** ~ poco
tin latta *f.*

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- tiny** mīnimo, piccino
tired stanco; **become** ∞ stancarsi
to a, ad
to-day oggi
together insiēme
to-morrow domani
tongs mōlle *f. pl.*
too, too much, troppo; ∞ many
 trōppi
tooth dēnte *m.*
top cima *f.*; **on** ∞ of in cima a
torture supplizio *m.*
tour giro *m.*
towards verso
tower tōrre *f.*
trade mestiere; commercio *m.*
train treno *m.*
traitor, -ress, traditore, -tōra
travel viaggiare
traveler viaggiatore *m.*
treachery tradimento *m.*
tree ābero *m.*
tremble tremare
tricolored tricolore
trimming guarnizione *f.*
triple trīplice, triplo
troops truppe *f. pl.*
trousers calzōni *m. pl.*
trunk baule *m.*; **pack one's** ∞ fare
 il baule
truth veritā *f.*
try provare, cercare di; ∞ one's
 best fare di tutto; ∞ on provare
Tuesday martedì *m.*
Turk Turco *m.*
turn voltarsi; ∞ back rivoltare; in
 ∞ a vicēnda; **be the** ∞ of toccare a
Tuscany la Toscana
twelfth dēcimo secondo
twelve dōdici
twentieth ventēesimo
twenty vēnti
twice due volte
two due
typewriter mēcchina (*f.*) da scrivere
typical tīpico
tyranny tirannia *f.*
tyrant tiranno *m.*
ugly brutto
umbrella ombrellō *m.*
uncle zio *m.*
under sotto
understand capire, intēndere
unequal ineguale
uneven impari
unhappy infelice
union unitā *f.*
unite unire
university universitā *f.*
unless a meno chē (*w. subj.*)
until fino a
up su; **get** ∞ levarsi
upon su
upper superiore
us ci, noi
use uso *m.*; **make** ∞ of servirsi di;
 be of ∞ to servire a
usual sōlito; **as** ∞ come al sōlito
usually generalmente, per il sōlito
vacation vacanza *f.*
vain: in ∞ indarno
valley valle *f.*
value pregio *m.*; **be of** ∞ valere
vast vasto
veil velo *m.*
Venetian veneziano
Venice Venēzia
very molto

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- view** vista *f.*
village villaggio, paese *m.*
vintage vendemmia *f.*
violet mämmola *f.*
virtue virtù *f.*
visit vişita *f.*; *v.* vişitare

wager scommessa *f.*
wait, wait for, aspettare
waiter cameriere *m.*
walk *v.* camminare, andare a piedi
walk passeggiata, giratina *f.*, spasso
m.; **take a** ∞ andare a spasso,
 fare una passeggiata
wall muro *m.*
walnut noçe *f.*
wander peregrinare
war guerra *f.*; **wage** ∞ mover guerra
warfare guerra *f.*; **of** ∞ bellico
warlike bellicoso
warm caldo; **be** ∞ aver caldo
wash lavare; ∞-stand lavamano *m.*
watch orologio *m.*; *v.* guardare,
 vegliare
water acqua *f.*; *v.* annaffiare
wave onda *f.*
way via, strada *f.*; **lose one's** ∞
 şmarrirsi; **take one's** ∞ avviarsi,
 recarsi; **on the** ∞ strada facendo
we noi
weak dēbole, caduco, fiacco
weather tempo *m.*; **it is fine** ∞ fa
 bel tempo
wedding nozze *f. pl.*
Wednesday mercoledì *m.*
week settimana *f.*
weep piāngere
welcome benvenuto; **you're** ∞ niēte
well bene; ∞ then ebbene, dunque;
 ∞ now o or o

west ponente *m.*
western occidentale
wet bagnato
what che, quēl che
whatever *adj.* qualunque; *pron.*
 checchè
when quando
whenever qualora (*w. subj.*)
where dove
wherever dovunque (*w. subj.*)
whether se
which che, il quale
while mentre; **be worth** ∞ meritare
 il conto
white bianco
who *rel.* che; *interr.* chi
whom *rel.* che, cui; *interr.* chi
whose il cui, (di) cui; *interr.* di chi
why perchè
wicked scellerato
wide largo
width larghezza *f.*
wife moglie *f.*
will volontà *f.*; *v.* volere
win vincere
wind up caricare
wind vento *m.*
window finestra *f.*
winter inverno *m.*
wise savio, sapiente
wish volere, desiderare; ∞ well
 augurare
with con
wither appassire
without senza; **do** ∞ fare a meno
 di
woman donna *f.*; **married** ∞ signora
f.; **unmarried** ∞ signorina *f.*
wood bosco *m.*; (*material*) legno *m.*
wool lana *f.*

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

work <i>q̄pera f., lavoro m.; v. lavorare</i>	yard <i>çorte f.</i>
workman <i>operaio m.</i>	yawn <i>şbadigliare</i>
world <i>mōdo m.</i>	year <i>anno m.</i>
worse <i>adj. peggiore; adv. peggioro</i>	yes <i>sì</i>
worst <i>il peggiore; il peggioro</i>	yesterday <i>içri</i>
worry <i>tr. dar pensiero a; intr. stare in pensiero, darsi pensiero</i>	yet <i>ancora, tuttavīa</i>
worth : <i>be</i> ∼ <i>valere</i>	you <i>voi, tu, Lei; cf. 65, a, b, c</i>
would <i>volere; past fut. or subj.</i>	young <i>giōvane</i>
wound <i>ferita f.; v. ferire</i>	your <i>il vostro, il tuo, il Suo</i>
wound up <i>adj. cārico</i>	yourself <i>voi stesso, tu stesso, Lei stesso; refl. vi, ti, si</i>
write <i>scrivere</i>	yourselves <i>voi stessi, Loro stessi; refl. vi, si</i>
writer <i>scrittore m.</i>	youth <i>gioventù f.</i>
wrong : <i>be</i> ∼ <i>aver torto</i>	



INDEX

[Numbers refer to sections]

- a**, idioms with, 227, *a*
Accent, graphic, 18-21
 acute, 21
 circumflex, 20
 grave, 19
 meaning distinguished by, 19, *e*
Accent, tonic, 9-15
 marks of, in this book, 9
 meaning distinguished by, 15
 in truncated words, 33
 in verbs, 13, *a*
Addition of *d* or *r* for euphony, 39
Address, person in, 65, *a-d*; 100, *c*
Adjectives, 82-88
 agreement, 83
 with two or more nouns, 83, *b*
 sg. adj. with pl. n., 83, *c*
 capitalization of, 88, *a*
 demonstrative, 86; 190
 interrogative, 87; 191
 invariable, 85, *b*
 irregular, 85, *a*
 position of, 84
 prepositions with, 223
 used substantively, 88
 with subst. understood, 88, *b*
Adverbs, 89; 212-219
 comparison of, 115; 116; 117
 formation of, 89, *a*; 214
 position of, 212; 216, *a*
 of affirmation, 215; 230, *b*, 3
 of manner, 214; 219, *a*; 227
 of negation, 216
 of place, 217; 219, *b*
 of quantity, 89, *b*; 160; 218
 of time, 219, *c*
Age, 153
'ago,' 151, *d*
alcuno, 206, *a*
'all,' 160, *c*
Alphabet, 1
altro, 208, *c*, *d*
altrui, 208, *b*
andare, 149
 idioms with, 149, *b*
 special uses of, 149, *a*
'any,' 77; 124; 206, *a*, 1, 2, 3; 208, *c*
Apheresis, 35
Apocope, 37
Archaic forms, 44-49
Arithmetical formulae, 159, *b*
Article, *see* Definite *and* Indefinite
Article repeated, 61
Augmentatives, 228, *a*; 229
Auxiliary
 agreement of past part. with, 99;
 104, *c*, 1, 2; 122; 194, *b*
 avere used as, 68; 101, *b*, *c*; 121
 'do,' 62, *b*, 1; 215, *c*
 essere used as, 98; 101, *a*, *c*
 modal auxiliaries, 186
 avere, 68; 101; 120; 121
 idiomatic uses of, 123
 past part. with, 122
'be,' 96
bello, forms of, 85, *a*
'both,' 150, *d*; 207, *f*
buono, forms of, 85, *a*
'can,' *see* Modal auxiliaries, sapere
Capitalization, 41-43
 capitals omitted, 42
 capitals used contrary to English
 usage, 43
 of adjectives, 88, *a*
Cardinal numerals, 150
 'about' with, 158, *a*, 1

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- care, verbs ending in, 110, *a*, 1
- Century, number of, 151, *c*; 157, *c*
- cere, verbs ending in, 110, *c*
- che, 114, *a*; 115, *b*, 1, 2, *c*; 169, *i*,
note 2; 189, *b*; 230, *b*, 2, 3, 4
- ci (adv.), 126; 217, *b*, *c*
- ci (pron.), 94; 125, *b*, 1; 224, *b*
- ciare, verbs ending in, 110, *a*, 2
- ciò, 190, *d*
- Close vowels, 3, *a*, *c*, *f*
- co, masculines in, 178, *c*
- Collective nouns, agreement with,
183
- Collective numerals, 158, *a*
with special meanings, 158, *b*
- Comparatives, 115
of equality, 119
irregular, 117, *a*
with special meanings, 117, *b*
- Compound nouns, 181; 225
- Compound tenses, 68; 96; 120
- Conjugations, 90, *a*
- Conjunctions, 230
- Conjunctive pronoun objects
forms, 94
changes in, 125, *b*
position, 95, *a*, *b*
of two objects, 125, *a*
with dependent inf., 167
curtailment of inf. before, 95, *b*, 2
direct becoming indirect, 167, *c*, 2
initial consonants doubled in,
100, *b*
used redundantly, 100, *d*, *e*
used as subject, 100, *g*
with compound prep. and verb,
222, *a*
with *ecco*, 100, *a*
- Consonants, 5
- Contraction of prepositions, 75
- d*, addition of, for euphony, 39
- da, idiomatic uses of, 103; 112;
123, *a*; 139; 162, *c*; 227, *b*
- dare, 131
idioms with, 131, *a*
- Dates, 150, *c*; 151, *a*, *b*, *c*; 157, *c*
- Definite article
forms, 70
their uses, 71; 72
- syntax, 73; 146; 147
agreement with two nouns, 148
in dates, 146, *f*; 151
distributive, 146, *g*
idiomatic uses, 146, *k*
omission of, 147
used for possessive, 107, *c*;
146, *e*
with proper names, 146, *c*, *d*, *h*
- Demonstrative adjective, 86; 190
- Demonstrative pronoun, 190
- di, 78; 164, *b*, 1; 174, *b*, 3, *c*, 3; 205,
a; 221, *b*; 227, *c*
- Dialogues
In un albergo, p. 154
L' Arrivo, p. 134
L' Automobile, p. 219
Dal calzolaio, p. 202
Dalla modista, p. 245
Dalla sarta, p. 163
Dal sarto, p. 188
Si fanno le compre, p. 250
- Diminutives, 228, *b*; 229
- Diphthongs, 4, *a*, *b*; 53
- dire, 175
- Disjunctive pronoun, 135; 136
nominative, 65; 135, *a*
objective, 135, *b*
uses of, 65, *a*, 1; 136
- 'do,' auxiliary, 62, *b*, 1; 215, *c*
- dolere, 172
- Double consonants, 5, *b*
- Doublings, special, 5, *b*, 2
- dovere, 188
special uses of, 187, *c*
- ecco, 100, *a*; 217, *c*
- ed for e, 39
- Elision, 22-28; 52
in contracted forms, 28
- essere, 96
used as auxiliary, 98; 101, *a*, *c*
- Exclamations, 191, *a*; 230, *b*, 2; 231
- fare, 163
idioms with, 163, *b*
with dependent inf., 163, *a*; 167, *c*
- Fractions, 157, *b*
- 'from,' 227, *d*, 2
- Future, 69; 141

INDEX

- gare, verbs ending in, 110, *a*, 1
 Gender, 80; 197-203
 distinguished by form, 80, *b*; 197
 distinguished by meaning, 80, *a*;
 198
 masculines in *a*, 202
 in names of animals, 200
 in nouns of human relationship, 201
 rank, feminine forms of words
 denoting, 203
 two genders, nouns of, 199
 Genitive, *see* Possessive
 -gere, verbs ending in, 110, *c*
 Gerund, English, transl. into Italian,
 193, *d*
 Gerundive, Italian, 193, *b*
 -giare, verbs ending in, 110, *a*, 2
 gli (hard *g*), 5, *c*
 grande, forms of, 85, *a*
- 'half,' 157, *b*, 1
 'have,' 120
 'have to,' 123, *a*
 'here,' 126, *a*; 217; 219, *b*
 'he who,' 190, *c*, 2
 'however,' 230, *a*
- i*, euphonic, 38
 -iare, verbs ending in, 110, *b*
 Idioms, *see* *andare*, *da*, *dare*, etc.,
 Adverbs, Prepositions, Time,
 Weather, etc.
- Imperative
 formation, in irr. verbs, 130, *e*
 negative, 92, *b*
 third person of, 92, *a*
 Impersonal English expressions,
 translation of, 106, *b*
 Impersonal verbs, 164
 with subjunctive, 164, *b*
 use of *di* with, 164, *b*, 1
 Indefinite article
 forms, 58
 their uses, 59; 60
 syntax of, 61; 66; 162
 Indefinite pronouns, 205-210
 alphabetical list, 205
 with *di*, 205, *a*
 negative, 210
- Indicative, *see* Tenses
 Infinitive, 173; 174
 government of, 174
 uses of, 173
 with *a*, 174, *b*, 1; *c*, 2
 with *da*, 174, *a*; *c*, 4
 with *di*, 174, *b*, 3; *c*, 3
 Inflections, *see* Conjugations
 Interjections, 231
 Interrogative adjective, 87; 191
 Interrogative construction, 62
 Interrogative pronouns, 191
 Invariable adjectives, 85, *b*
 Invariable nouns, 176
 Inversion, 145; 194, *c*
 -io, plural of nouns in, 178, *a*, 2
 Irregular verbs, pp. 261-273
 formation, 130
 past absolutes of, 120, *a*
 principal parts of, 120, *b*; 130
 regular forms of, 128
 -issimo, ending, 116, *d*
 'it,' anticipative subject, 100, *g*, 2
 in predicate after *essere*, 100, *e*
 'it is I,' etc., 65, *f*
 'its,' 107, *c*
- Lei, in address, 65, *a*, 1; 100, *c*
 Letters, *see* Alphabet, Consonants,
 Vowels
 loro, 125, *a*, 1; 136, *i*, 1
- mai, 191, *b*; 216, *f*, 1
 'may,' *see* Modal auxiliaries
 Marks of pronunciation, 2, *a*; 5, *e*; 9
 Measurements, 155
 meco, etc., 136, *a*, 1
 Metathesis, 40
 Modal auxiliaries, 186; 187
 in compound tenses, 186, *b*
 with inf., 186, *d*
 special uses of, 187
 Money, 154
 Moods, *see* Imperative, Indicative,
 Subjunctive
 morire, 156
 Multiplicatives, 159, *a*
 'must,' *see* Modal auxiliaries
 'myself,' etc., *see* Reflexives

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

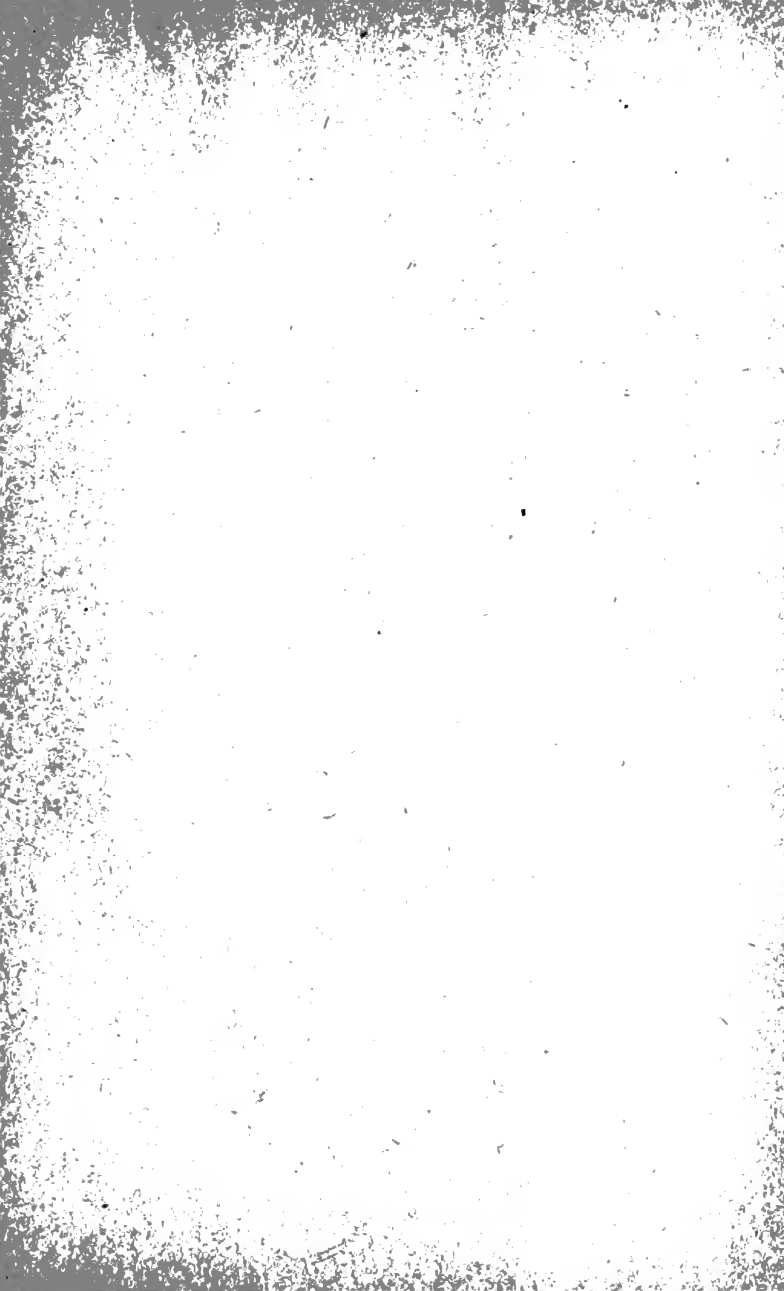
- nascere**, past tenses of, 140, *d*, 1
ne (adv.), 126; 217, *b*
ne (pron.), 107, *c*; 124; 224, *b*
 for *ci*, 94, *a*, 1
 'never,' 216, *b*, 1; *f*
no for **non**, 216, *d*
non, 216, *a*, *b*, *f*
 pleonastic, 169, *a*, 1
 position, 216, *a*
 'not,' 216
Nouns, *see* Gender, Plural
 compound, 181; 225
 position as object of dependent
 infinitive, 167, *c*, 1
Number, *see* Plural
Numerals, *see* Cardinal, Ordinal
- o, uo**, in verbs, 110, *d*
Objects, *see* Conjunctive and Nouns
Old forms, *see* Archaic
 'one,' 106, *b*; 207
 'only,' 216, *b*
Open vowels, 3, *b*, *d*, *g*
Ordinal numerals, 157
 agreement, 157, *a*
 century numbers, 157, *c*
 fractions, 157, *b*
 'half,' 157, *b*, 1
 order, 157, *d*, *e*
 uses, 157, *b-d*
Orthographical peculiarities of
 verbs, 110
Orthography, *see* Variant forms
 'other,' 208, *d*
 'ought,' *see* Modal auxiliaries
- parere**, 161
Parole bisdrucchiole, 13
Parole piane, 10
Parole sdrucciole, 12
Parole tronche, 11
Participle, past, 194
 absolute construction, 195
 agreement, 194, *b*
 inversion, 194, *c*
Participle, present, 193
 English, transl. into Italian, 102;
 193, *c*
 Italian, transl. into English, 193,
 a, *b*
- Partitive**, 77; 124
Passive, 97
 English, transl. into Italian, 106, *a*
 with *andare*, *rimanere*, *venire*, 97,
 a, 1
Past absolute, 74; 140, *a*
 irregular construction of, 120, *a*
Past descriptive, 140, *c*
Past future, 79; 93; 142
Past tenses, *see* Tenses
Person in address, 65, *a-d*; 100, *c*
Personal pronouns, 65
 see Conjunctive, Disjunctive
piacere, 185
Pitch in speech, 14
Plural of nouns, 67; 176-184
 in compound nouns, 181
 defective, 182
 feminine, 177
 invariable, 176
 irregular, 179
 masculine, 178
 meaning distinguished by, 182, *d*
 in proper nouns, 180
 sg. used for, with parts of body,
 184
Poetic forms, *see* Archaic
porre, 196
Possessive with di, 78
Possessive adjective, 107
 agreement, 107, *b*
 definite article omitted, 108
 definite article used for, 109
 'its,' 107, *c*
potere, 168; 187, *b*
Prepositions, 221-227
 with adjectives, 223
 alphabetical lists of, 226
 compound, 222
 conjunctive object used with,
 222, *a*
 contracted with article, 75
 idioms with, 227
 with objects of verbs, 224, *b*
 repeated with each noun, 76
 simple, 221, *a*
 with pronouns, 221, *b*
Present indicative, *see* Tenses
Principal parts of verbs, 91; 120, *b*;
 130

INDEX

- Probability, future of, **141, a, 1**
 Pronouns, *see* Conjunctive, Demonstrative, Disjunctive, Indefinite, Interrogative, Relative
 Pronoun subject omitted, **63, a**
 Pronunciation, **2-5**
 close vowels, **3, a, c, f**
 consonant sounds, **5**
 marks, **2, a; 5, e; 9**
 meaning distinguished by, **3, e, h; 5, b, e, 4, d; 15**
 mispronunciations, **2, b**
 open vowels, **3, b, d, g**
 Tuscan peculiarities of, **5, d**
 vowel sounds, **2**
 words for practice, **16, 17**
- qualche, 206, c, 1**
- r, euphonic, 39**
 Reciprocal verbs, **104, b**
 Reflexive pronoun, **94, c**
 as dative of reference, **105, b, 3**
 omitted from dependent inf., **105, b, 2**
 for possessive, **105, c**
 Reflexive verbs, **104-106**
 with 2d conjunctive object, **127**
 with prepositions, to translate English transitives, **105, b, 1**
 uses, **104, b; 105**
 special uses, **106**
- Regular verbs, **90**
 construction of, **91**
- Relative pronoun
 forms, **114**
 uses, **189**
- Rhyme, **55**
- rimanere, 129**
- s, pronunciation of, 5, e, 1, 2**
s impure, 59, a, 1
santo, forms of, 85, a
sapere, 132
 special meanings of, **132, a**
scegliere, 211
sè, 136, i
 Semivowels, **4**
 sentire, conjugation of, **111, a**
 'shall,' *see* Future, **dovere**
 'should,' *see* Past future
- si, see** Reflexive
 Singular for plural with parts of body, **184**
 'so' after verbs of thinking etc., **100, e, 1; 215, b, 1**
 'some,' 'some one,' **77; 124; 206**
 'some more,' **208, d, 2**
 Spelling, *see* Variant forms
stare, 166
 idioms with, **166, b**
 special meanings of, **166, a**
 Subject, inversion of, **145**
- Subjunctive
 in dependent clauses, **169**
 in conditions, **93**
 with *credere*, **137**
 with impersonal verbs, **164, b**
 after superlatives, **118**
 after verbs of wishing, **113**
 in independent clauses, **171**
 future for, **169, i, note 1**
 sequence of tenses with, **170**
- Suffixes, *see* Augmentatives, Diminutives
- Superlative, **116**
 absolute, **116, d**
 article omitted, **116, b**
 preposition used with, **116, c**
 subjunctive with, **118**
- Syllabification, **6-8**
- Syllables, division of, at end of line, **8**
- Syncope, **36**
- Tenses of the indicative, **139-142**
 compound, **68; 96; 120**
 future, **69; 141**
 past absolute, **74; 140, a**
 past descriptive, **140, c**
 past future, **79; 93; 142**
 past perfect, **140, d**
 present, **139**
 present perfect, **140, b**
 second past perfect, **140, e**
 sequence of, **143**
 'than,' **115, b, c, d**
 'there,' **217**
- Time
 of day, **152**
 idioms of, **151, e; 152, e; 160, d; 219, c**

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- 'to,' 227, *d*, 1
 Triphthongs, 4, *c*; 53, *a*
 Truncation, 29-33
 conditions of, 30
 irregular, 32
 poetic, 31, *d*
 regular, 31, *a*, *b*, *c*
 titles truncated, 31, *c*
 Tuscan peculiarities of pronunciation, 5, *d*
- udire, 192
 uno, 59, *b*; 150, *a*; 207
 uscire, 204
- valere, 220
 Variant forms of words, 34-40
 venire, 138
 special uses of, 138, *a*
 Verbs, *see* Regular, Irregular, Tenses
 agreement of
 with subject, 144
 with collectives, 183
 inversion of subject, 145
 sequence of tenses, 143; 170
- Versification, 50-57
 blank verse, 56
 diphthongs, 53
 elision, 52
 lines, 51
 rhyme, 55
 strophes, 57
 syllables, 54
 vi (adv.), 126; 217, *b*, *c*
 vi (pron.), 94; 125, *b*, 1
 volere, 133
 special meanings of, 133, *a*;
 187, *a*
 Vowels, 2
- Weather, expressions of, 165
 'what,' rendering of, 190, *a*, 5, *a*;
 191; 191, *a*
 'whatever,' 'whoever,' 209, *b*
 'will,' *see* Future
 'would,' *see* Past future
 'you,' 65, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*; 100, *c*
 z, pronunciation of, 5, *e*, 3, 4



14 DAY USE
RETURN TO DESK FROM WHICH BORROWED
LOAN DEPT.

This book is due on the last date stamped below, or
on the date to which renewed.

Renewed books are subject to immediate recall.

ISSUED

DEC 6 1967

Ken Sutherland

JAN 2 1968

JAN 4 '68 - 8 AM

RECD LG
JAN 10 74 - 2 PM
JAN 24 1972

SEP 26 1997

LD 21A-60m-2,'67
(H241s10)476B

General Library
University of California
Berkeley

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C054928906

M209968

PC IIII

P4

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

